

# P-07A

ISSUE DATE:

'09.4

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

<sup>NTT</sup>  
docomo

docomo **PRIME** series

Easy Search/Contents/Precautions  
    Before Using the Handset  
Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk  
    Phonebook  
    Sound/Screen/Light Settings  
    Security Settings  
    Mail  
    i-mode/Full Browser  
i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier  
    Camera  
    1Seg  
    Music  
    i-appli/i-Widget  
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa  
    Map/GPS Function  
    Data Management  
Convenient Functions  
    Character Entry  
    Network Services  
    Overseas Use  
    PC Connection  
Appendix/Troubleshooting  
Index/Quick Manual

# DOCOMO W-CDMA·GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for selecting the “docomo PRIME series P-07A”.

Before or during use of the P-07A, make sure that you read this manual and the separate manuals for other optional devices thoroughly so that you can use the P-07A correctly.

If you feel any inconvenience in reading the manual, contact the docomo Information Center listed on the back page of this manual.

The P-07A is designed to be your close partner. Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

## Before using your FOMA terminal

- Because the FOMA terminals use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.
- Use the FOMA terminal carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public, or in crowded or quiet places.
- Since the FOMA terminals use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA·GSM/GPRS system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party, because it is recognized as mere noise.
- The FOMA terminals change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice may sound different from the actual original voice.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL/TLS. Neither DOCOMO nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL/TLS. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL/TLS, neither DOCOMO nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss. Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., and Comodo CA Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA High-Speed Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and in DOCOMO's roaming area.

- It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information (such as Phonebook entries, schedule events, text memos, record messages, voice memos, movie memos) stored in the FOMA terminal and keep them in a safe place. Note that we cannot be held responsible for the unlikely event of loss of the stored contents due to a malfunction, repair, change of your model, or other mishandling of the FOMA terminal.
- You are advised to save your important data files to the microSD card. If you have a personal computer, you can transfer and save the information such as Phonebook entries, mail messages, schedule events, and others to the personal computer by using DOCOMO keitai datalink.

## For Using This Manual

**This FOMA terminal supports Kisekai Tool (page 117). If you use Kisekai Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.**

**You can download the latest information about this manual from the following DOCOMO website:**

- **User's Manual (PDF file) Download**  
(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)
- ※ **The URL and the content of the website might be modified without notice.**

## Viewing/Searching This Manual

In this manual, illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can correctly and easily use the FOMA terminal.

- The most operating procedures and displays in this manual are described with the default settings of the "Stripe White" (see page 472) handset. However, the following settings are changed.
  - "Display setting" → "Stand-by display/Stand-by disp. Wide": OFF
  - "Display setting" → "Clock" → "Stand-by clock/Stand-by clock Wide" → "Position": Pattern 1
  - "Menu icon setting": Normal
- The most operating procedures and displays in this manual are described in the state of Normal Style. In Horizontal Open Style, you can operate in the same way as in Normal Style. See page 25 and page 26 for the operations in Horizontal Open Style.
- Displays and illustrations described in this manual are for reference. The actual ones might differ.
- In this manual, "Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli which supports the IC card function" is described as "Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli".
- Note that "P-07A" is referred to as "FOMA terminal" in this manual.
- In the operating procedures of this manual, key operations are described with simplified key icons.
- The functions which use a microSD card are described in this manual; however, you need to obtain a microSD card separately to make these functions available. See page 366 for the microSD card.

## How to Refer to This Manual

By the following search methods, you can find pages where your desired functions and services are described:

### From the Index

Search from the index when you know the names of functions or services.

### From Easy Search

Search from keywords for the functions you frequently use or the functions that are convenient if you can know any.

### From the Tabs on the Cover

Search from the tabs printed on the cover.

See the next page for details.

### From the Contents

▶▶ P.6

Search from the contents that categorize functions.

### From the Main Functions

▶▶ P.8

Search from here to use the main functions.

### From the Function List

▶▶ P.472

Search from the function list.

### From Quick Manual

▶▶ P.550

Quick Manual gives you a clear, brief description about basic functions. You can take it when you go out. Further, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use" is attached, so refer to it when you use the FOMA terminal overseas.

It is prohibited to copy all or part of this manual without permission.  
The instructions contained in this manual may be changed without notice.

How to search for “Alarm” is explained here as an example of search method.

## From the Index

▶▶ P.540

Search for a function or a service name as shown on the right.

Alarm		1/2
Alarm clock1	OFF	
Alarm clock2	OFF	
Alarm clock3	OFF	
Alarm clock4	OFF	
Alarm clock5	OFF	

Additional guidance	454
Address link function	212
After-sales services	521
<b>Alarm</b>	<b>400</b>
Alarm setting	409
Answer setting	66
Antenna	23

## From Easy Search

▶▶ P.4

Search for the function you frequently use or that is convenient if you know any as shown on the right.

### Other things you can do

To reduce the battery consumption	<Power Saver Mode>	114
To scan QR codes or bar codes	<Bar Code Reader>	245
To listen to music	<MUSIC Player>	278
To check your location and area information	<Map/GPS Function>	328
To use the microSD card	<microSD Card>	366
To exchange information using infrared rays	<Infrared Communication>	380
<b>To use the FOMA terminal as an alarm clock</b>	<b>&lt;Alarm&gt;</b>	<b>400</b>
To use the FOMA terminal as a calculator	<Calculator>	414
To use the FOMA terminal overseas	<International Roaming>	456
To update software programs	<Software Update>	523

Go to page 400 where “Alarm” is explained.

## From the Tabs on the Cover

▶▶ Cover page

Search for the function you want to set in the order of “Cover” → “First page of Chapter” → “Description page” as shown on the right.

Music	■
i-apple/i-Widget	■
Osatsu/Keitai/ToruCa	■
Map/GPS Function	■
Data Management	■
<b>Convenient Functions</b>	<b>■</b>
Character Entry	■
Network Services	■
Overseas Use	■
PC Connection	■
Appendix/Troubleshooting	■

Multitask	<Multitask>	397
Informing You of an Incoming Call/Mail Message by Voice	<Reading Aloud>	398
Turning Power On/Off Automatically at a Specified Time	<Auto Power ON/OFF>	400
<b>Using Alarm</b>	<b>&lt;Alarm&gt;</b>	<b>400</b>
Using Calendar to Manage Schedule	<Schedule>	403
Using ToDo to Manage Schedule	<ToDo>	407
Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm	<Alarm Setting>	409

Function name  
You can find this in  
Index.

Menu number  
(See page 36)

Items shown on the  
display  
(Some items cannot  
be executed.)

Operating  
procedure  
(See page 34)

Operation and  
supplementary  
explanation for each  
item

Reference display  
(Characters and settings  
are for reference.)

Lower sub-menu item  
of the function menu

Chapter title

Convenient Functions

Cautions or  
references for using  
each function

You can  
search by  
chapter.

Operations related to  
the function and  
explanations for  
supplementary  
operations

Options and  
their  
explanations

<Alarm> MENU 4 4

## Using Alarm

You can set Alarm to alert you at the specified time with an alarm tone, animation and illumination. You can store up to 12 alarms.

Stationary > Alarm > Highlight an alarm and press (Edit)

Do the following operations.

Time	You can set whether to validate or invalidate the alarm. ▶ ON or OFF
Tone	▶ Enter the time for sounding the alarm. • You cannot set the same time as the time set for the stored alarm.
Volume	▶ Select a type of alarm tone ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an alarm tone.
Prefer manner mode	You can set the alarm tone which sounds at the specified time during Manner Mode. ▶ ON or OFF ON: ... Sounds at the same volume as set for "Alarm volume". OFF: ... Sounds at the volume set for this function.

### Function Menu while Alarm is Displayed

Edit	Go to step 1 of "Using Alarm" on page 400.
Detail	You can display the stored alarm contents.
Set this	You can validate the stored alarm. ▶ YES • You can validate also by pressing  (ON).
Set all	You can validate all the stored alarm. ▶ YES
Delete	
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter you Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Information

- If the alarm tone sounds during a call, press any key to stop it. Once again press any key to end the alarm including Snooze. If the other party on the phone hangs up, an alarm including Snooze ends.
- During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- Turn off the FOMA terminal after setting "Auto power ON" to "OFF" when you are near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals, or where the use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

### When you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"

- The icon appears on the Stand-by display.
- ... Displayed when an alarm is set for today (except the setting for past time).
  - ... Displayed when an alarm is set for tomorrow or onward only.
  - If you set "Alarm" of a schedule event/ToDo item to "OFF", the icon is not displayed.

400

Note: The page above is a sample.

## Easy Search

To retrieve a desired function with simple words, refer to the following:

### To know convenient functions for making calls

To/Not to notify your phone number to the other party ..... <Caller ID Notification>	47
To switch to a videophone call during a voice call ..... <Switch to Videophone Call>	53
To change a volume level of the other party's voice ..... <Volume>	68
To put a call on hold during a call..... <Holding>	69

### To do the following when you cannot answer calls

To put an incoming call on hold before answering..... <On Hold>	69
To convey the message that you need to refrain from talking on the phone ..... Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)	70
..... Using Public Mode (Power Off)	70
To record voice/video messages..... <Record Message Setting>	71

### To change melody or illumination

To adjust the ring volume..... <Ring Volume>	68
To change ring tones according to callers..... <Add to Phonebook>	90
To change ring tones..... <Select Ring Tone>	104
To know incoming calls by vibrator..... <Vibrator>	106
To mute the keypad sound..... <Keypad Sound>	107
To activate Manner Mode..... <Manner Mode>	108
To change colors/lighting patterns of Call indicator for incoming calls ..... <Illumination>	118

### To change/know display settings

To know the meaning of marks (icons) on the display..... <Display>	28
To change the Stand-by display (Wallpaper)..... <Display Setting>	111
To display a calendar on the Stand-by display..... <Calendar>	111
To change the menu display..... <Menu Icon Setting>	116
To change the font size..... <Font Size Setting>	121

### To make full use of mail

To send Deco-mail..... <Deco-mail>	149
To send images..... <Attachments>	156
To sort and save mail automatically..... <Auto-sort>	175

### To make full use of camera

To shoot with the flash/photo light..... <Flash Setting/Photo Light Setting>	240
To change the shooting size..... <Image Size>	241
To save to the microSD card..... <Store In>	242
To display shot images..... <Picture Viewer>	340

### To use the FOMA terminal with a sense of security

To lock the FOMA terminal from away when it gets lost ..... <Omakase Lock>*1	127
To keep Phonebook entries from prying eyes ..... <Secret Mode>	135
To reject calls without a caller ID ..... <Call Setting without ID>	138
To reject calls from the phone numbers that are not in the Phonebook ..... <Reject Unknown>	139
To separately store Phonebook and other data files in preparation for their erasure ..... <Data Security Service>*2	139

\*1 This is a pay service.

\*2 This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

### To make full use of 1Seg

To watch 1Seg programs ..... <Activate 1Seg>	253
To record 1Seg programs..... <Record Video> <Record Still Images>	260
To set TV Timer/Timer Recording for 1Seg programs ..... <TV Timer> <Timer Recording>	261
To change settings of video and audio ..... <User Settings>	266

### Other things you can do


To reduce the battery consumption .....	<Power Saver Mode>	114
To scan QR codes or bar codes .....	<Bar Code Reader>	245
To listen to music.....	<MUSIC Player>	278
To check your location and area information.....	<Map/GPS Function>	328
To use the microSD card.....	<microSD Card>	366
To exchange information using infrared rays.....	<Infrared Communication>	380
To use the FOMA terminal as an alarm clock.....	<Alarm>	400
To use the FOMA terminal as a calculator .....	<Calculator>	414
To use the FOMA terminal overseas .....	<International Roaming>	456
To update software programs.....	<Software Update>	523
To update security .....	<Scanning Function>	528

- The operating procedures for frequently used functions are summarized in Quick Manual. (See page 550)

# Contents

Viewing/Searching This Manual	1	Precautions	10
Easy Search	4	Handling Precautions	16
Contents	6	Standard Accessory Kit and Main	
Main Functions of P-07A	8	Options	20

<b>Before Using the Handset</b> 21	Part Names and Functions, Styles, Display, Desktop Icon, Selecting Menu, Guide, UIM (FOMA Card), Battery, Charging, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Set Time, Caller ID Notification, Own Number, etc.
<b>Voice/Videophone Calls/ PushTalk</b> 49	Making a Call/Videophone Call, Call Records, Chaku-moji, Receiving a Call/Videophone Call, Volume, Ring Volume, Public Mode, Record Message Setting, Chara-den, Making a PushTalk Call, Receiving a PushTalk Call, PushTalk Phonebook, etc.
<b>Phonebook</b> 89	Available Phonebooks, Add to Phonebook (FOMA terminal/UIM), Group Setting, Search Phonebook, Edit Phonebook, Delete Data, No. of Phonebook, 2-touch Dial, Voice Dial
<b>Sound/Screen/ Light Settings</b> 103	Select Ring Tone, Vibrator, Manner Mode, Display Setting, Backlight, Menu Icon Setting, Kisekæ Tool, Set to Machi-chara, Horizontal Open Menu, Illumination, Font, etc.
<b>Security Settings</b> 123	Security Codes, Change Security Code, Releasing PIN Lock, Lock All, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Personal Data Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Call Setting without ID, Reject Unknown, Reset Settings, Initialize, etc.

<b>Mail</b> 145	i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Decome-Anime, Template, Attachments, Mail Auto-receive, Receive Option, Check New Messages, Message R/F, Early Warning "Area Mail", Chat Mail, SMS, etc.
<b>i-mode/ Full Browser</b> 193	i-mode,  Menu, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Full Browser, Last URL, Enter URL, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Download, Upload, i-mode Settings, Certificate, etc.
<b>i-motion/Movie/ i-Channel/i-concier</b> 221	i-motion/Movie, Download i-motion/Movie, Movie Auto Play Setting, i-Channel, i-concier
<b>Camera</b> 229	Before Using Camera, Still Image Shoot, Moving Picture Shoot, Settings for Shooting, Setting Image Size/Image Quality, Bar Code Reader
<b>1Seg</b> 249	1Seg, Before Using 1Seg, Channel Setting, Activate 1Seg, i-oppli Program Guide, Data Broadcasting, TVlink, Recording 1Seg, TV Timer/Timer Recording, User Settings
<b>Music</b> 269	Music&Video Channel, Set Program, Playing/Operating Programs, Playing Music, Saving Music Files, MUSIC Player, Playlist



<b>i-ϕpli/i-Widget</b> 289	i-ϕpli, i-ϕpli Download, i-ϕpli Run, ϕpli Settings, Starting i-ϕpli Automatically, ϕpli Call, i-ϕpli Stand-by Display, ϕpli Data, i-Widget, Start Widget ϕpli
<b>OsaiFu-Keitai/ ToruCa</b> 315	OsaiFu-Keitai, iC Transfer Service, IC Card Content, IC Card Lock, Check IC Owner, ToruCa, Receive ToruCa Files, ToruCa Viewer, ToruCa File List/Detailed ToruCa File Display, ToruCa Settings
<b>Map/GPS Function</b> 327	Using GPS Function, Position Location, Map/GPS Compatible i-ϕpli, Provide Location, Notify of Location, Location History, GPS Settings
<b>Data Management</b> 337	Picture Viewer, i-motion Player, Movie Player, Video Player, Chara-den, Machi-chara, Melody Player, Kisekai Tool, microSD Card, Voice Recorder, PDF Viewer, etc.
<b>Convenient Functions</b> 395	Multiaccess, Multitask, Reading Aloud, Auto Power ON/OFF, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, Multi Key Long Press Setting, Own Number, Call Data, Calculator, Bluetooth Function, Check Settings, etc.
<b>Character Entry</b> 427	Character Entry, Mode 1 (5-touch), Common Phrases, Cut/Copy/Paste, Own Dictionary, Learned Words, Download Dictionary, Mode 2 (2-touch), Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)

<b>Network Services</b> 437	Check New Messages, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Nuisance Call Blocking, Caller ID Request, Dual Network, Service Numbers, Remote Control, Multi Number, 2in1, OFFICEED, etc.
<b>Overseas Use</b> 455	Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Available Services, Confirmation for Using, Making a Call at the Country You Stay, Receiving a Call, 3G/GSM Setting, Set Roaming Guidance, Network Services, etc.
<b>PC Connection</b> 465	Available Data Communication, Before Using Data Communication, Setup Flow for Data Transfer (OBEX™ Communication), Setup Flow for Data Communication, AT Command, CD-ROM, DOCOMO Keitai Datalink
<b>Appendix/ Troubleshooting</b> 471	Function List, Options and Related Devices, Troubleshooting, Error Messages, Warranty and After-sales Services, i-mode Fault Diagnosis Site, Software Update, Scanning Function, Main Specifications, SAR, Export Administration Regulations, etc.
<b>Index/ Quick Manual</b> 539	Index, Quick Manual, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use"

## Main Functions of P-07A

### ◆i-concier ▶▶ P.226

i-concier is a service that enables you to receive useful information from a character (Machi-chara image) on the Stand-by display and download schedule event (i-schedule) files for your convenience.

Downloaded i-schedule events or ToruCa files are automatically updated to the latest information, and the address information of shops/companies, etc. is automatically added to the Phonebook.

### ◆i-oppli Call ▶▶ P.307

i-oppli call is a useful function for online games that enables your content provider or third party to give notice to your opponent to start the specified corresponding application.

### ◆International Roaming ▶▶ P.297, P.456

Your FOMA terminal, phone number, and mail address are available overseas (3G/GSM areas are supported).

Further, "日英版/日中版 シャベって翻訳 for P (J-E/J-C Speech Translation for P)", which translates words into English or Chinese if you talk in Japanese, and into Japanese if in English or Chinese, is pre-installed.

### ◆Display Battery ▶▶ P.44

You can check detailed battery level by 100 steps.

### ◆i-Widget ▶▶ P.311

i-Widget is a useful function that enables you to easily access the tools and commonly-used contents (Widget oppli) such as a calculator, clock, TV program list, and stock prices information.

By launching the i-Widget display, you can check your desired latest information at a glance.

### ◆i-mode ▶▶ P.194

You are now enabled to check websites more easily for information by enhanced operational performance, and to enjoy various moving picture contents as Flash® Video and Windows Media® Video are supported.

### ◆1Seg ▶▶ P.250

You can watch 1Seg programs of the terrestrial digital broadcasting for mobile objects. By Mobile W-Speed, the outline of images are automatically corrected so that you can watch more smooth videos of 1Seg programs. Also, the light sensor automatically adjusts the backlight in accordance with the ambient brightness, and the LCD AI compensates the image quality in accordance with the brightness.

### ◆Bluetooth Function ▶▶ P.418

The wirelessly-connected FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device enable you to talk or listen to music while you are carrying the FOMA terminal in your bag.

### ◆Impressive Liquid Crystal Display

You can display still images and moving pictures in the Full Wide VGA (480 dots x 854 dots) display of approx. 3.1 inches and can enjoy watching 1Seg programs on the impressive display.

Also, with the Full Wide QVGA (240 dots x 427 dots) Private window of approx. 2.0 inches, you can enjoy watching moving pictures, and can check missed calls or new mail messages even while the FOMA terminal is closed.

### ◆Feel \* Mail ▶▶ P.180

Animation of 45 characters and illumination reproduce the atmosphere of mail messages. Pleasant animation appears and illumination lights according to the contents of mail message.

### ◆ **Trinity Style** ▶▶ P.24, P.235

With Trinity Style, you can enjoy performances in three styles; operating the FOMA terminal in Normal Style, watching 1Seg programs in Horizontal Open Style, and shooting still images with the FOMA terminal closed, etc.  
In Horizontal Open Style, 2-WAY key enables you to switch facing directions of key prints, and you can operate text entry for mail and Internet as you do in Normal Style.

### ◆ **One-push Open** ▶▶ P.24

#### ■ **Setting when Opened** ▶▶ P.67

When a call comes in, just press the one-push open button, and you can open the FOMA terminal to answer the call.

#### ■ **Recv. Mail/Call at Open** ▶▶ P.114

When a missed call or new mail message is found, just press the one-push open button, and you can open the FOMA terminal to display the detailed Missed Call display or the Inbox list.

### ◆ **View Blind** ▶▶ P.116

You can make the display hard to see from an angle. You can use the FOMA terminal without concern for others' eyes.

### ◆ **Camera** ▶▶ P.230

You can use approximate 8,100,000 pixels of high-precision camera to shoot still images and moving pictures. Further, owing to Intelligent Auto, you can shoot still images in a mode that is most suitable for your photographing scene, and can detect the outline of a person's face to automatically focus on his or her face.  
Further, you can use a flare of flash or photo light when you are in a dim place for shooting.

### ◆ **Voice Recorder** ▶▶ P.386

You can record your voice as a substitute for taking notes. You can repeatedly play it back, so it is convenient to record the proceedings at a meeting, etc.

### ◆ **Chaku-moji** ▶▶ P.56

### ◆ **Videophone** ▶▶ P.50

### ◆ **i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram** ▶▶ P.146, P.149, P.338

### ◆ **i-appli/Mega i-appli/Intuitive Games** ▶▶ P.290

### ◆ **High-Speed Communication Supported** ▶▶ P.466

### ◆ **Chaku-uta Full®/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel** ▶▶ P.270, P.276, P.278

• "Chaku-uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

### ◆ **MUSIC Player** ▶▶ P.278

### ◆ **GPS** ▶▶ P.328

### ◆ **Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa** ▶▶ P.316, P.318

### ◆ **Kisekae Tool** ▶▶ P.117, P.365




### ◆ **Respective Network Services** ▶▶ P.437

### ◆ **Security Settings** ▶▶ P.123







## Precautions

**ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS**

- Before using the FOMA terminal, read these safety precautions carefully so that you can use it correctly.  
After reading the precautions, keep them in a safe place.
- Be sure to observe these safety precautions because they are designed to protect you or those around you from causing injury and to avoid unnecessary damage to the property.
- The symbols below indicate the levels of danger or damage that can be caused if the particular precautions are not observed.

	<b>Danger</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling will almost certainly cause death or serious injury.
	<b>Warning</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing death or serious injury.
	<b>Caution</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing injury or damage to the product or property.

■ The following symbols show specific directions:

	Denotes things not to do. (Prohibition)
Don't	
	Denotes not to disassemble.
Do not disassemble	
	Denotes not to touch with wet hands.
Not wet hands	
	Denotes not to use where it could get wet or not to wet it.
Avoid Water	
	Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).
Do	
	Denotes to pull the power plug out of the outlet.
Pull the power plug out	

■ "Safety Precautions" are divided into the following six sections:

General precautions for FOMA terminal, batteries, adapters, and UIM ...	P.11
Precautions for FOMA terminal .....	P.12
Precautions for batteries .....	P.14
Precautions for adapters .....	P.15
Precautions for UIM.....	P.16
Notes on using near electronic medical equipment.....	P.16

**General precautions for FOMA terminal, batteries, adapters, and UIM****Danger**

Don't

**Do not use, store or leave the FOMA terminal and its accessories in places with a high temperature such as near fire or places exposed to direct sunlight, or in cars under the blazing sun.**

The devices could be deformed or malfunction, or the battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire, thus resulting in the deterioration of performance and shortening of the life of devices. Also, part of the case could get heated, causing bare skin burns.



Do not disassemble

**Do not disassemble, modify or solder the FOMA terminal or accessories.**

Accidents such as fire, injury, or electric shock, or malfunction may result. The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Avoid Water

**Do not wet the FOMA terminal or accessories.**

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto them, overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury or others may result. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.



Do

**With your FOMA terminal, use the batteries and adapters specified by NTT DOCOMO, INC.**

If you use any type of battery or adapter other than the specified one, your FOMA terminal, battery or other accessories may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

**Warning**

Don't

**Do not place the batteries, the FOMA terminal, adapters, or UIM in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. The FOMA terminal or the adapter may overheat, smoke, or catch fire, or its circuit parts may become damaged.



Don't

**Do not throw the FOMA terminal or accessories, or subject them to severe shocks.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Don't

**Be careful not to let electroconductive materials (metal pieces, pencil leads etc.) contact with the charging terminal or connector terminal. Also, make sure that those are not entered into the inside of the FOMA terminal.**

Short-circuit could cause fire or malfunction of the FOMA terminal.



Do

**When you are in a place such as a gas station where flammable gas is generated, turn off the FOMA terminal, and never do charging. Otherwise, catching fire may result.**

Ensure that you use Osaifu-Keitai with the FOMA terminal turned off when you are in the vicinity of the gas station. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off the power with the lock released.)



Do

If odor, overheat, discoloration, or deformation is detected during use, battery charge, or storage, immediately observe the following:

1. Pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the power to the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

If you use the FOMA terminal and its accessories as they are, overheat, burst, or catching fire could result or the battery could leak.

**Caution**

Don't

**Do not place the FOMA terminal or accessories on unstable locations such as wobbly tables or slanted locations.**

The FOMA terminal or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.



Don't

**Do not store in humid or dusty places, or in high temperature environments.**

Malfunction may result.



Do

**If children use the FOMA terminal or accessories, a guardian should explain the safety precautions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use. Otherwise, injury may result.**



Do

**Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.**

Accidental swallowing or injury may result.



Do

**Be especially careful when you use the FOMA terminal for a long time with the adapter connected.**

If you use i-appli programs, talk on the videophone, watch 1Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging, the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter might rise. If you directly touch the part of high temperature continuously, redness, itching, rash, or low-temperature bare skin burns may result depending on your physical conditions or predisposition.

### Precautions for FOMA terminal



### Warning



Don't

**Do not directly point the infrared data port at someone's eyes during transmission.**

His/her eyes may possibly be affected. Other infrared devices may operate erroneously if the infrared data port is pointed at them during transmission.



Don't

**Do not shine the flash/photo light close to eyes.**

Doing so can damage eyesight. Also, accidents such as injury might occur if someone is startled or dazzled by the light.



Don't

**Do not put the FOMA terminal in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.**

If the airbag expands, the FOMA terminal could hit you and others, causing accidents such as injury and the FOMA terminal could malfunction and become damaged.



Don't

**If you have any implanted electronic medical equipment, do not place your FOMA terminal in a chest pocket or inner pocket.**

If the FOMA terminal is positioned close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause that equipment to malfunction.



Don't

**Do not allow liquids such as water, or foreign materials such as metal pieces or flammable materials to get into the UIM or microSD card slot of the FOMA terminal.**

Fire, electric shock or malfunction may result.



Don't

**Do not turn on the flash/photo light to drivers of cars, and others.**

It disturbs driving, and accidents may result.



Do

**Turn off the FOMA terminal in places where use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.**

Otherwise, electronic devices and electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off. For use inside medical facilities, make sure that you comply with their regulations. You may be punished for using the FOMA terminal in airplanes, which is prohibited by law.



Do

**When talking with the FOMA terminal set to Hands-free, be sure to keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear.**

**Further, when you play games or play back music with the earphone/microphone connected, adjust the sound volume to moderate volume.**

The excessive sound volume impairs your hearing. Further, accidents may result due to the hardness of hearing of surrounding sound.



Do

**For those with weak heart conditions, the vibrator and ring volume must be adjusted carefully.**

Those functions may cause an effect on the heart.



Do

**If thunder starts to rumble while you are using the FOMA terminal outdoors, turn off the power and move to a safe place.**

Otherwise, you could be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



Do

**Turn off the FOMA terminal when near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals.**

The FOMA terminal may possibly cause these devices to malfunction.

※Electronic devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from the radio waves.



Do

**If the display part or camera lens is broken, be careful about broken glasses or the exposed interior of the FOMA terminal.**

Plastic panels are used for the surfaces of the display part and camera lens so that glasses do not easily get scattered, however, pay attention not to erroneously touch the broken part or interior. Otherwise, injury may result.



## Caution



Don't

**Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its strap.**

The FOMA terminal may hit you or persons around you, and accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



Don't

**When using the motion tracking, ensure that you check around you for safety, securely take hold of your FOMA terminal, and do not swing to an extent more than necessitated.**

The motion tracking is the function to incline or swing the FOMA terminal for operation. If you excessively swing your FOMA terminal, it might happen that it hits against persons or objects, resulting in critical accidents or damage.



Don't

**When a metallic strap is attached to your FOMA terminal, be careful that it does not hit against persons or objects when using the motion tracking.**

Accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



Don't

If you erroneously break the display part and then crystal liquid gets leaked, never take or suck the liquid to or into your mouth, or apply to skin.

If the crystal liquid gets into the eyes or mouth, immediately rinse it out with clean water and then seek medical attention.

When it adheres to your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it away with alcohol etc., and then rinse it out with water and soap.

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight or injury to your skin may result.



Don't

**Do not bring your ears close to the speakers while a ring tone sounds or a melody is played back from the FOMA terminal.**

Otherwise, your hearing could be impaired.



Don't

**Do not open the FOMA terminal by pressing the one-push open button near persons around you or your face.**

The FOMA terminal may hit you or persons around you, causing accidents and injuries.



Don't

**Do not use the FOMA terminal with the hook for Horizontal Open Style protruded.**

Otherwise, injury may result.



Do

**Electronic devices in some types of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA terminal.**

For safety's sake, make sure not to use the FOMA terminal inside such cars.



Do

Itching, rash or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately, and then seek medical attention.

Metals are used for the following parts:

Where it is used	Material	Finishing
Charging terminal	Phosphor bronze	Gold-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Hook for Horizontal Open Style	Stainless steel	Chrome-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Metal part of the one-push open button	Aluminum	Alumite treatment
Battery installation part inside surface	PC+ASA	Copper-plated, Nickel-plated
Shutter key	PC	Evaporated aluminum, hard coating
A logo panel of the Private window side	PC	Evaporated tin, hard coating



Do

**Be careful not to get your finger or a strap caught in the parts when you close or open the FOMA terminal.**

Accidents such as injury or damage may result.



Do

**When you watch a 1Seg program, watch in a place bright enough taking a certain distance from the display.**

Otherwise, your visual acuity could be reduced.

## Precautions for batteries

■ Check the description on the label of the battery pack for the type of battery.

Description	Type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery



## Danger



Don't

**Do not let any metal object such as a wire come in contact with the battery terminals. Also do not carry or store the battery together with any metal objects like a necklace.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

**Do not use excessive force to attach the battery to the FOMA terminal even when you cannot attach it successfully. Also, check that the battery is the right way round when you attach it.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

**Do not throw the battery into fire.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

**Do not pierce it with nails, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Do

**If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.**

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight may result.



## Warning



Don't

**When any abnormality due to external shock such as the deformation or scratches by dropping is found on the battery pack, immediately stop using it.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Do

**If charging is not completed at the end of the specified charging time, stop charging.**

Otherwise, the battery may leak, overheat, become damaged or catch fire.



Do

**Immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and keep it away from fire if the battery leaks or emits an odor.**

The leaked battery fluid may ignite, causing fire or burst.



Do

**Be careful that your pets do not bite into the battery pack.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.





## Caution



Don't

**An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.**

The battery may catch fire or damage the environment. After insulating the battery terminals with tape, take the unneeded battery to a handling counter such as a docomo shop or dispose of it in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.



Don't

**Do not charge the wet battery.**

The battery pack may overheat, catch fire, or burst.



Do

**If the battery fluid comes in contact with skin or clothes, immediately stop using, then rinse it out thoroughly with clean water.**

Skin injury may result.

## Precautions for adapters



## Warning



Don't

**Do not use a damaged adapter cord or power cord.**

Electric shock, overheating or fire may result.



Don't

**Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in steamy places such as a bathroom.**

Electric shock may occur.



Don't

**The DC adapter is for use only in a negative (-) grounded vehicle. Do not use it in a positive (+) grounded vehicle.**

Fire may result.



Don't

**If it starts to thunder, do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter.**

You might be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



Don't

**Never short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter is plugged into the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the charging terminal with fingers or other bare skin.**

Fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury may result.



Don't

**Place the adapter and desktop holder on a stable location while charging. Do not cover or wrap the adapter and desktop holder in cloth or bedding.**

The FOMA terminal may drop off, or the adapter and desktop holder may overheat, causing fire or malfunction.



Don't

**Do not place something heavy on the adapter cord and power cord.**

Electric shock or fire may result.



Not wet hands

**Do not touch the adapter cord or power outlet with wet hands.**

Electric shock may result.



Do

**Use the adapter at the specified V AC.**

If you use it at a wrong voltage, fire or malfunction may result. When using the FOMA terminal overseas, use FOMA AC adapter available overseas.  
AC adapter: 100 V AC  
DC adapter: 12/24 V DC  
[For negative (-) grounded vehicles only]  
AC adapter available overseas: 100 V to 240 V AC  
[Connect only to household AC outlet]



Do

**If a fuse of the DC adapter has blown, replace it with a specified fuse.**

If you use an unspecified fuse, fire or malfunction may result. For the specified fuse, refer to each instruction manual.



Do

**Keep the power plugs dust-free.**

Otherwise, fire may result.



Do

**When pulling the AC adapter into the power outlet, firmly plug it in, taking care not to contact with metal straps or the like.**

Otherwise, electric shock, short-circuit or fire may result.



Do

When removing the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not forcibly pull the adapter cord or power cord, instead take hold of the power plug and then pull.

If you pull the plug out by the cord, the cord may be damaged, which could result in electric shock or fire.



Pull the power plug out

When the adapter is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Otherwise, electric shock, fire, or malfunction may result.



Pull the power plug out

If liquids such as water get in the adapter, unplug the power cord immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock, smoke or fire may result.



Pull the power plug out

Before cleaning, pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock may result.

## Precautions for UIM



### Caution



Do

Be careful not to touch the cut surface of the UIM (IC portion) when removing it.

You may hurt your hand or fingers.

## Notes on using near electronic medical equipment

■ The description below meets “Guidelines on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones – Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment” by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.



### Warning



Do

Comply with the following in hospitals or health care facilities:

- Do not carry the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU).
- Turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- If there is any electronic medical equipment near you, turn off the FOMA terminal even when in a location such as a lobby.
- Comply with any regulations of hospital and health care facilities instructing you not to use or carry in a mobile phone.
- If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded areas such as inside trains during rush hour, as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be near you.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the mobile phone 22 cm or more away from an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical establishments for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting its manufacturer.

Operation of electronic medical equipment can be affected by radio waves.

## Handling Precautions

### General notes

■ Do not wet the equipment.

The FOMA terminal, battery, adapter, and UIM are not waterproofed. Do not use them in environments, which are high in humidity such as in bathrooms, and do not allow them to get wet from rain. Furthermore, if carrying them against your body, they become moist due to perspiration and the internal parts may become corroded, causing malfunction. If the parts are found to have been damaged due to exposure to the liquids, any repairs will not be covered by warranty, or repairs may not be possible. This may be repaired at a cost if repairs are possible.

■ **Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.**

- The screen of the FOMA terminal sometimes has a special coating so that they are easier to see. If you rub it roughly with a dry cloth, it might be scratched. Take care of the way of handling, and use only a dry, soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses. If the screen is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated or the coating might peel off.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, detergent or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printing may be removed or discoloration may result.

■ **Occasionally clean the terminals of the equipment using a dry cotton swab, etc.**

The soiled terminals deteriorate the connection and might cause power discontinuity or incomplete charging. Wipe the terminals with a cotton swab, etc. Take care not to damage the terminals when cleaning them.

■ **Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioner outlets.**

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction.

■ **Do not apply excessive force onto the FOMA terminal and battery pack.**

If you put the FOMA terminal in a bag along with many other articles or sit with the FOMA terminal in a clothes pocket, the display, internal circuitry and the battery pack could be damaged or malfunction. Also, if an external device is left connected to the connector terminal (earphone/microphone terminal), the connector could be damaged, or malfunction.

■ **Carefully read each instruction manual attached to the FOMA terminal, adapter, or desktop holder.**

■ **Do not rub or scratch the display part with metals.**

Doing so might cause damage to the part, resulting in trouble or malfunction.

**Notes on handling the FOMA terminal**

■ **Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**

The FOMA terminal should be used within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.

■ **The FOMA terminal, if operated near land-line phones, television sets, radios or other devices that are in use, may affect them. You should operate your FOMA terminal as far away from such equipment as possible.**

■ **It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA terminal and keep such notes in a safe place.**

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

■ **Do not drop the FOMA terminal or subject it to strong impacts.**

Malfunction or damage may result.

■ **Do not insert an external device to the connector terminal (earphone/microphone terminal) at a slant when connecting, and do not pull it out when it is inserted.**

Malfunction or damage may result.

■ **Make sure that nothing, such as a strap, gets caught between the parts of the FOMA terminal when you close it.**

Otherwise, malfunction or damage may result.

■ **The FOMA terminal becomes warm during use or charging but this is not an abnormality. Use the FOMA terminal as it is.**

■ **Do not leave the camera in places exposed to direct sunlight.**

Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.

■ **Usually, put the cover of the connector terminal and microSD card slot to use the FOMA terminal.**

Dust or water might enter into the FOMA terminal, causing malfunction.

■ **Do not use the FOMA terminal with the back cover left removed.**

The battery pack might come out, or malfunction or damage may result.

■ **Do not apply an excessively thick sticker onto the surfaces of the display, keys, or buttons.**

Malfunction may result.

■ **While you are using the microSD card, never take it off or turn off the power to the FOMA terminal.**

Data may be erased or malfunction may result.

■ **Do not place magnetic cards or similar objects near the FOMA terminal or between phone parts.**

Magnetic data on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be deleted.

■ **Do not bring magnetic substances close to your FOMA terminal.**

Strong magnetic items might cause in erroneous operation.

**Notes on handling batteries**

■ **Batteries have a limited life.**

Though it varies depending on the usage state, you are advised to replace the battery if its usable time is extremely short even when you fully charge it. Make sure that you buy the specified battery.

■ **Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.**

- **Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.**
- **The usable time of the battery differs depending on the usage environment or its remaining life.**
- **Depending on how the battery pack is used, it might swell as its operating life becomes short, but this is not a problem.**
- **Note the following points when you store a battery pack over a long period:**
  - Storage in a fully charged state (the state immediately after charging is completed)
  - Storage with no battery power left (the state you cannot turn on the power of the handset due to battery drain)

These may lower the battery pack's performance and shorten its operating life.

You are advised to store the battery pack in the state of two or three bars of battery icon indication as a guide for when you store it for a long period.

### Notes on handling adapters

- **Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.**
- **Charge the battery where:**
  - There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.
  - There are no land-line phones, television sets or radios nearby.
- **While you are charging, the adapter may become warm. This is not a malfunction, so you can keep on using.**
- **Do not use the DC adapter for charging the battery when the car engine is not running.**  
The car battery could go flat.
- **When using the power outlet having the disengaging prevention mechanism, observe the instructions given in that instruction manual.**

- **Do not give a strong shock. Also, do not deform the charging terminal.**  
Malfunction may result.

### Notes on handling the UIM

- **Never use more force than necessary when inserting/removing the UIM.**
- **The UIM may become warm during use, but this is not a sign of a malfunction. Continue using it as it is.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the UIM into some other types of IC card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep the IC portion clean.**
- **Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.**
- **It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored on the UIM and keep such notes in a safe place.**  
We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.
- **For the environmental protection, bring any unneeded UIMs to a handling counter such as a docomo shop.**
- **Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**
- **Do not damage, carelessly touch, or short-circuit the IC.**  
Data might be lost or malfunction may result.
- **Do not drop the UIM or subject it to strong impacts.**  
Malfunction may result.

- **Do not bend the UIM or place something heavy on it.**  
Malfunction may result.

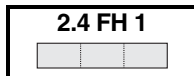
- **Into the FOMA terminal, do not insert the UIM with a label or sticker pasted.**  
Malfunction may result.


### Notes on using Bluetooth function

- **As the security for communication using the Bluetooth function, the FOMA terminal supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth Specification. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration. Take care of the security for communication using the Bluetooth function.**
- **Note that even if any leak of data or information occurs while making connection using the Bluetooth function, we take no responsibility.**
- **With the FOMA terminal, you can use the following: Headset, Hands-Free, Audio, Dial-up Communication, Object Push, and Serial Port. With Audio, you might be able to use Audio Video Remote Control. (Only with the compatible Bluetooth devices)**

## ■ Radio frequencies

The radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the FOMA terminal uses are as follows:



- 2.4 : Indicates radio facilities that use 2400 MHz frequencies.
- FH : Indicates the modulation system is the FH-SS system.
- 1 : Indicates that a supposed coverage distance is 10 meters or less.
-  : Indicates that all radio frequencies 2400 MHz through 2483.5 MHz are used, and that the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

## ■ Cautions on Using Bluetooth Devices

Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for mobile object identifiers that have to be licensed and are used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to “another radio station”) in addition to scientific, medical, industrial devices, or home electric appliances such as microwave ovens.


1. Before using this product, make sure that “another radio station” is not operating nearby.
2. If radio interference between this product and “another radio station” occurs, move immediately to another place or turn off power to avoid interference.
3. For further details, contact “docomo Information Center” on the back page of this manual.

## Notes on handling the FeliCa reader/writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function on the FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves which do not require to be licensed as radio stations.
- The FeliCa reader/writer is operated on the 13.56 MHz frequencies. When you use another reader/writer nearby, take enough distance between your FOMA terminal and the reader/writer. Further, ensure that there are no radio stations that use the same frequencies.

## Caution

- Do not use the modified FOMA terminal. Using a modified FOMA terminal infringes the Radio Law.

The FOMA terminals are granted technical regulations conformity certification as the specified radio equipment under the Radio Law and bear a “technical conformity mark ” on the nameplate as evidence of conformity. Unscrewing the FOMA terminal and modifying internal components void the technical regulations conformity certification. Do not use the FOMA terminal in this state, which infringes the Radio Law.

- Be especially careful not to operate the FOMA terminal while driving.

You will be imposed punishment if you use the mobile phone in your hand while driving. If you answer a call out of necessity, tell the caller with Hands-free that you will call him/her back, park your car to somewhere safe, and then dial.

- Use the Bluetooth functions in Japan only.

The Bluetooth functions on the FOMA terminal have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use them overseas.

- Use the FeliCa reader/writer functions in Japan only.

The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA terminal have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use them overseas.

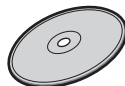
## Standard Accessory Kit and Main Options

### <Accessories>

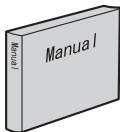
- **P-07A Handset**  
(With Warranty and Back Cover P35)



- **P-07A CD-ROM**  
The PDF versions of "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List" are included.



- **Instruction Manual**  
Quick Manual included (See page 550)

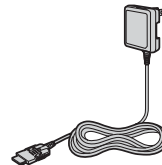


- **Battery Pack P19**

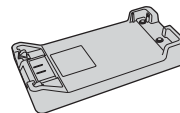


### <Main Options>

- **FOMA AC Adapter 01/02**  
(With Warranty and Instruction Manual)



- **Desktop Holder P32**  
(With Instruction Manual)

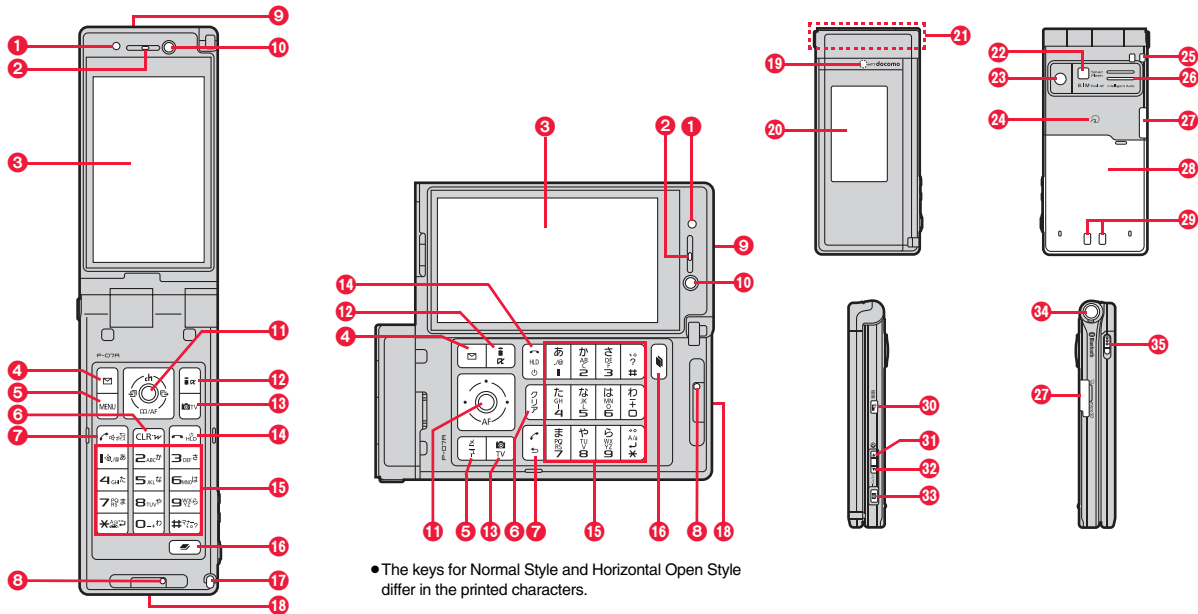


Other Options → Page 508

# Before Using the Handset

Part Names and Functions .....	22
Styles .....	24
Navigation Displays and Key Operations .....	25
Main Key Operations from the Stand-by Display .....	26
Viewing Display .....	28
Using Icons on Desktop .....	<Desktop Icon> 30
i-Widget Display and Operations .....	33
Displaying Description of Icons .....	<Icons> 33
Private Window .....	33
Selecting Menu .....	34
When You Forget Key Operation .....	<Guide> 38
Using UIM (FOMA Card) .....	39
Attaching/Removing Battery Pack .....	41
Charging .....	42
Checking Battery Level .....	<Battery Level> 44
Turning Power ON/OFF .....	<Power ON/OFF> 45
Switching to English Display .....	<Select Language> 45
Configuring Initial Setting .....	<Initial Setting> 46
Setting Date and Time .....	<Set Time> 46
Displaying World Time .....	<World Time Watch> 47
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number .....	<Caller ID Notification> 47
Checking Your Own Phone Number .....	<Own Number> 48

## Part Names and Functions

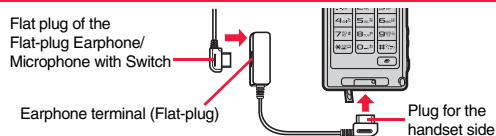


• The keys for Normal Style and Horizontal Open Style differ in the printed characters.

### ■ For using earphone

Connect an optional connector-terminal-compatible earphone. When using a connector-terminal-non-compatible earphone, use an optional plug adapter for connection.

- When inserting or pulling the plug adapter, take hold of the plug for the handset side and insert or pull it straight. Be careful not to take hold of the cover of the connector terminal and plug for the handset side together when you pull it out.
- The Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 (option) can be connected with a triple pole mini plug only. For details, refer to the instruction manual for the Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01.



Example for connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option)



**1 Light sensor**

- For sensing brightness (See page 115)
- Do not cover the light sensor with your hands or do not put a sticker on it. Doing so might disable you to detect the brightness.

**2 Earpiece**

- For listening to the other party's voice

**3 Display**

- (See page 28)

**4 Mail key****5 Menu key****6 CLR Clear key/i-Widget key**

- For returning to the previous operation
- For clearing entered text or a phone number

**7 Start key/Hands-free key**

- For making/receiving calls (See page 50 and page 64)
- For talking with Hands-free (See page 64)

**8 Microphone**

- For speaking to the other party

**9 Infrared data port**

- Used for infrared communication and the infrared remote control. (See page 380 and page 384)

**10 Inside camera**

- For shooting photos of yourself (See page 230)
- For displaying your face during a videophone call

**11 Command navigation key**

- For operation of function or menu (See page 25)

**12 i-mode key/i-oppli key****13 Camera key/1Seg key****14 Power/End key**

- For ending calls
- For ending respective functions
- For turning on the power (for at least one second)/ For turning off the power (for at least two seconds) (See page 45)

**15 Numeric keys**

- For entering phone numbers and text

**16 Multi key****17 Hook for Horizontal Open Style****18 Connector terminal**

- For connecting the AC adapter (option), DC adapter (option), FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option), or Stereo Earphone Set 01 (option), etc.
- Integrated terminal for connecting earphone or for charging, etc.

**19 Call/Charging indicator**

- Flickers for incoming calls/mail and during a call. (See page 118)
- Lights in red during charging.
- Lights/Flickers when you shoot with the camera.
- The flickering pattern and color tone of the illumination might look different depending on the FOMA terminal you use.

**20 Private window**

- (See page 33)

**21 FOMA antenna/1Seg antenna**

- The antenna is embedded in the handset. Do not cover the antenna with your hand for better communication/receiving.

**22 Flash/Photo light**

- Lights/Flickers when you shoot with the camera.
- Used for shooting in a dark place. (See page 240)

**23 Outside camera**

- For shooting portraits and/or landscapes (See page 230)
- For catching sight of persons and/or landscapes during a videophone call

**24 mark**

- The IC card is mounted.
- Use the IC card function placing this mark over the scanning device. You cannot dismount the IC card. (See page 317)

**25 Strap hole****26 Speaker**

- For sounding ring tones
- For listening to the other party's voice when Hands-free is activated (See page 64)

**27 microSD card slot**

- For inserting microSD card (See page 367)

**28 Back cover**

- Remove this when attaching/removing the battery pack and UIM. (See page 39 and page 41)
- Do not peel off the sticker on the back of the back cover. If you peel it off, you might not be able to read and write the IC card.

**29 Charging terminal****30 PushTalk key**

- For making/receiving PushTalk calls (See page 81 and page 84)

**31 Side ▲ key**

- For scrolling up page by page

**32 Side ▼ key**

- For scrolling down page by page
- For checking for missed calls and new mail (See page 120)

**<Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA terminal closed>**

- For activating/deactivating Manner Mode (See page 108)

**33 Shutter key**

- You can focus on a subject by pressing half way when shooting with the camera. (See page 240)
- <Press with the FOMA terminal closed>**
- For displaying missed call records and new mail (See page 33)

**34 One-push open button**

- (See page 24)

**35 Horizontal open lever**

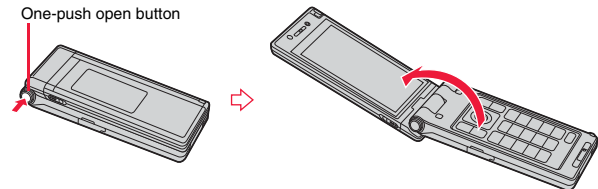
- (See page 24)

## Styles

### Normal Style

You can open the FOMA terminal easily by one-push key operation. (One-push Open)

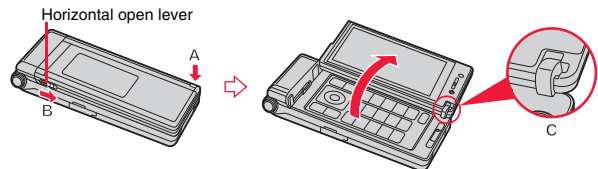
- You can open it also manually without using the button.
- You need to close the FOMA terminal manually. If it does not close, open it fully and then close it.



### Horizontal Open Style

Hold down the part A and open the display part with the horizontal open lever slid into the direction B. From the horizontal display, you can use 1Seg, i-mode, and others.

- If the latch is not in a state of C when you open the display, re-open the FOMA terminal after closing it once.



### Information

- When you open the FOMA terminal by pressing the one-push open button, it might not open fully depending on its direction.
- When you open the FOMA terminal by pressing the one-push open button, be careful not to drop it by its rebound.

### Information

- When you press the one-push open button in Horizontal Open Style, the FOMA terminal will open in Normal Style after it is closed.
- Before switching the styles, be sure to completely close the FOMA terminal. If you operate the horizontal open lever in Normal Style or with the display part unlatched, malfunction or damage may result.
- Some operating procedures and items on the display in Horizontal Open Style differ from the ones described for Normal Style in this manual.
- When the confirmation display to select "YES/NO" is shown and you switch the style, the confirmation display may be cleared.

### Work with Style

You can set which operation starts for when you switch to Horizontal Open Style from the Stand-by display.

- Set./Service** **Other settings** **Work with style**  
▶ **Select an item.**

**Horizontal open menu** ... Shows Horizontal Open Menu. (See page 36)

**1Seg** ..... Activates 1Seg. (See page 253)

**Camera** ..... Activates the camera in Photo Mode. (See page 234)

**OFF** ..... Shows the Stand-by display (wide). (See page 111)

### Information

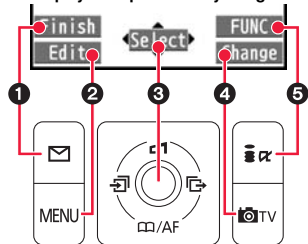
- When you close the FOMA terminal from Main Menu or Horizontal Open Menu and open it in Horizontal Open Style, the FOMA terminal works according to the setting of this function.

# Navigation Displays and Key Operations

## Key Operations in Normal Style

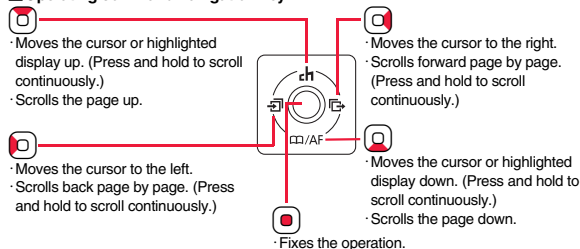
When you want to execute the operation shown on the display in Normal Style, press the corresponding key as below.

### Basic display examples and key assignments



1	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Finish
2	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Edit
3	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Select
	Indicates the direction in which you can scroll and select items with the  key.	
4	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	Change
5	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	FUNC

### Operating command navigation key

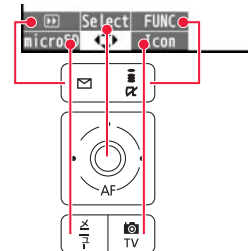


## Key Operations in Horizontal Open Style

While the vertical display is shown, you can operate in the same way as in Normal Style.











While the horizontal display is shown, you can operate in the same way by pressing the corresponding key as shown on the right.
















• Even when you have operated on the horizontal display, the display might switch to the vertical display depending on the function.



## Main Key Operations from the Stand-by Display

From the vertical Stand-by display in Normal Style or the horizontal Stand-by display in Horizontal Open Style, you can execute the following actions by operating each key:

Key operation	Performance in Normal Style (on the vertical display)	Performance in Horizontal Open Style (on the horizontal display)
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the display for selecting an icon, etc. on the Stand-by display. (See page 32, page 71, page 111)	Shows the display for selecting a notification icon. (See page 32, page 71)
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Sets/Releases Key Lock. (See page 134)	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the Channel list. (See page 225)	—
 <b>for at least one second</b>	—	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the Search Phonebook display. (See page 95)	—
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Shows the registration display for the Phonebook entries. (See page 90)	—
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the Received Call list. (See page 55)	—
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Shows the Received Address list. (See page 174)	—
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the Redial list. (See page 54)	—
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Shows the Sent Address list. (See page 173)	—

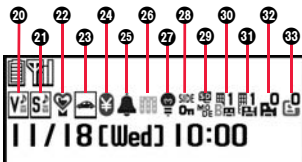
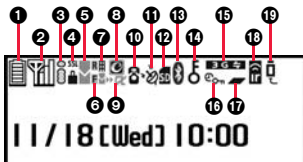
Key operation	Performance in Normal Style (on the vertical display)	Performance in Horizontal Open Style (on the horizontal display)
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the Mail menu. (See page 164)	
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Executes Check New Messages. (See page 159)	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the i-mode Menu. (See page 194)	
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Shows the i-mode menu. (See page 194)	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows the Software list. (See page 291)	
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Shows Main Menu. (See page 34)	Shows Horizontal Open Menu. (See page 36)
 <b>for a short time</b>	Sets/Releases IC Card Lock. (See page 318)	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Activates the camera in Photo Mode. (See page 234)	
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Starts 1Seg. (See page 253)	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Makes a call. (See page 50)	—
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Accesses a voice dial entry. (See page 101)	—
 <b>for a short time</b>	Shows/Clears the icons, etc. on the Stand-by display. (See page 112)	
 <b>for at least two seconds</b>	Turns off the power. (See page 45)	
 <b>for a short time</b>	Executes i-Widget. (See page 311)	—
 <b>for at least one second</b>	Resets Main Menu. (See page 117)	—

Key operation	Performance in Normal Style (on the vertical display)	Performance in Horizontal Open Style (on the horizontal display)
○ for a short time	Enters "0".	—
○ for at least one second	Enters "+".	—
① for a short time	Enters "1".	—
① for at least one second	Measures your current location and executes the GPS function. (See page 328)	—
② for a short time	Enters "2".	—
② for at least one second		
③ for a short time	Enters "3".	—
③ for at least one second		
④ for a short time	Enters "4".	—
④ for at least one second	Sets/Releases Secret Mode. (See page 135)	
⑤ for a short time	Enters "5".	—
⑤ for at least one second	Switches the backlight on/off. (See page 115)	
⑥ for a short time	Enters "6".	—
⑥ for at least one second	Sets/Releases Personal Data Lock. (See page 129)	
⑦ for a short time	Enters "7".	—
⑦ for at least one second		
⑧ for a short time	Enters "8".	—
⑧ for at least one second	Switches View Blind on/off. (See page 116)	
⑨ for a short time	Enters "9".	—
⑨ for at least one second		

Key operation	Performance in Normal Style (on the vertical display)	Performance in Horizontal Open Style (on the horizontal display)
✳ for a short time	Enters "X".	—
✳ for at least one second	Activates/Deactivates Public mode (Drive mode). (See page 70)	
# for a short time	Enters "#".	—
# for at least one second	Activates/Deactivates Manner Mode. (See page 108)	
☰ for a short time	Shows the Multitask Menu. (See page 398)	
☰ for at least one second	Activates a function set by Multi Key Long Press Setting. (See page 410)	
	Switches menu functions. (See page 398)	
☰ for a short time	Shows the PushTalk Phonebook list. (See page 85)	—
☰ for at least one second	Activates MUSIC Player. (See page 279)	
▲ for a short time	Switches between the i-oppli Stand-by display and normal i-oppli program. (See page 309)	—
▲ for at least one second	Activates 2in1. (See page 448)	—
▼ for a short time	Plays back a record message/voice memo. (See page 73)	—
▼ for at least one second	Plays back a videophone record message/movie memo. (See page 73)	—
☰ for a short time	—	—
📷 for at least one second	Activates the camera in Photo Mode. (See page 234)	

※ In this manual, the key operation is described with , , , or  regardless of the style.

# Viewing Display



1		Battery level (estimate) (See page 44)
2		Radio waves reception level (estimate) Strong ← → Weak
3		You are out of the FOMA service area or radio waves do not reach.
		During Self Mode (See page 128)
		During i-mode (See page 194)
4		During i-mode communication (See page 194)
		During packet communication (The icon differs depending on the communication status.)
		During PushTalk communication (See page 81)
5		You get out of the service area while Network Search Mode is set to "Manual". (See page 461)
		During SSL/TLS communication (See page 194)
		Unread i-mode mail or an SMS message exists. (See page 158 and page 190)
		The area for i-mode mail and SMS messages in the FOMA terminal is full. (See page 158 and page 190)
		The area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
6		Unread mail exists, and the area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
		Both the FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card) are full.
		Area Mail exists. (See page 183)

7		Unread Messages R/F exist. (See page 180)
8		The area for Messages R/F in the FOMA terminal is full. (See page 181)
		i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. (See page 159)
9		The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 158)
		Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center. (See page 181)
10		The box for Messages R/F at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 181)
		i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". (See page 159)
11		New i-concier information exists. (See page 227)
12		An i-oppl call you did not reply to exists. (See page 308)
13		During a voice call
		During a videophone call
		During 64K data communication

14		During measuring the current location (See page 328)
		Location Request Set. is set to "ON" or "Reject numbers unset", and it is within the validity period. (See page 334)
15		Location Request Set. is set to "ON" or "Reject numbers unset", and it is out of the validity period. (See page 334)
		A microSD card is inserted. (See page 367)
16		Data is being read to/written from the microSD card.
		A write-protected microSD card is inserted. (See page 367)
		The inserted microSD card cannot be used. (See page 367)
17		A microSD card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 376)
		A microSD card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in MTP Mode. (See page 376)
18		A Bluetooth device is connected. (See page 421 and page 423)
		A Bluetooth device is connected and power consumption is low. (See page 421)

14		During Lock All (See page 126)
		During Personal Data Lock (See page 129)
		During Keypad Dial Lock (See page 134)
		During Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (See page 135)
		During IC Card Lock (See page 318)
		Both Keypad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
		Both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
		Both IC Card Lock and Lock All are set.
		Both IC Card Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
		Both IC Card Lock and Keypad Dial Lock are set.
		Both IC Card Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
		IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Personal Data Lock are simultaneously set.
		IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are simultaneously set.
	15	
16		You are in the OFFICEED area. (See page 453)
		Timer Lock ON At Close is set. (See page 130)
		During Key Lock (See page 134)
17		During Multitask (See page 397)
		Multiple functions are activated. (See page 397)
		While watching a 1Seg program (See page 253)
		During recording of a 1Seg program (See page 260)

17		During recording of a 1Seg program by Timer Recording (See page 264)
		During pause of 1Seg program recording (See page 260)
		During music playback (See page 279)
		During music pause (See page 279)
18		During infrared communication (See page 380 and page 384)
		The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in Communication Mode.
19		The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 376)
		During talk or communication through a USB Hands-free compatible device (See page 64)
		A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected. (See page 64)
		A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 64)
20		Vibrator is set to other than "OFF". (See page 106)
21		Ring Volume is set to "Silent" or Mail/Msg. Ring Time is set to "OFF". (See page 68 and page 107)
22		During Manner Mode (See page 108)
23		During Public mode (Drive mode) (See page 70)
24		The call cost has exceeded the specified limit. (See page 414)
25		An alarm is set. (See page 264 and page 401)
26		A Music&Video Channel program is booked. (See page 270)

27		Backlight is set to "OFF". (See page 115)
		View Blind is set to "ON". (See page 116)
28		Backlight is set to "OFF" and View Blind is set to "ON".
		Side Keys Guard is set to "ON". (See page 134)
29		USB Mode Setting is set to "microSD mode". (See page 376)
		USB Mode Setting is set to "MTP mode". (See page 376)
30		Voice mail messages for Number B are held at the Voice Mail Center in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 452)
		Voice mail messages are held at the Voice Mail Center. (See page 438)
32		The number of record messages (See page 71)
33		The number of videophone record messages (See page 71)

- For the horizontal display, icons appear at the lower right of the display.
- The clock at the upper right of the display (at the lower right of the horizontal display) does not appear when the icon 18 or 19 is displayed.

### Information

- Some characters and symbols on the display and Private window might be modified or abbreviated.
- The color liquid crystal display uses high-precision production technology. The slightest change in the environment or other factors may result in unlit or permanently lit pixels, but this is not a manufacturing defect.

<Desktop Icon>

## Using Icons on Desktop














### ■ Operation when a status icon is selected

	Shows the display for Vibrator. (See page 106)
	Shows the display for Ring Volume. (See page 68)
	Shows the display for Manner Mode Set. (See page 110)
	Shows the display for Remote Monitoring. (See page 79)
	Shows the display for releasing Public mode (Drive mode). (See page 70)
	Shows the display for Notice Call Cost. (See page 414)
	Shows the list of Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, TV Timer, or Timer Recording. (See page 261, page 262, page 400, page 404 or page 407)
	Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 270)
	Shows the display for Backlight. (See page 114)
	Shows the display for View Blind. (See page 116)
	Shows the display for "Set./Service" → "Display".
	Shows the display for Side Key Guard. (See page 134)
	Shows the display for USB Mode Setting. (See page 376)
	Shows the display for playing back Voice Mail messages. (See page 439)
	Shows the display for playing back Voice Mail messages. (See page 439)
	Shows the display for Rec. Msg/Voice Memo. (See page 71, page 73, page 106 and page 412)
	Shows the display for Rec. Msg/Voice Memo. (See page 71, page 73, page 106 and page 412)






### ■ Operation when a notification icon is selected




















	<b>Missed call</b> Shows the Missed Call list. (See page 55)
	<b>Missed call to Number B of 2in1</b> Shows the Missed Call list. (See page 55)
	<b>Record message</b> Shows the Record Message list. (See page 73)
	<b>Videophone record message</b> Shows the Videophone Record Message list. (See page 73)
	<b>New i-mode mail or SMS</b> Shows the Inbox list. (See page 163)
	<b>New chat mail</b> Starts Chat Mail. (See page 187)
	<b>New Message R/F</b> Shows the Message R/F list. (See page 181)
	<b>i-appli did not start automatically</b> Shows the i-appli Auto Start Info. (See page 307)
	<b>i-appli call you did not reply to</b> Shows the i-appli call logs. (See page 308)
	<b>A ToruCa file is received from a scanning device</b> Shows the ToruCa File list. (See page 322)
	<b>A security error occurred on the i-appli Stand-by display</b> Shows the Security Error History. (See page 293)
	<b>Success in downloading a Music&amp;Video Channel program</b> Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 270)
	<b>Failure in downloading a Music&amp;Video Channel program</b> Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 271)
	<b>Missed alarm</b> Shows the contents of the alarm that could not be notified. (See page 402)
	<b>Missed TV timer</b> Shows the contents of the TV timer that could not be notified. (See page 265)



	<b>Timer recording was completed</b> Shows the contents and results of the timer recording. (See page 265)
	<b>Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center</b> Shows the display for playing back Voice Mail messages. (See page 439)
	<b>The Phonebook could not be updated by Data Security Service</b> Shows the update display for Data Security Service. (See page 140)
	<b>Provide Location was executed automatically</b> Shows Location History. (See page 332)
	<b>Provide Location could not be executed automatically</b> Shows Location History. (See page 332)
	<b>You did not respond to a location provision request</b> Shows Location History. (See page 332)
	<b>Software Update is needed</b> Starts Software Update. (See page 525)
	<b>Software Update was executed</b> Shows the Update Completion display or the reason for not completing. (See page 526)
	<b>Software rewriting is possible</b> Shows the rewriting confirmation display. (See page 524)
	<b>Pattern data was updated automatically</b> Shows the updated result. (See page 529)
	<b>The FOMA terminal and a personal computer are connected by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option)</b> Shows the display for USB Mode Setting. (See page 376)
	<b>Charging stopped midway</b> Shows the message to the effect that charging stopped automatically. (See page 43)

#### ■ Operation when a desktop icon is selected

	Shows the dialing display with the phone number entered. (See page 50 and page 81)
	Shows the site of that URL. (See page 194)
	Shows the site of that URL by Full Browser. (See page 196)
	Shows the Message Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 146)
	Shows the SMS Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 189)

	Starts the i-appli program.* (See page 291)
	Shows it on the Picture viewer.* (See page 340)
	Plays it back by the i-motion player.* (See page 348)
	Plays it back by the Video player.* (See page 356)
	Plays it back by the Chara-den player.* (See page 360)
	Plays it back by the Melody player.* (See page 363)
	Shows it on the PDF viewer.* (See page 387)
	Shows it on the ToruCa viewer.* (See page 320)
	Shows the Bookmark Folder list. (See page 204)
	Shows the Private menu. (See page 409)
	Shows the Still Image list for the storage location folder of the camera. (See page 340)
	Shows the list of Alarm. (See page 400)
	Shows the Calendar display. (See page 404)
	Shows the ToDo list. (See page 407)
	Shows the list of Text Memo. (See page 414)
	Shows the calculator. (See page 414)
	Shows the display for 使いかたナビ (Guide). (See page 38)
	Shows the Bar Code Reader menu. (See page 246)
	Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 383 and page 384)
	Shows the Camera menu. (See page 234 and page 237)
	Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 421, page 423, and page 425)
	Starts Voice Recorder. (See page 386)
	Shows the i-concier display. (See page 227)
	Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 272)
	Starts MUSIC Player. (See page 278)
	Shows the Viewer display. (See page 253)
	Starts i-appli Program Guide. (See page 258)

\* When the original data is deleted or overwritten, the desktop icon is disabled.

## Paste Icons to Desktop

You can paste up to 15 desktop icons of such as phone numbers, mail addresses, etc.

### 1 Select "Add desktop icon" from the Function menu of the item to be pasted ▶ YES


- If the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found when you operate from the Function menu of the detailed mail display, select a mail address or phone number to be pasted.

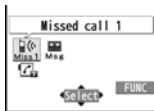
#### Information

- You may not be able to paste the URL to the desktop depending on the site.
- When the URL title exceeds 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters, the excess is deleted. If no title exists, up to 22 half-pitch characters of the URL excluding "http://" or "https://" is displayed.
- Some files and data might not be pasted to the desktop.


## Proceed to Respective Functions from Icons on Desktop

### 1 Press .

- Desktop icons are not displayed on the horizontal Stand-by display. Further, you cannot select status icons by pressing .




### 2 Use to highlight an icon, and press (Select).

- Up to five "Desktop icons" are displayed. If there are six or more icons, "◀" and "▶" are displayed.
- A "Notification icon" is deleted when each function is executed. To delete all "Notification icons", press and hold  for at least one second from the display in step 1.



When a record message icon is selected

#### Information

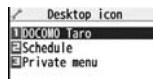
- When the notification icon of "Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center" (  ) appears while you are overseas, you cannot operate the Voice Mail function from the notification icon. Follow the steps of "Operate Voice Mail Service at the Country You Stay" on page 464.

## Check Details of Desktop Icon



### 1 ▶ Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Desktop icon


The list of desktop icons pasted to the desktop is displayed.



Desktop Icon list




### 2 Select the icon whose details are to be displayed.


## Function Menu of the Desktop Icon List

- You can show the Function menu also by pressing  (FUNC), while highlighting an icon from the Stand-by display.

**Add to desktop** ▶ Put a check mark for the function to be added  
▶  (Finish)

**Edit title** ▶ Enter a title.  
• You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters for the title displayed when you highlight the icon is up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters from the beginning of the title.

**Sort**  
▶ Select a desktop icon ▶ Use  to change the order  
▶  (Select)  
• To change the order in succession, repeat the above steps.  
▶  (Finish) ▶ YES

 long press set. See page 410.

Reset desktop	The desktop icons are reset to the default. ▶ YES
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ YES

## i-Widget Display and Operations

From the i-Widget display, you can simultaneously start multiple Widget  $\alpha$ ppli programs and show them on a list.

### 1 Widget $\alpha$ ppli

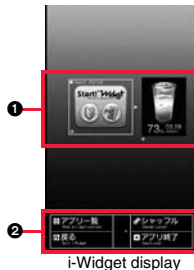
You can show a Widget  $\alpha$ ppli program.

You can show the Widget  $\alpha$ ppli operation display by selecting it.

### 2 Navigation displays

Navigations corresponding to the key operations are indicated.

- You can randomly change the display order of Widget  $\alpha$ ppli programs by pressing [シヤツフル (Shuffle)] from the i-Widget display.
- See page 311 for detailed operations of i-Widget.



i-Widget display

## <Icons>

## Displaying Description of Icons

The symbols on the display (such as , , and ) are called icons. You can check the meanings of them on the display.

- ▶ Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Icons  
▶ Use to highlight an icon.

## Private Window

When you close the FOMA terminal, the Stand-by display appears on the Private window. On the Private window, information appears also for incoming/outgoing calls, during a call, or when you press a side key with the FOMA terminal closed.

- Information appears on the Private window for about 15 seconds.
- The display for Camera, i- $\alpha$ ppli, Music&Video Channel, MUSIC player, i-motion player, Movie player, and Video player also appears on the Private window. If you close the FOMA terminal while you are using another function, the Stand-by display appears on the Private window. However, when 1Seg is activated, the dedicated still image appears.

### Information

- The Machi-chara image and desktop icons are not displayed on the Stand-by display of the Private window.
- Even when a display for selecting "YES/NO" is shown on the Private window, you cannot operate with the FOMA terminal closed.
- When you close the FOMA terminal while a confirmation display for selecting "YES/NO" is shown on the main display, the confirmation display may be cleared.

### When a missed call is found

When " 未着信" is displayed on the Stand-by display, press to display the latest detailed Missed Call display.

You can display the previous or next detailed Missed Call display by pressing . Also, when you press , the Stand-by display returns.

- For a missed call of PushTalk, the Received Call list of the group is displayed.
- When you press half way, the Stand-by display, not the detailed Missed Call display, appears.
- To use this function, you need to set "Called" on page 114 to "ON" in advance.
- The detailed Missed Call display might not be displayed while another function is activated.

## When a new mail message, chat mail message, or Message R/F is received

When "New", "New 1", "New 2", "New 3", or "New 4" is displayed on the Stand-by display, press to display the latest detailed Received Mail display or detailed Message R/F display.

You can press to scroll page by page and press and hold for at least one second to display the previous or next detailed Received Mail display or detailed Message R/F display. Also, when you press , the Stand-by display returns.

- The detailed Received Mail display or detailed Message R/F display appears also by selecting an item by from the Reception Result display and press .
- When you press half way, the Stand-by display, not the detailed Received Mail display nor the detailed Message R/F display, appears.
- To use this function, you need to set "Mail" on page 114 to "ON" in advance.
- You cannot use this function when you have set "Mail security".
- Decom-Anime message cannot be played back.
- The attached melody, effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text does not sound. Also, the voice guidance is not provided.
- The detailed Received Mail display or detailed Message R/F display might not be displayed while another function is activated.

## Selecting Menu

Press of the FOMA terminal to show Main Menu and then execute, set, or check respective functions. In this manual, the way to call up functions from Main Menu is described as a standard method.

Menus are classified by functions. (See page 472)

- Some functions can be selected also by the operation other than pressing . In this case, the operation by the easier way is described.
  - This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (see page 117). If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu.
- Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.

### ■ Scroll Selection

Main Menu is composed of 12 main menu icons indicating each function.

- If you select a main menu icon, the Sub-menu Item Selection display appears. If you further select a sub-menu item, the Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display appears.
- By repeating selecting, you can set and check the function.

### ■ Menu Number Selection

You can display some functions by pressing + menu number (see page 472).

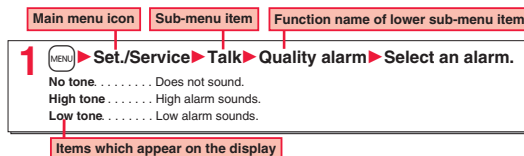
### ■ Multitask is Supported

- You can simultaneously use some functions in Main Menu. (See page 397)

## Scroll Selection

In this manual, the description of the command navigation key operation (selection of top/bottom/left/right, and press of after selecting/entering a function item) is omitted. Scroll selection is explained below using the example of selecting the function "Quality alarm":

### Description Example of Steps

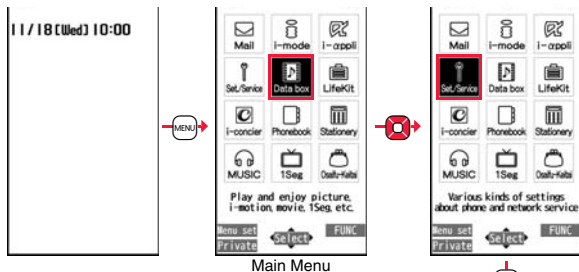


## STEP

# 1

### Select a main menu icon from the menu function

Select "Set./Service" from Main Menu. Main Menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 477)



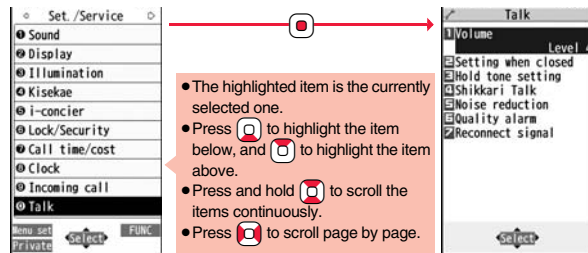
- Press to highlight the icon. Press and hold to scroll the icons continuously.
- If you have not touched any key for 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

## STEP

# 2

### Select a sub-menu item from the menu function

Select "Talk" from "Set./Service".



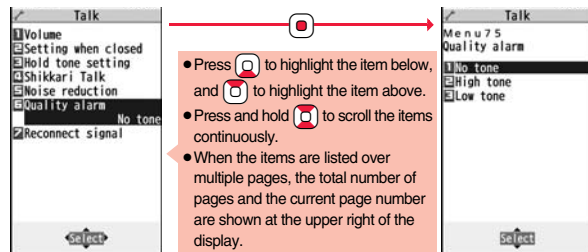
- The highlighted item is the currently selected one.
- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.
- Press to scroll page by page.

## STEP

# 3

### Select a desired lower sub-menu item (function)

Select "Quality alarm" from "Talk".



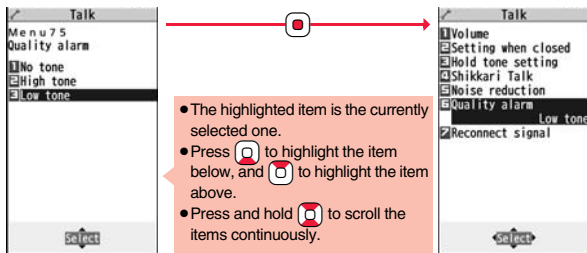
- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.
- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display.

## STEP

4

## Set or check the function

Some menu items have even more detailed menus. The example below shows how to set "Low tone" for "Quality alarm".



## Menu Number Selection

Menu Number Selection is explained below using the following example:

## Description Example of Menu Number

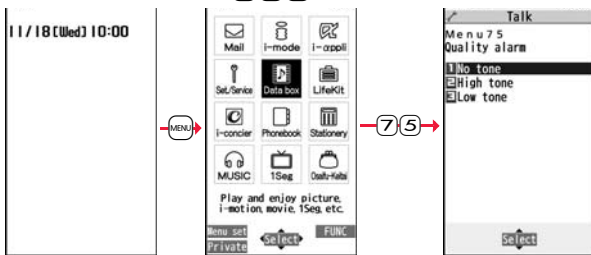


## STEP

1

## Call up the function using the menu number

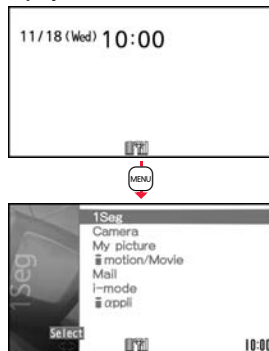
From the Stand-by display, press (7 5).



## Horizontal Open Menu

Horizontal Open Menu enables you to quickly access the functions that are available for the horizontal display. To show Horizontal Open Menu, press from the horizontal Stand-by display.

- Horizontal Open Menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 477)
- When "Work with style" is set to "Horizontal open menu", Horizontal Open Menu automatically appears just by switching to Horizontal Open Style.
- If you have not touched any key for 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.
- Some operating procedures and items on the display of Horizontal Open Menu differ from the ones described for Normal Style in this manual.



## Simple Menu

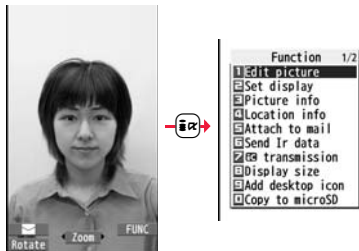
Simple Menu is a menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation. By setting “Menu icon setting” to “Simple menu”, you can show the Simple Menu by pressing **(MENU)** from the vertical Stand-by display.

- Some operating procedures or items which appear on the display in Simple Menu differ from the ones described in this manual.
- See “Simple Menu Function List” on page 494 for the contents of Simple Menu.

## Function Menu

If you press **(FUNC)** when “FUNC” is shown at the lower right of the display, the Function menu including selectable items such as “Save”, “Edit”, and “Delete” appears in each operation. The contents of the Function menu depend on the display from which you show the Function menu.

- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the Function Menu display.



### Description Example for Function Menu

In this manual, the operation of the Function menu is described as follows:

Item displayed in the Function menu

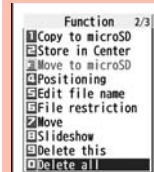
Operating procedures after selecting an item in the Function menu

Delete all You can delete all files.  
→ Enter your Terminal Security Code → YES

An actual operation is done as follows:

Press **(FUNC)**.

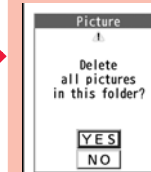
Use **(FUNC)** to highlight “Delete all” and press **(Select)**.



Enter your Terminal Security Code and press **(Set)**.

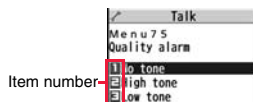


Use **(FUNC)** to highlight “YES” and press **(Select)**.



### To select an item quickly <Direct selection>

Press the numeric key corresponding to the displayed item number.



### Item scroll

When menu items are listed over multiple pages, you can show the previous/next page by pressing **(Page Up)** with the uppermost/lowermost item highlighted. You can press **(Page Down)** to scroll through page by page. When **Page ▲/Page ▼** is displayed on the display, you can scroll through page by page also by pressing **(MENU) (Page ▲)** or **(MENU) (Page ▼)**.

- Depending on the display being shown, such as lower sub-menu items, you might be able to scroll through page by page also by pressing **(Up)**/**(Down)** instead of **(Page Up)**/**(Page Down)**.

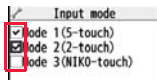
## Check box

With the functions you can select multiple items, put a check mark for check boxes to select them.

Each time you press (Select), you can switch " " and " ".

With some functions, you can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all" or by pressing (MENU) (SEL all) / (RLS all).

• " " is placed to the selected item depending on the function.



## After finishing the operation

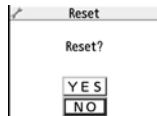
The Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display is shown. When you press , the Stand-by display returns (except during Multitask). The Stand-by display or the former display automatically returns depending on the function.

## To cancel the operation midway

Press . The contents of the setting are abandoned and the Stand-by display or the former display returns. The confirmation display appears asking whether to abandon the setting contents depending on the function. You can press to return to the previous operation.

## When the "YES/NO" selection display appears

Press to highlight "YES" or "NO", then press (Select).



For Reset Settings

## <Guide>

# When You Forget Key Operation

You can search for the functions you want to know and use, and then check the operating methods. You can execute some functions from "使いかたナビ (Guide)". This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

## 1 (MENU) ▶ ステーションナリー (Stationery) ▶ 使いかたナビ (Guide) ▶ Select an item.

おすすめ機能 (Recommendable functions)

... Displays the recommendable functions. Go to step 3.

キーワード検索 (From keywords)

... Enter keywords and retrieve. Go to step 2

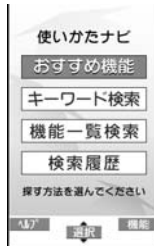
機能一覧検索 (From Function list)

... Retrieves from the function list. Go to step 3.

検索履歴 (Search history)

... Displays up to 30 search histories. Go to step 3.

- Highlight each item and press (AL7); then the detailed operating methods are displayed.
- The 使いかたナビ (Guide) display appears also by selecting the 使いかたナビ (Guide) icon " " pasted on the desktop at purchase.
- You can store "使いかたナビ (Guide)" for Multi Key Long Press Setting. (See page 410)



## 2 Enter a keyword.

Up to 50 search results are displayed.

- You can enter up to 24 full-pitch/48 half-pitch characters.

## 3 Select a function ▶ Select an item.

機能の説明 (Description) ... Displays explanations for the function.

操作のしかた (How to operate) ... Displays the operating method.

この機能を使う (Operate function)

... Executes the function. Operate each function.

- For some functions, press (選択) several times for selection.
- You can display explanations about the function also by pressing (説明) while highlighting the function.
- To delete search history, press (機能) and select "1件削除 (Delete this)" or "全削除 (Delete all)", then select "YES".



## Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that holds your information such as phone numbers. It can hold data such as Phonebook entries and SMS messages as well. By sharing a UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA terminals for multiple purposes.

You cannot use the FOMA terminal for communication such as voice and videophone calls, i-mode, sending/receiving mail, or packet communication unless the UIM is inserted.

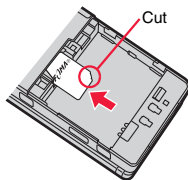
For details on how to use the UIM, refer to the UIM instruction manual. When inserting or removing the UIM, take care not to accidentally touch or scratch the IC.

### Insert/Remove

You need to turn off the power and then remove the battery before you insert the UIM. (See page 41)

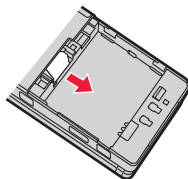
#### ■ Inserting

- 1 With the golden IC surface downward, push the UIM slowly to the end while pressing the surface of it.



#### ■ Removing

- 1 While sliding the UIM, pull it out slowly.



### Information

- Make sure that you insert/remove the UIM with the FOMA terminal closed and held in your hand.
- Take care not to force the UIM into place because this can break it.
- Take care not to lose the UIM once you remove it.
- When you replace your UIM (except during Omakase Lock), you need to enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

### Security Code

You can set two security codes, PIN1 and PIN2, for a UIM. (See page 124)

### Security Function of UIM

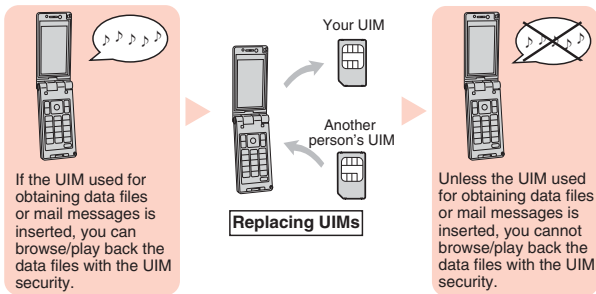
The FOMA terminal has the UIM security function (UIM restriction function) as a security function to protect your data files.

If you obtain data files by the method below with the UIM inserted, UIM security function is automatically set to them.

- When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or Internet websites
- When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments

The data files with the UIM security can be browsed, played back, started, edited, attached to mail, or transferred via infrared rays only when the UIM used for obtaining is inserted. When the UIM used for obtaining the data or files is not inserted, or when another UIM is inserted, these functions are not operable.

- In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as "your UIM" and other UIMs as "another person's UIM".



● When the UIM is not inserted or when another person's UIM is inserted, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, "🔒":

- Videophone record messages
- Templates
- i-motion files
- Machi-chara images
- Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta Full® music files
- Files attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox
- Files attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox/Draft (except the data shot or edited with the FOMA terminal)
- Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted
- Images inserted into Deco-mail text
- Movie memos
- i-appli programs
- Chara-den images
- Kisekai Tool files
- Screen memos
- Images
- Melodies
- PDF files
- Downloaded dictionaries

※ This function applies to the pre-installed i-appli programs, Chara-den images, Deco-mail pictograms, etc. if they are reinstalled (upgraded) from a site.  
 ※ "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

● The preview image for the data file with the UIM security appears as shown on the right.



### Information

- When the UIM security is set for data files, you cannot set them for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone" when another person's UIM is inserted.
- When the data files with the UIM security is set for "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", the FOMA terminal works with their default settings if you remove your UIM or replace it with another person's UIM. Also, a Machi-chara image is cleared. If you insert your UIM again, your settings are enabled again.
- The UIM security function is not set for the data files received using the infrared communication function or data transmission (OBEX™ communication) function and the still images/moving pictures shot or edited with the FOMA terminal.
- Even when another person's UIM is inserted, you can move/delete data files with the UIM security.
- The settings of the following functions are stored on the UIM:
  - SMS validity period
  - PLMN setting
  - Validating/Invalidating DOCOMO Certificate 1 and user certificate
  - SMS center setting
  - PIN1 code, PIN2 code
  - Select language
  - PIN1 code entry set

### Types of UIM (FOMA Card)

If you use the blue UIM with your FOMA terminal, note that following specifications differ from those of the green/white UIM:

Functions	UIM		Reference
	(blue)	(green/white)	
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook	20 max.	26 max.	91
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Not available	Available	217
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	456
Use of Service Numbers for "DOCOMO repair counter" and "General inquiries <docomo Information Center>"	Not available	Available	445

#### ■ WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DOCOMO FOMA international roaming service that enables you to use the current phone number overseas for making and receiving calls using the UIM (green/white) and service compatible mobile phone.

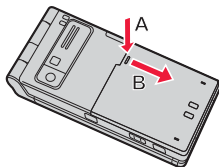
- You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING if you have subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005. If you offered that you did not need WORLD WING at the time you signed up for the FOMA service, or when you have midway canceled WORLD WING, you are required to take the procedures to newly subscribe to WORLD WING.
- If you have signed up for the FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not yet subscribed to WORLD WING, you are required to subscribe to it.
- This service is not available with some billing plans.
- If you lose your UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, immediately contact DOCOMO to take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the UIM. For inquiries, see “docomo Information Center” on the back page of this manual. Note that you are still charged the call and communication fees incurred after you lose it or have it stolen.

## Attaching/Removing Battery Pack

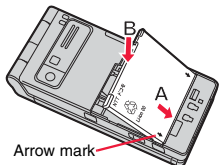
Use the FOMA terminal's dedicated Battery Pack P19.

#### ■ Attaching

- 1** While pressing the “○” part of the back cover in the direction A, slide the back cover (2 mm or more) in the direction B to unlock and remove it.

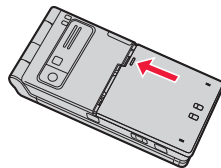


- 2** With the arrow mark facing up, fit the tab side of the battery pack to the FOMA terminal securely, and then push the battery pack into the direction B while pressing it against the direction A.



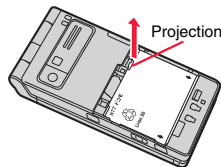
- 3** Put the back cover to the FOMA terminal as illustrated, and while pressing the whole part of back cover downward, slide it in the direction of the arrow to attach it.

- Confirm there is no gap between the back cover and the FOMA terminal.



#### ■ Removing

- 1** Remove the back cover following the step 1 of “■ Attaching”, and take hold of the projection of the battery pack to lift it up.



#### Information

- Make sure that you turn off the power, hold the closed FOMA terminal in your hand, and then attach/remove the battery pack. Also, take care not to press the one-push open button when you attach/remove the battery pack.
- If you try to force the battery pack into place, you could damage the UIM or the terminal part of the FOMA terminal.

## Charging

Use the FOMA terminal's dedicated Battery Pack P19.

### Life of battery pack

- Battery packs are consumables. The usable time shortens slightly each time they are charged.
- When the usable time of the battery pack becomes half the time it was purchased, replacing is recommended because the battery pack is nearing the end of its life. Depending on the use conditions, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this is not a problem.
- The life of the battery pack may shorten if you use i-appli programs, talk on the videophone, watch 1Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging.

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, a docomo agent or a recycle center.



### Charging

- For details, refer to the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (option), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (option), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (option).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support from 100 V AC through 240 V AC.
- The shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100 V AC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter that supports from 100 V AC through 240 V AC overseas, you need to have a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of the country you stay. Do not use a transformer for overseas travel to charge the battery pack.
- Even during charging, you can still answer calls if the FOMA terminal is turned on. This will consume the charged amount so that charging will take longer. Also, the standby time or talk time might be shorter if you charge the battery pack with your FOMA terminal open.
- If you have a long time videophone call during charging, the temperature in the FOMA terminal may rise and charging may be suspended. In such a case, wait for a while and try charging again.
- Remove and insert the connector slowly and carefully, without using unnecessary force.
- Do not remove the battery pack during charging.

**Do not charge for long periods of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.**

- If you leave the FOMA terminal powered on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA terminal for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound soon, because the FOMA terminal receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. If this happens, charge the battery pack correctly. When charging the battery pack again, first remove the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again.

**Estimated usable time for battery pack** (The usable time for the battery pack varies with the charging time and the remaining life of the battery pack.)

Continuous standby time	FOMA/3G	3G/GSM setting [3G]	In motion: <b>Approx. 400 hours</b>
		3G/GSM setting [Auto]	Standstill: <b>Approx. 620 hours</b> In motion: <b>Approx. 380 hours</b>
	GSM	3G/GSM setting [Auto]	Standstill: <b>Approx. 260 hours</b>
Continuous talk time	FOMA/3G		Voice call: <b>Approx. 200 minutes</b> Videophone call: <b>Approx. 110 minutes</b>
	GSM		Voice call: <b>Approx. 250 minutes</b>
1Seg watching time			<b>Approx. 220 minutes</b> (when Mobile W-Speed is OFF: <b>Approx. 270 minutes</b> ) (in ECO Mode: <b>Approx. 380 minutes</b> )

- ※ The continuous talk time is the estimated time that the FOMA terminal can be used for calls when radio waves can be sent and received normally.
- ※ The 1Seg watching time is the estimated time for when radio waves can be received normally with the Stereo Earphone Set 01 (option) connected.
- ※ The continuous standby time is the estimated time for when radio waves can be received normally. The talk/communication time and standby time could be about half of the estimate and 1Seg watching time could be shorter depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance). When you use i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter. Further, even if you do not make calls or not execute i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter if you watch 1Seg programs, compose i-mode mail, start up a downloaded i-oppli program or the i-oppli Stand-by display, execute data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera, play back i-motion files, movie files or music, or use Bluetooth connections.
- ※ The continuous talk time and the continuous standby time may be shortened depending on the network environment in the country you stay.

※ The continuous standby time for standstill is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA terminal in standstill status when it is closed and can receive radio waves normally.

※ The continuous standby time for in motion is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA terminal in the combined status of "standstill" "moving" and "out of the service area" when it is closed, in an area where it can receive radio waves normally.

#### Estimated time for charging battery pack

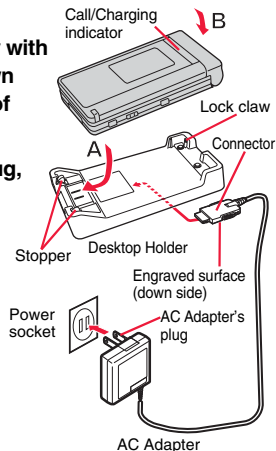
AC adapter	Approx. 120 minutes	DC adapter	Approx. 120 minutes
------------	---------------------	------------	---------------------

※ The charging time is an estimate of time for when empty battery pack is charged with the FOMA terminal turned off. The charging time will be longer if you charge the battery pack with the power of the FOMA terminal turned on.

### Charge with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

**1** Plug the connector of AC Adapter (option) horizontally with its engraved side facing down into the connector terminal of the Desktop Holder (option).

**2** Pull out the AC Adapter's plug, and plug it into a household power socket of 100 V AC.



**3** Put the bottom of the FOMA terminal into the stopper of the desktop holder (A) to fit the head to the lock claw, and then depress the FOMA terminal until it clicks (B).

Check that the Call/Charging indicator lights in red.

When the Call/Charging indicator flickers, dismount the AC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA terminal and then re-mount them for charging.

If the symptom persists, troubles with the AC adapter, desktop holder or battery pack may be involved, so consult a handling counter such as a docomo shop.


- Be sure to charge the FOMA terminal with the FOMA terminal closed.
- The charging confirmation tone (see page 107) sounds when charging starts and ends. However, it does not sound when the power is off or during Manner Mode or Public mode (Drive mode).
- Be sure to set the FOMA terminal firmly onto the desktop holder. Also, be careful that the connector cover or a commercial strap is not caught between the FOMA terminal and desktop holder.

**4** When charging is completed, hold the desktop holder with fingers and lift up the head of FOMA terminal to remove.

- Unplug the AC adapter from the power socket when you are not going to use it for a long time.

#### Indicator and display during charging and when charging is completed

	Call/Charging indicator	Battery icon
Charging	Lights in red	Blinks
Charging completed	Off	Lights

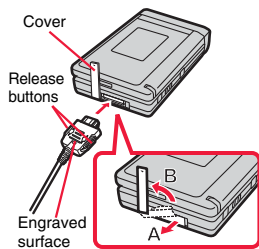
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off, the battery icon does not appear. If you start charging with the battery flat, the Call/Charging indicator might not light immediately; however, charging itself has started.
- When charging automatically stops for safety, "  " might be displayed on the desktop.

## When charging only with the AC adapter

Insert the connector with the engraved surface facing up until it clicks. Pull straight the connector out while pressing the release buttons.

- To charge the battery, place the cover of the connector terminal as illustrated. Pull out the cover of the connector terminal to direction A, and turn it as direction B.

※ Check the facing direction (front or rear) of the AC adapter plug and then insert or pull it horizontally into or out of the FOMA terminal. Malfunction could result if you try to pull it forcibly.



### ■ DC adapter (option)

With the DC adapter, you can use a cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V) of cars to charge the FOMA terminal with the battery pack attached.

For details, refer to the instruction manual for the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02.

### Information

- If the fuse blows off when charging with the DC adapter, be sure to use a 2A fuse. The 2A fuse is consumables, so purchase at auto parts stores in your neighborhood.

## <Battery Level>

# Checking Battery Level

When you turn on the FOMA terminal, an estimate of the battery level is indicated. It is indicated by icons when you set "Battery" of "Display setting" to "Icon", and it is indicated in percent figures when you set it to "Numerals".

Battery level	Icon display	Numerals display
Almost full		100 ~ 80
Slightly low		79 ~ 60
Getting low		59 ~ 40
Fairly low		39 ~ 20
Almost empty		19 ~ 10

- Charge the battery pack when it is almost empty.

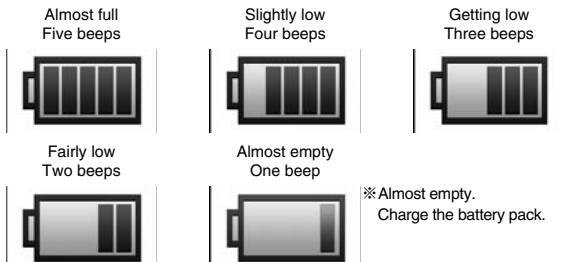
### Information

- Depending on the usage state, the battery level indication might significantly vary.

## Check Estimate of Battery Level by Display and Tone

You can check an estimate of the battery level by the display and sound.

- 1 ► **Set./Service** ► **Other settings** ► **Battery** ► **Battery level**



- The estimate of the battery level is indicated in percent figures below the pictograms.
- The pictogram disappears in about three seconds.
- The battery level tone does not sound during Manner Mode or when you set "Keypad sound" to "OFF".

## When the battery is running out

When the battery runs out, the display on the right appears and the low battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds. To stop this alarm, press any key other than , , and . About one minute later, the FOMA terminal will be turned off.

- During a call, a beeping tone from the earpiece notifies you of the low battery. About 20 seconds later your call will be cut and then one minute later the FOMA terminal will be turned off.
- The low battery alarm may sound when the battery level becomes about 10 percent or less.





<Power ON/OFF>

## Turning Power ON/OFF

### Turn Power On

#### 1 Press and hold for at least one second.

After the Wake-up display (see page 112) is displayed, the Stand-by display appears.

- It may take a while for the Wake-up display to appear.
- If Set Time is set, the current date and time are shown.
- When  is displayed, the FOMA terminal is out of the service area or in the place where the radio waves do not reach. Move to a location where  disappears.



Stand-by display



#### When your UIM is replaced (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)






#### When “PIN1 code entry set” of “UIM setting” is set to “ON”

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN1 code, the Stand-by display appears. See page 124 for PIN1 code.

#### When “Auto reset setting” of “Notice call cost” is set to “ON” (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN2 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN2 code, the Stand-by display appears. If you press  or  without entering the correct PIN2 code, “Auto reset setting” is set to “OFF” and the Stand-by display appears. See page 124 for PIN2 code.

### Check Welcome Mail

The mail messages “Welcome  ドコモ動画  (Welcome  DOCOMO moving picture )” and “緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Introduction of Early Warning “Area Mail”)” have been saved by default. Press  twice or perform step 1 of “Display Mail from Inbox” on page 162 to show the Inbox list.

#### Information

- Each entry display appears in the order of “PIN1 code” → “Terminal Security Code” → “PIN2 code”.

### Turn Power Off

#### 1 Press and hold for at least two seconds.

The exit display appears and the power turns off.

- You cannot turn on the power immediately after turning off the power. Wait a few seconds.

### <Select Language>

MENU 1 5

## Switching to English Display

#### 1 **設定 / サービス (Set/Service)** ▶ **ディスプレイ (Display)** ▶ **バイリンガル (Select language)** ▶ **Japanese (日本語) or English (英語)**

- The following functions are different between Japanese display and English display:

Functions	Japanese	English
Info Notice Setting	電子音 (Electrical tone) ボイス (Voice) OFF	ON Not available OFF
“Clock” of Display Setting → “Stand-by clock/Stand-by clock Wide” → “Day of week”	Available	Not available
使いかたナビ (Guide)	Available	Not available
Voice Guidance	Available	Not available

#### Information

- When you insert the UIM, the “バイリンガル (Select language)” setting is stored on the UIM.

&lt;Initial Setting&gt;

## Configuring Initial Setting

If the date and time, Terminal Security Code, Keypad Sound, Location Request Set., or Font Size Setting is not set, the Initial Setting display appears when you turn on the power. You can set the initial settings also from each menu function separately.

### 1 Turn on the power ▶ YES

- When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code, PIN1 code, or PIN2 code appears, follow the operation on page 45.



### 2 Set the date and time.

You can select "Auto time adjust ON" or "Auto time adjust OFF" for setting the time. (See page 46)

### 3 Set your Terminal Security Code.

You can set your Terminal Security Code required for setting functions. (See page 124)

1. Enter "0000" ▶ Enter your new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

### 4 Set Keypad Sound.

You can set whether to make a keypad sound. (See page 107)

### 5 Set Location Request Set..

You can set whether to notify your current location for when a GPS location provision request arrives. (See page 334)

### 6 Set the size of characters.

You can set the size of characters on the display at a time. (See page 121)

## Information

- When an unset function is found, the Initial Setting display for the unset function appears each time you turn on the power.
- The completed settings are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing or CLR midway.
- When the power is automatically turned on by alarm notification, the Initial Setting display does not appear even if there is any unset function.
- When you finish the initial settings, the confirmation display appears telling that updating software is executed automatically. This display appears only at the first time, and after that, does not appear until you execute Reset Settings or Initialize.

&lt;Set Time&gt;

MENU 3 1

## Setting Date and Time

You can select whether to correct the time automatically or set it manually. The time is set/displayed on the 24-hour basis.

### 1 Set./Service ▶ Clock ▶ Set time

#### ▶ Auto time adjust ON or Auto time adjust OFF

##### Auto time adjust ON

... Corrects the date/time automatically. The setting is completed.

When the time cannot be corrected automatically such as when " " is displayed and the date/time has not been set, the Manual Time Setting display appears. Follow step 2 to set the date/time.


##### Auto time adjust OFF




... Sets the date/time manually.

- When "Notice call cost" is set to "ON", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.



## 2 Enter year, month, date and time.

Use  to move the cursor and enter numbers by the numeric keys.

- To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with "0" as in "01" through "09".
- Highlight "Time zone" and press  (**Edit**) to set the time zone. Use  to select a region and press  (**Select**).



### About date/time correction function

This function corrects the time of the FOMA terminal according to the clock information obtained from the network when you turn on the power.

The time is corrected when you show the Stand-by display with "Auto time adjust ON" set.

If the time is not corrected for a while after you turn on the power, turn it off and then on again.

- Some few second errors might occur. You might not be able to correct the time depending on the radio wave conditions, or the i-appli program set for the i-appli Stand-by display.
- When you receive the clock information overseas and the time difference correction information differs from the previously received one, "Time is adjusted" is displayed and the time difference is corrected automatically. Press "OK" to update the time and show Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, sent/received mail messages and others in local time.
- Depending on the overseas carrier, the time difference might not be correctly adjusted. In such a case, set a time zone manually.

### Information

- Unless Set Time is set, the functions which use the clock such as Schedule do not work correctly. Further, the date/time for redial items and received call records are not stored.
- The set time is retained even when the battery pack is replaced, however, it might be reset if the battery pack is left removed for a long time. In that case, charge the FOMA terminal and then perform the clock setting.
- When "Time zone" is set to other than "GMT +9" or the time difference is corrected overseas, the sub clock (Japanese date/time, etc.) is displayed on the Stand-by display.
- This function supports clock settings from 00:00 on January 1, 2009 through 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

### <World Time Watch>

## Displaying World Time

You can display the time of the specified area on the Stand-by display.

1  **Set./Service**  **Clock**  **World time watch**  
 **ON or OFF**

 Use  to select an area and press  (**Select**).

### Information

- World Time Watch does not appear when "Display setting" → "Clock" → "Stand-by clock/Stand-by clock Wide" → "Position" is set to "OFF", or when you use the FOMA terminal overseas.

### Summer Time

You can advance the time displayed for the overseas country you stay and for a region of World Time Watch by one hour.

1  **Set./Service**  **Clock**  **Summer time**  **ON or OFF**

### <Caller ID Notification>

## Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA terminal to send your phone number to the called party's phone when dialing. Your phone number is important information, so take utmost care when notifying your phone number. This function is available only when the other party's phone supports Caller ID.

## Set Caller ID Notification to Network

 1 7

You can set whether to notify your caller ID on the network.

-  ► **Set./Service** ► **NW services** ► **Caller ID notification**  
 ► Do the following operations.

**Activate/Deactivate** ► **Activate or Deactivate**

**Check setting** You can check the setting contents of "Activate/Deactivate".

### Information

- "Activate/Deactivate" of "Caller ID notification" is also valid for making a PushTalk call.

<Own Number>

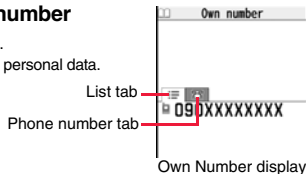
## Checking Your Own Phone Number

- Your phone number (own number) is stored on the UIM.




-  ► **Phonebook** ► **Own number**

You can press  to switch the tabs.

- See page 411 for storing/displaying personal data.



### Information

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can switch between Number A and Number B by pressing  from the Own Number display. " " appears for Number A, and " " appears for Number B.
- When you replace a UIM with another one while using 2in1, 2in1 Setting is deactivated. For using 2in1, activate 2in1 Setting.

# Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

## Making Calls/Videophone Calls

Videophone Calls .....	50
Making a Call/Videophone Call .....	50
Switching a Voice/Videophone Call .....	53
Using Call Records .....	54
Using Chaku-moji .....	56
Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call .....	59
Sending Touch-tone Signals .....	59
Making International Calls .....	60
Setting for International Calls .....	61
Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number .....	62
Making a Call Specifying a Sub-address .....	63
Setting Alarm for Reconnecting .....	63
Making Voice Clear According to Surrounding Noise .....	63
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear .....	63
Slowing Down the Other Party's Speaking Speed .....	63
Switching to Hands-free .....	64
Using Hands-free Compatible Devices .....	64

## Receiving Calls/Videophone Calls

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call .....	64
Switched between a Call and a Videophone Call by the Other Party .....	66
Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls .....	66
Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Terminal while Ringing .....	67
Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during a Call .....	67
Adjusting Earpiece Volume .....	68
Adjusting Ring Volume .....	68

## When You cannot/could not Answer a Voice/Videophone Call

Putting a Call on Hold when You cannot Answer Immediately .....	69
Putting a Call on Hold during a Call .....	69
Setting Hold Tone .....	69

Using Public Mode .....	70
When You could not Answer an Incoming Call .....	71
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer a Call .....	71
Recording a Message when You cannot Answer an Incoming Call .....	72
Playing/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos .....	73

## Making Full Use of Videophone Calls

Using Chara-den .....	74
Useful Functions for Videophone Calls .....	75
Setting Hands-free Videophone .....	77
Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls .....	77
Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls .....	77
Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected .....	78
Setting for Switching a Voice/Videophone Call during a Call .....	78
Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode .....	78
Using Videophone Calls by Interfacing to External Devices .....	79
Checking inside of a Room when You are Out .....	79

## PushTalk

PushTalk .....	81
Making a PushTalk Call .....	81
Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call .....	83
Receiving a PushTalk Call .....	84
Adding Entries to PushTalk Phonebook .....	85
Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries .....	86
Setting for Making/Receiving a PushTalk Call .....	88

## Videophone Calls

**You and the other party can talk viewing each other's images.**

DOCOMO videophones conform to 3G-324M, standardized by the international standard 3GPP. You cannot connect to the videophone that uses a different format.

### ●3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project):

This is the regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

### ●3G-324M:

This is the international standard for the third generation of mobile videophones.

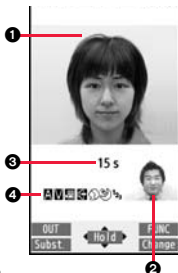
●P-07A supports only 64 kbps communication speed of the videophone.

You cannot talk on the videophone at 32 kbps communication speed.

### ■Display during videophone calls

- 1 Received image (The other party's image through the camera or substitute image)
- 2 Sent image (Image through your camera or substitute image)
- 3 Call duration
- 4 Status

<p><b>A</b>: Voice sending/receiving  <b>A</b> (gray): Voice sending/receiving failed*1</p> <p><b>V</b>: Image sending/receiving  <b>V</b> (gray): Image sending/receiving failed*2</p> <p>: Camera image sending</p> <p>: Still image sending</p> <p>: Chara-den talking</p> <p>: Hands-free activated</p> <p>: AV output</p> <p>: Bluetooth communicating</p>	<p>: Portrait</p> <p>: Close-up</p> <p>: Landscape</p> <p>: Night Mode</p> <p>: Chara-den Whole Action Mode</p> <p>: Chara-den Parts Action Mode</p> <p>: DTMF Transmission Mode</p>
---	--



\*1 When voice sending fails, the other party cannot hear your voice.

When voice receiving fails, you cannot hear the other party's voice.

\*2 When image sending fails, the sent image is not displayed at the other end.

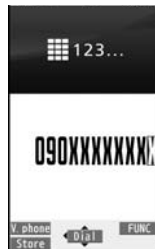
When image receiving fails, the received image is not displayed.

When voice or image sending/receiving fails, it does not recover automatically. You need to make a videophone call again.

## Making a Call/Videophone Call

### 1 Enter the other party's phone number, starting with the city code.

- When 27 or more digits are entered, the lower 26 digits only are displayed.
- To store an entered phone number in the Phonebook, press **MEMO** (**Store**). Go to step 2 on page 94.
- Even when you are dialing within the same area, you need to enter the city code before the phone number.



### 2 When Making a Voice Call



Press or (**Dial**).

- "Ⓜ" blinks during dialing, and lights during a call.




## When Making a Videophone Call

Press  (V. phone).

- “” blinks during dialing and lights during the call.
- Press  during a videophone call to switch between the image through your camera and substitute image for sending to the other party.



The digital communication charging starts from this display.

**3** Press  to end the call after talking.



### Information

- If you hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 444), follow the steps of “To notify your caller ID” on page 59 to enter “186” and redial.
- When an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you can hear the other party’s voice from the earphone. (See page 416)
- If you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the FOMA terminal works in accordance with the setting of “Setting when closed”. (See page 67)
- If you switch to Horizontal Open Style during a call, the FOMA terminal is set to “No tone” (see page 67). For a videophone call, the still image set for “Holding” of “Select image” is sent to the other party.
- You can press numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call. During a Chara-den call, you need to switch to DTMF Transmission Mode. (See page 76)
- You cannot make a call in Horizontal Open Style. However, when an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you can make a voice call in Horizontal Open Style.

### Information

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can make a call after selecting Number A or Number B. (See page 450)

#### <For Voice Calls>

- You can make a voice call also by pressing  and then entering the party’s phone number. If you enter a wrong number, press  to clear the display and then redial.

#### <For Videophone Calls>



- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by “Hands-free w/ V. phone”. (See page 77) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of “Hands-free w/ V. phone”.
- When you make a videophone call with substitute image, note that you will still be charged for the digital communication, not the voice calls.
- If you make a videophone call at 110/119/118 from the FOMA terminal, it is automatically dialed out as a voice call.
- During a videophone call, you can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 74)
- The international videophone call is available using the DOCOMO international call service “WORLD CALL”. (See page 60)




### Display when dialing

The other party’s name and icon are displayed if the party’s phone number and name are stored in the Phonebook. However, the image is not displayed even if it is stored in the Phonebook.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 96) is displayed.
- The phone number instead of the name is displayed when you make a call during Personal Data Lock or to the party stored as secret data in the Phonebook.

### If you entered a wrong phone number

Each time you press , the digit on the far right is cleared. If you press and hold  for at least one second, all the digits are cleared and the Stand-by display returns.

- Press  to move the cursor to the digit you want to clear, and then press  to clear it. To clear all the digits on and to the right of the cursor, press and hold  for at least one second.

### If a videophone call could not be connected

The reason why it could not be connected is displayed. (The displayed reason might not be the same as the actual reason depending on the type of the other party's phone and contract for network services.)

Messages	Reasons
Check number, then redial	You have dialed a non-existent phone number.
Busy	The other party is busy. (Depending on the receiver's phone, this message might be displayed during packet communication as well.)
Busy with packet transmission	The packet communication is progress at the other end.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	Your caller ID is not notified. (when dialing "visualnet", etc.)
Your call is being forwarded	During forwarding
Redial using voice call	The other party activates Call Forwarding Service but the forwarding destination phone does not support videophone calls.
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit for the plan with the limit function (Type Limit, Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You did not make a videophone call from the IP (Information Provider) site among i-mode official sites (at dialing to V-live).
Connection failed	Redial after setting "Activate/Deactivate" of "Caller ID notification" to "Activate". ● This may appear in the case other than above.

### Auto-redialing

If "Voice call auto redial" is set to "ON", and a videophone call is not connected, a voice call is automatically made.

- Videophone calls cannot be connected to the phones that do not support the videophone function, or to the phones that are out of the service area or turned off even if they are videophones. If you have set "Voice call auto redial" to "ON" and attempt to dial a phone that does not have the videophone function, the number will be redialed as a voice call. However, this operation might not work if you call the phone connected with ISDN-synchronous 64K or the ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (as of March 2009), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that you could be charged for the communication.

### Function Menu while Entering Phone Number

<b>Notify caller ID</b>	See page 59.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	See page 62.
<b>Int'l dial assist</b>	See page 61.
<b>Select image</b>	See page 78.
<b>Multi number</b>	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 447.)
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 146.
<b>Chaku-moji</b>	See page 57.

## Switching a Voice/Videophone Call

You (caller) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call. This function is available for the mobile phones that can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

### Switch from a Voice Call to a Videophone Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, "V. phone" is displayed on your phone and you can switch from the voice call to videophone call.

#### 1 During a voice call (V. phone) ▶ Change

- When you select an image to be sent to the other party, select "Select image". Go to step 2 on page 78.
- When "Cancel" is selected, the FOMA terminal cancels switching and returns to the voice call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.



### Switch from a Videophone Call to a Voice Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between calls, you can switch from a videophone call to a voice call by selecting "CHG to voice call" from the Function menu.

#### 1 During a videophone call (FUNC) ▶ CHG to voice call ▶ YES

- Select "NO" on the confirmation display to play the voice guidance and to resume the videophone call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.



#### Information

- You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- When i-mode or packet communication is in progress, the communication is disconnected and then the voice call is switched to the videophone call.
- When packet communication is in progress at the other end, the message to the effect that the communication cannot be switched is displayed and the voice call continues without switching to the videophone call.
- You cannot switch from a voice call to a videophone call while "Multi calling" is displayed during a call if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.
- It takes about five seconds to switch. Switching may take a longer time depending on the radio wave conditions.
- Depending on how the caller's phone is working or on the radio wave conditions, switching between a voice call and a videophone call may fail and the connection may be cut off.
- If you switch between a voice call and a videophone call during a call, the call duration and call cost are counted respectively for each call. You are not charged while "Changing" is displayed.
- You cannot switch between a videophone call and a voice call unless "Notify switchable mode" on page 78 is set to "Indication ON" at the other end.
- When you switch from a videophone call to a voice call, Hands-free is deactivated.

&lt;Redial&gt; &lt;Dialed Calls&gt; &lt;Received Calls&gt;

## Using Call Records

The FOMA terminal can store the other party's phone number and date/time you have dialed or received. You can call back to the other party.

### ■ Redial

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and the older record of dialing to the same phone number is deleted. However, the dialing by PushTalk is retained in Redial separately from that of the voice call or videophone call even if you dial to the same phone number.

### ■ Dialed Calls


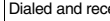

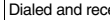

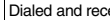

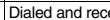
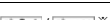
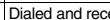



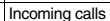

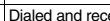
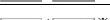
Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records of dialing to the same phone number are also retained.





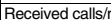
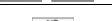



### ■ Received Calls

Up to 30 records of incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records coming from the same phone number are also retained.

- When a call is switched between a voice call and a videophone call, the call of the type that is dialed/received first is stored.
- When more than 30 calls are dialed, the older records are automatically deleted. Even if you turn off the FOMA terminal, call records are not deleted.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 redial items, 120 dialed call records, and 120 received call records for Number A and Number B are stored in total.

### ■ Icons for Redial, Dialed Calls, and Received Calls

 / 	※ Dialed and received calls/missed calls of voice call
 / 	※ Dialed and received calls/missed calls of videophone call
 / 	※ Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk
 / 	※ Dialed and received group calls/missed group calls of PushTalk
 / 	※ Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk via server's phonebook
	Voice/Video messages are recorded on Record Message
	Incoming calls of Remote Monitoring
 / 	※ Dialed and received calls/missed calls of international call
 / 	※ Dialed and received calls/missed calls of international videophone call
	Dialed calls of 64K data communication

 / 	※ Received calls/missed calls of 64K data communication
	Dialed calls of packet communication
 / 	※ Received calls/missed calls of packet communication
	Received calls of 64K data communication and packet communication when no external device is connected
	Received Chaku-moji message
	Records with time difference corrected
	Records for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

※ The unchecked missed call icons are highlighted.

## Use Redial/Dialed Calls

1

### When Using Redial






Press .

### When Using Dialed Calls

 ► **Phonebook** ► **Dialed/recv. calls**

► **Dialed calls**

The list for call records is displayed.

- For redial items of PushTalk, press  (**Select**) to show the Redial list of the group. Highlight a party and press  to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press , you can make a group call.
- Press  (**Change**) to display the Sent Address list.
- You cannot show the Redial list by pressing  from the horizontal Stand-by display.

Redial 1/2	
11/18 10:00	
XXXXXXXXXX	
11/18 9:50	
DOCOMO Taro	
11/18 9:30	
DOCOMO Jiro	
11/18 9:20	
09XXXXXXXXXX	

For Redial

2

### Select a call record.

The detailed display for the call record is displayed.

- When the other party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in the search order (see page 96) are displayed.

Redial 2/2	
11/18 (Wed) 9:50	
DOCOMO Taro	
09XXXXXXXXXX	

For Redial



## Use Received Calls

### 1 Press .






- You can display the Received Call list also by  
MENU ▶ Phonebook ▶ Dialed/recv. calls ▶ Received calls  
▶ All calls or Missed calls.

All calls . . . . . All the records including missed calls

Missed calls . . . The records of missed calls only

In Dual Mode of 2in1, the number of missed calls for Number A and Number B is displayed respectively.

(If unchecked missed calls are found, the number of them is displayed.)

- For received call records of PushTalk, press  (Select) to show the Received Call list of the group with "★" mark added to the caller. Highlight a party and press  to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press , you can make a group call.
- Press  (Change) to display the Received Address list.
- You cannot show the Received Call list by pressing  from the horizontal Stand-by display.







### 2 Select a received call record.



- The other party's phone number is displayed if it is provided. If that phone number is not stored in the Phonebook but recorded as a voice call in Redial, "Callback" is displayed.  
If this caller is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.  
If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in search order (see page 96) are displayed. If there is a call for packet communication, the sender's access point name (APN) is displayed.  
When the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- For missed calls, the ring time is displayed on the right of the received date/time.
- When a Chaku-moji message is received, it is displayed.



## To make a call to a displayed redial item, dialed call record, or received call record

Press  to make a voice call. You can make a voice call also by pressing  (Dial) from the detailed display. Press  (V. phone) to make a videophone call and press  to make a PushTalk call.

### Information

- You can make a voice call to the most recently dialed or received number by pressing  from the Stand-by display and then .
- "Callback" is not displayed for incoming videophone calls and PushTalk calls.
- When you make/receive a call with an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the phone number on the detailed display. If you store a phone number for "Number setting" of "Multi number", the phone number is displayed as well.
- Dialed call records of 64K data communication are not stored when you use a Bluetooth device.
- Even if you make a voice call (or videophone call) to the phone number in a received call record with a Chaku-moji message displayed, the received message is not sent.
- When a call comes in from a party who uses a dial-in phone number, a different phone number might be displayed.

### Function Menu while Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls is Displayed

Notify caller ID	See page 59.
Prefix numbers	See page 62.
Int'l dial assist	See page 61.
Select image	See page 78.
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 450)
Multi number	You can select a phone number to notify the other party. (See page 447)
Chaku-moji	See page 57.
Search location	You can access the site of "イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadoko kantan search)". ▶ YES



<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94. ● You can store the phone number in the Phonebook also by pressing <b>MENU</b> ( <b>Store</b> ) from the detailed display. Go to step 2 on page 94.
-------------------------	---

<b>Add to PushTalk</b>	
<b>Store in P-Talk PB</b>	▶ YES
<b>Store P-Talk group</b>	▶ <b>Select a group.</b> ● When members who are not stored in the PushTalk Phonebook are found, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them.  ▶ <b>Enter a group name.</b> ● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters.

<b>Mail</b>	
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 146.
<b>Compose SMS</b>	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 189.


<b>Ring time</b> [Received Call list only]	You can display the ring time for missed calls. Even if you have set "Missed calls display" of "Ring time" to "Not display", the missed calls which stopped ringing within the ring start time and their ring times are displayed.
---	--

<b>Change font size</b>	You can switch font sizes for Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, and Received Address. (See "Dialed/recv. calls" on page 122)
-------------------------	--

<b>Set desktop/  key</b>	
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 32.
<b> long press set.</b>	See page 410.

<b>Sent address</b> [Redial/Dialed Calls only]	See page 173.
---	---------------

<b>Received address</b> [Received Calls only]	See page 173.
--	---------------

<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Put a check mark for redial items, dialed call records, or received call records to be deleted ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> ) ▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

<b>Information</b>	
<Store in P-Talk PB>	
● You cannot store from the call record for the party who is not stored in the Phonebook.	
<Store P-Talk group>	
● You cannot store in a PushTalk group unless all the members are stored in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.	
<Delete>	
● If you execute "Delete all" from the Function menu of Redial/Dialed Calls, all records in both Redial and Dialed Calls are deleted. Even if you execute "Delete this" or "Delete selected" of Redial, the records are not deleted from Dialed Calls and they are retained. To delete the dialed call records, delete them from the Function menu while "Dialed calls" is displayed.	

## <Chaku-moji> Using Chaku-moji

**When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send your text message to tell the subject during calling.**

- For details on Chaku-moji or compatible models, refer to DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- The sending end is charged, but the receiving end is not charged.

## When a message is received

A Chaku-moji message is displayed below a caller. The Chaku-moji message is stored in Received Calls as well.

- The Chaku-moji message is displayed only during ringing. It is not displayed during a call.
- Even when a Chaku-moji message comes in within the ring start time set by "Ring time", it is received and recorded in Received Calls.
- The Chaku-moji message is not displayed during Lock All, Omakase Lock, or Personal Data Lock. However, you can check the Chaku-moji message from Received Calls after the lock is released.



## Store Messages

You can store up to 10 Chaku-moji messages in the Message list.

- 1 **▶ Set./Service ▶ NW services ▶ Chaku-moji**  
**▶ Create message**  
**▶ Highlight <Not stored> and press (Edit)**  
**▶ Enter a message.**

- To edit a stored message, highlight it and press (Edit).
- You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictograms, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.

## Make a Call with a Message

- 1 **Enter a phone number**  
 OR  
**call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.**
- 2 (FUNC) **▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Do the following operations.**

- Create message** You can create a Chaku-moji message just before dialing.
- ▶ **Enter a message.**
  - You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictograms, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.
  - The Chaku-moji message created using this function is not stored in the Message list.

- Select message** From the Message list, you can select a stored message.
- ▶ **Select a message.**

- Sent messages** From the Sent Message list, you can select a Chaku-moji message to be sent. Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages only are stored in the Sent Message list. If you send the same Chaku-moji message, the older one also remains. When the number of sent Chaku-moji messages exceeds 10, the messages are deleted from the oldest one.
- ▶ **Select a sent message.**

## 3 Press or (Dial).

- Press (V phone) to make a videophone call.
- The Chaku-moji message being sent is displayed while you are dialing.

## Information


- When a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone, "Transmission completed" is displayed, and you are charged a transmission fee.
- When a Chaku-moji message does not arrive at the other party's phone such as when the other party's phone is not a Chaku-moji compatible mobile phone or the call is not allowed by "Message disp. settings" at the receiving end, "Transmission failed" is displayed. In this case, you are not charged a transmission fee.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not be displayed at the sending end even if a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone. In this case, you are charged a transmission fee.
- Even if you make a call sending a Chaku-moji message, the Chaku-moji message is not displayed and you are not charged a transmission fee (the call is not recorded in Received Calls at the receiving end) when the other party's phone is out of the service area, turned off, during Public mode (Drive mode), or the ring time for Record Message Setting is set to 0 seconds. Also, the transmission result is not displayed at the sending end.
- When a videophone call is not connected and automatically dialed as a voice call, the Chaku-moji message is resent as well.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
- You cannot send/receive Chaku-moji messages overseas.


## Sent Messages

Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages are stored in Sent Messages, and you can check for the other party's phone number and the date/time the Chaku-moji messages were sent. Older messages sent to the same phone number are also retained.



- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 10 records for Number A and Number B can be displayed in total.

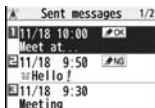
### 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **NW services** ▶ **Chaku-moji** ▶ **Sent messages**

 . . . . . Chaku-moji message successfully sent

 . . . . . Chaku-moji message unsuccessfully sent

 . . . . . Chaku-moji message for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

- When the transmission result is not displayed, " OK" or " NG" is not displayed.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result might not be displayed correctly.




### 2 **Select a sent message.**

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.



## Function Menu while "Sent Messages" is Displayed

Store	You can store a sent Chaku-moji message in the Message list. ▶ <b>&lt;Not stored&gt;</b> • You can store also by pressing  (Store).
Delete this	▶ <b>YES</b>
Delete all	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

## Message Display Settings

You can set how incoming Chaku-moji messages are displayed.

### 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **NW services** ▶ **Chaku-moji** ▶ **Message disp. settings** ▶ **Select an item.**

**Display all messages** . . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages from all callers.

**Numbers stored in PB** . . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the callers stored in the Phonebook.

**Calls with callerID** . . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the caller notifying his/her phone number.

**Hide all messages** . . . . . Does not display Chaku-moji messages.

### Information

- When you set to "Numbers stored in PB", you cannot receive Chaku-moji messages from the callers stored in the Phonebook B in A Mode of 2in1 (and vice versa).

## Prefer Chaku-moji

You can set how your FOMA terminal works for incoming Chaku-moji messages for when "Setting when opened" is set to "Answer".

### 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **NW services** ▶ **Chaku-moji** ▶ **Prefer Chaku-moji** ▶ **ON or OFF**

**ON** . . . . . Does not answer by opening the FOMA terminal during ringing, so you can check a Chaku-moji message.

**OFF** . . . . . Answers by opening the FOMA terminal while it is ringing.

<186/184>

## Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call

### Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call

Each time you dial out, you can set whether to notify your caller ID.

- 1 Enter a phone number  
or  
call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

- 2  (  ) ▶ Notify caller ID  
▶ Don't notify or Notify caller

- To release "Notify caller ID", select "Cancel prefix". Whether to notify or not follows the setting for "Activate/Deactivate" of "Caller ID notification".

### Set "Notify/Not Notify" by Entering "186/184"

You can select whether to notify the other party of your phone number also by entering "186"/"184" before the other party's phone number.


#### To notify your caller ID

- 1 186 → Destination phone number ▶  or  (  )
  - Press  (  ) to make a videophone call.

#### Not to notify your caller ID

- 1 184 → Destination phone number ▶  or  (  )
  - Press  (  ) to make a videophone call.

### Information

- When you make a call and hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 444), follow the steps of "To notify your caller ID" to enter "186" and redial.
- When you make a PushTalk call, "Notify caller ID" is valid, but "notify/not notify" by adding "186"/"184" is invalid.
- You cannot set "Caller ID notification" while "  " is displayed.

<Pause Dial>

MENU 8 4



## Sending Touch-tone Signals

You can send touch-tone signals from your FOMA terminal to use services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc.






### Store Pause Dial

You need to store a number string to be sent as a touch-tone signal in the Pause Dial list. If you have inserted a pause (p), you can send a number string breaking at the point where the pause is inserted.





- 1  ▶ Set./Service ▶ Other settings ▶ Pause dial  
▶  (  )

- When a number string is already stored, it is displayed.
- To delete a stored pause dial, press  (  ) and select "Delete", then select "YES".




- 2 Enter a number string.

- Enter the pause (p) by pressing and holding  for at least one second.
- You can use only  through , ,  to enter a number string and the pause (p).
- You can enter up to 128 digits.
- You cannot enter a pause (p) at the beginning and end of a number string, or enter it consecutively.

## Send Pause Dial



-  **Set./Service** **Other settings** **Pause dial**  
 **Send** **Enter a phone number**  
 or  **Dial**

A voice call is made. Once the line is connected, a number string stored in Pause Dial is displayed up to the first pause (p).


- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing  or from Redial by pressing .

- Check that the line is connected**  or  **Send**

A number string up to the first pause (p) is sent, and a number string up to the next pause (p) is displayed.

A number string up to the pause (p) is sent each time you press  or .

When you have finished sending the last number, the "Talking" display appears.

- To send multiple pieces of a number string at a time, press and hold  for at least one second, and select "Send at one time".

### Information

- During a call, you can send a number string also by displaying the Function menu of the Pause Dial display.
- Some devices on the receiving end cannot receive signals.
- You cannot send a number string with pauses during a videophone call.

## <WORLD CALL>




### Making International Calls

**WORLD CALL** is the international call service available from DOCOMO mobile phones.

**When you have signed up for FOMA service, you have contracted to use "WORLD CALL" (except those who have applied not to use it).**


- You can make calls to about 240 countries and regions.
- The WORLD CALL charges are added to your monthly bill for FOMA service.
- The application/monthly fee is free of charge.
- The service is not available with some billing plans.
- Contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual for inquiries about WORLD CALL.
- When using international carriers other than DOCOMO, contact them.
- The caller ID might not be notified, or might not be displayed correctly depending on the carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call by using Received Calls.

### About international videophone calls

You can make international videophone calls to users of the specified 3G mobile phone carriers overseas and FOMA users. Press  **W phone** instead of  or  **Dial** in the steps of "Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call". (See page 61)

- For the information about connectable countries and telecommunications carriers, refer to the DOCOMO Global Service website.
- Images sent from the other party may blur on your FOMA terminal or you may not be able to connect, depending on the other party's phone used for the international videophone call.

## Use “+” to Make an International Call


When you enter a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold  for at least one second to enter “+”. You can use “+” to make international calls without entering an international call access code.

• If you set “Auto assist setting” of “Int'l dial assist” to “ON”, an international call access code of “IDD prefix setting” is automatically entered.

### 1 (for at least one second)

▶ Enter numbers in order of country/area code  
→ area code (city code) → destination phone number


▶  or  ( **Dial** ) ▶ Dial

- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  ( **V phone** ) to make an international videophone call.
- When you select “Dial with orig. No.”, you can make a call without adding an international call access code.

## Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call

### 1 Enter numbers in order of 010 → country/area code → area code (city code) → destination phone number

▶  or  ( **Dial** )

- You can make an international call also by entering 009130 → 010  
→ country/area code → area code (city code) → destination phone number.
- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  ( **V phone** ) to make an international videophone call.

## International Dial Assist

You can make a call adding a country/area code or international call access code to a phone number. (Except for some countries and regions, if the phone number starts with “0”, the “0” at the beginning is automatically deleted.)

### 1 Enter a phone number

or


call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

### 2 ( **FUNC** ) ▶ Int'l dial assist

▶ Select a country/area name

▶ Select a name of International call access code

▶  or  ( **Dial** )

- Press  ( **V phone** ) to make an international videophone call.
- When the beginning of the phone number is “+”, the display for selecting a country/area name is not displayed.
- When “Japan” is selected as a country/area name, the display for selecting a name of International call access code is not displayed.

<International Dial Assist>

## Setting for International Calls

### Auto Assist Setting

You can set whether to replace “+” at the beginning of a phone number with an international call access code for when you make an international call from Japan.

### 1 ( **MENU** ) ▶ Set./Service ▶ Network setting ▶ Int'l dial assist ▶ Auto assist setting ▶ ON or OFF


▶ Select a country/area name

▶ Select a name of International call access code.

- When no country/area code or international call access code is stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it. Select “YES” and go to step 2 of “Country/Area Code” on page 62 for a country/area code, and go to step 2 of “IDD Prefix Setting” on page 62 for an international call access code.

## Country/Area Code

You can store up to 27 country/area codes to be added for making international calls from overseas.


- 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **Network setting** ▶ **Int'l dial assist** ▶ **Country/Area Code**  
▶ **Highlight <Not recorded> and press**  **(Edit)**.

- If you select a stored country/area name, you can check the stored contents.

- 2 **Enter a country/area name** ▶ **Enter a country/area code.**
  - You can enter a country/area name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
  - You can enter a country/area code of up to 5 digits. But you cannot use #, \*, and +.

## IDD Prefix Setting


You can store up to three international call access codes to be added to the beginning of a phone number for making an international call.

- 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **Network setting** ▶ **Int'l dial assist** ▶ **IDD prefix setting**  
▶ **Highlight <Not recorded> and press**  **(Edit)**.

- If you select the stored item, you can check the stored contents.

- 2 **Enter a name** ▶ **Enter an international call access code.**
  - You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
  - You can enter an international call access code of up to 16 digits.

## Function Menu while Country/Area Code /IDD Prefix Setting is Displayed

Edit	Go to step 2 of "Country/Area Code" on page 62 for Country/Area Code, and go to step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 62 for IDD Prefix Setting. • You can edit the item also by pressing  <b>(Edit)</b> .
Delete this	▶ YES

Delete all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>


- You cannot delete the country/area code or international call access code set by "Auto assist setting".

<Prefix Setting>



## Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number

You can store prefix numbers such as international call access codes or "186"/"184" and add them to the phone number for dialing. You can store up to seven prefix numbers.

- 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **Network setting** ▶ **Prefix setting**  
▶ **Highlight <Not recorded> and press**  **(Edit)**.

- If you select a stored prefix, you can check the stored contents.
- To delete a stored prefix, press  **(FUNC)** and select "Delete this" or "Delete all" then select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

- 2 **Enter a name** ▶ **Enter a prefix number.**

- You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter a prefix number of up to 16 digits. The keys for entry are limited to  through .

## Prefix Numbers



You can add a prefix number to the beginning of phone number when you make a call.

- 1 **Enter a phone number**  
or  
**call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.**



## 2 (FUNC) ▶ Prefix numbers ▶ Select a name

▶  or  (Dial)

- Press  (V. phone) to make a videophone call and press  to make a PushTalk call.
- For making a PushTalk call, adding a prefix number such as "186" or "184" to the beginning of the phone number is disabled.

### <Sub-address Setting>

## Making a Call Specifying a Sub-address

You can set whether to regard the numbers after "X" of a phone number as a sub-address to access the specified phones or data terminals.

- The sub-address is a number assigned to identify each ISDN terminal connected to an ISDN line. It is also used for selecting contents on "V-live".

1  ▶ Set./Service ▶ Other settings  
▶ Sub-address setting ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- Even if you set "Sub-address setting" to "ON", "X" at the top of phone numbers and "X" immediately after the prefix number or "186"/"184" are not regarded as sub-address mark-off symbols.

### <Reconnect Signal>

## Setting Alarm for Reconnecting

 7 7

You can set an alarm that sounds until a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is reconnected after disconnected owing to bad radio wave conditions.

1  ▶ Set./Service ▶ Talk ▶ Reconnect signal  
▶ Select an alarm.

### Information

- The reconnectable time differs depending on the usage status and radio wave conditions. An estimate is about 10 seconds and the call charge is applied also for that duration.
- While you are disconnected, no sound is transmitted to the other party.

### <Shikkari Talk>

## Making Voice Clear According to Surrounding Noise

The volume of the other party's voice is turned up according to the surrounding noise during a call. This setting is effective only when the other party's voice is output from the earpiece.

1  ▶ Set./Service ▶ Talk ▶ Shikkari Talk ▶ ON or OFF

### <Noise Reduction>

## Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

 7 6

The noise sent to the other party is reduced according to the surrounding noise during a call.


1  ▶ Set./Service ▶ Talk ▶ Noise reduction ▶ ON or OFF

### <Yuttari Talk>

## Slowing Down the Other Party's Speaking Speed

1 During a voice call ▶  (Yuttari)

While Yuttari Talk is activated, "ON" is displayed.

- Press  (Normal) again to return to the normal speed.

### Information

- Yuttari Talk is effective only during a current voice call. The speaking speed returns to normal one when you end the call, switch calling parties during Multi calling, or switch from the voice call to a videophone call.


&lt;Hands-free&gt;

## Switching to Hands-free

When you switch to Hands-free, sound such as the other party's voice is audible over the speaker.

### 1 During a call, dialing, or connecting

When Hands-free is activated, " " is displayed.

- Press  again to deactivate Hands-free.
- The sound volume during a Hands-free call follows the setting specified by "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- You can switch to Hands-free even during Manner Mode. Also, you will still hear voice through the speaker even when you activate Manner Mode during a Hands-free call.

#### Information

- While an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you cannot hear voice through the speaker even if you switch to Hands-free.
- Keep the FOMA terminal well away from your ear during a Hands-free call. Otherwise you could affect or damage your hearing.
- Talk into the FOMA terminal within a distance of about 50 cm.

&lt;In-Car Hands-free&gt;

## Using Hands-free Compatible Devices

You can make or receive voice calls from a Hands-free compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option) or a car navigation system by connecting with your FOMA terminal.

You can connect your FOMA terminal to a Hands-free compatible device using two ways of connections as follows:

#### • Connect using a cable (USB connection):




To use/charge via the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option), you need to have the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (option).

#### • Connect using Bluetooth (wireless):

To connect to a Bluetooth communication compatible Hands-free device, you need to register and connect it to the FOMA terminal.


※ For how to operate Hands-free compatible devices, refer to the respective instruction manuals.

#### Information

- To connect using a cable (USB connection), set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".
- " " appears while you are talking or communicating using a USB Hands-free compatible device.
- " " might appear while the FOMA terminal is connected to a USB Hands-free compatible device, and " " while "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode", depending on the Hands-free device connected.
- The display or ring tone for incoming calls follows the settings of the FOMA terminal.
- When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free compatible device, the ring tone sounds from that device even when Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" of the FOMA terminal is set to "Silent".
- The receiving operation in Public mode (Drive mode) follows the setting of "Public (Drive) mode".
- The receiving operation while Record Message is activated follows the setting of "Record message setting".
- When the sound is set to output from the FOMA terminal, the operation for when the FOMA terminal is closed during a call follows the setting of "Setting when closed". When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free device, the communication state does not change regardless of "Setting when closed" even if you close the FOMA terminal.

## Receiving a Call/Videophone Call

### 1 When you receive a call, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

- To vibrate the FOMA terminal for incoming calls, set "Phone" or "Videophone" of "Vibrator" to other than "OFF".
- While the phone is ringing for a videophone call, "Incoming V.phone" is displayed. However, while ringing for a voice call, this kind of indication is not displayed.
- " " is displayed at the upper left of the phone number for incoming international calls.



Chaku-moji message  
(See page 56)

2

### For Answering a Voice Call

Press or (**Answer**) to answer the call.



### For Answering a Videophone Call

Press or (**Answer**) to answer the videophone call.

You can send the image through your camera to the other party.

When you press (**Subst**) to answer the videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party. (Substitute image answering)

- Press during a videophone call to switch between the image through your camera and substitute image for sending to the other party.



3

Press to end the call after talking.

### Information

- If you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the FOMA terminal works in accordance with the setting of "Setting when closed". (See page 67)

### Information

- You might hear beeps (in-call ring tone) during a call. If you have signed up for any of Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service and set "Arrival call act" to "Answer", the beeps (in-call ring tone) will sound for another incoming call, enabling you to do the following operations:
  - Voice Mail Service
    - ... Transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 440)
  - Call Waiting Service
    - ... Put your current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (See page 440)
  - Call Forwarding Service
    - ... Transfer the call to the registered forwarding destination. (See page 443)
- You can set "Reject unknown" not to accept calls from the phone numbers that are not stored in the Phonebook.
- You cannot answer calls in Horizontal Open Style. However, when an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you can answer calls in Horizontal Open Style.

#### <For Voice Calls>

- When "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", the call is put on hold if you answer the call by pressing or with the FOMA terminal closed. When "Setting when closed" is set to "No tone" or "End the call", the other party hears nothing, and when it is set to "Hold", the call hold tone is played back. You can start talking by opening the FOMA terminal.

#### <For Videophone Calls>

- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during a videophone call as "Hands-free w/ V. phone" has been set to "ON". (See page 77) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ V. phone".
- Even if Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is not forwarded unless the forwarding destination is a phone compatible with the videophone conforming to 3G-324M (see page 50). Check the phone you are forwarding the call to and then activate the service. The videophone caller does not hear the guidance to the effect that the call is forwarded. (The message to the effect that the call is to be forwarded appears, depending on the receiver's FOMA terminal.)
- If a videophone call comes in from the phone number to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the video guidance for Call Rejection is played back and the call is disconnected.
- You can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 74)

## Display for incoming calls

### When a caller's phone number is provided

The phone number is displayed. If that phone number is not stored in the Phonebook but recorded in Redial, "Callback" is displayed.

If the caller's name, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, the name, phone number, and icon (or image) are displayed.

- "Callback" is not displayed for incoming videophone calls and Pushtalk calls.
- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 96) is displayed.
- The phone number but not the name is displayed during Personal Data Lock. However, when "Phonebook available" is set to "Accept" for "Customize" of Personal Data Lock, the name is displayed even during Personal Data Lock.
- For a forwarded call, the forwarder's phone number is displayed below the caller. (It might not be displayed in the case of some forwarders.)
- When you receive a call to an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the caller. (With a forwarded call, you can press (Change) to switch to display of the forwarder.)

### When a caller's phone number is not provided

The reason for no caller ID is displayed. (See page 138)

## Function Menu while a Call is Ringing

Call rejection	You can disconnect the call without answering.
Call forwarding	See page 443.
Voice mail	See page 440.

## Switched between a Call and a Videophone Call by the Other Party

When you have set "Notify switchable mode" to "Indication ON", a caller (the other party) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- You (receiving end) cannot switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

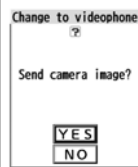
## Switched from a Voice Call to Videophone Call by the Other Party

### 1 The display for switching to a videophone call appears during a voice call.

**YES** . . . Sends the image through your camera to the caller.

**NO** . . . Sends a pre-installed substitute image to the caller.

- While switching, the message to that effect is displayed and the voice guidance is played back.



## Switched from a Videophone Call to Voice Call by the Other Party

When the caller (the other party) switches a videophone call to a voice call, the message telling that the call is being switched appears, the voice guidance is played back, and then the call is switched to a voice call.

## <Answer Setting>

## Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls

You can set to start talking (Any key answer) or to stop the ring tone (Quick silent) by pressing a key besides , , (for videophone call), or (for PushTalk call) for when a call or PushTalk call comes in.

### 1 ▶ Set./Service ▶ Incoming call ▶ Answer setting ▶ Select a key operation.

#### Any key answer

You can start talking by pressing any key shown below:

Voice call ※1 ※2	, ,  through , , , , ,  ※3, ,
PushTalk call	, , ,  through , , , , , ,

- When receiving a videophone call, you can start talking by pressing , or .

### Quick silent

The following are the keys you can press to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance:

When "Setting when opened" is set to "Keep ringing", you can stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance also by opening the FOMA terminal in Normal Style. Even if you stop it, the other party still hears a ringback tone.

Voice call※1※2	○ through      ※3
Videophone call※2	○ through     ※3
PushTalk call	○ through

- After you stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance, you can start talking by pressing (for videophone calls), or (for PushTalk calls).

### OFF

You can start talking by pressing a key shown below:

Voice call	
Videophone call	
PushTalk call	

- ※1 You can activate Any Key Answer or Quick Silent also by pressing when five record messages have already been recorded.
- ※2 During Key Lock, you can activate Any Key Answer and Quick Silent by pressing and holding for at least one second.
- ※3 While "Change" is displayed, you cannot activate Any Key Answer or Quick Silent by pressing .

### Information

- While an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you can press the switch to start talking, regardless of "Answer setting". (See page 417)

### <Setting when Opened>

## Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Terminal while Ringing

- Set./Service** **Incoming call**  
▶ **Setting when opened** ▶ **Select an incoming type**  
▶ **Keep ringing or Answer**

**Keep ringing** . . . You can keep the incoming call ringing.

**Answer** . . . . . You can answer the incoming call. For videophone calls, the still image set for "Substitute image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.

### Information

- You cannot answer calls by opening the FOMA terminal in Horizontal Open Style even when "Answer" is set.

### <Setting when Closed>

## Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during a Call

### Set Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during a Voice Call/Videophone Call

- Set./Service** **Talk** **Setting when closed**  
▶ **Phone/Videophone** ▶ **Select an item.**

**No tone** . . . . . The voice is muted. The hold tone does not sound. The setting is completed.

**Hold** . . . . . The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Hold tone setting". For videophone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.

**End the call** . . . The call is finished. This is the same operation as pressing during a call. The setting is completed.

## 2 Speaker ON or Speaker OFF

**Speaker ON** . . . . The hold tone sounds from the speaker.

**Speaker OFF** . . . The hold tone does not sound from the speaker.

## Set Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during PushTalk

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Talk** ▶ **Setting when closed**  
▶ **PushTalk** ▶ **Speaker call or End the call**

### Information








- This function is disabled when an earphone/microphone (option) is connected. The communication state does not change even if you close the FOMA terminal during a voice call or PushTalk call. However, if you close the FOMA terminal during a videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party and the call continues.
- If you close the FOMA terminal during a videophone call with "No tone" set, the substitute image is sent to the other party. When "Hold" is set, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is sent.
- Even when "End the call" has been set, the call does not end if you close your FOMA terminal from Horizontal Open Style. "No tone" works for a voice call/videophone call, and "Speaker call" works for a PushTalk call.

## <Volume>

## Adjusting Earpiece Volume

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Talk** ▶ **Volume** ▶ **Use**  or  to adjust the earpiece volume.

Adjust the earpiece volume to Level 1 (minimum) through Level 6 (maximum).

- You can adjust the volume by pressing  or  during a voice call and calling,  or  during a videophone call and PushTalk call, and by pressing and holding  (for at least one second) while you are entering a phone number. Press  or  within two seconds to adjust it.

### Information

- The earpiece volume adjusted during a call is retained even after the call ends.
- When you adjust the earpiece volume, the sound volume during a Hands-free call or speaker call for PushTalk is also adjusted.





## <Ring Volume>



## Adjusting Ring Volume

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming calls and mail.

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Ring volume**  
▶ **Select an incoming type**  
▶ **Use**  **to adjust the volume.**

- The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while "Ring volume" is set to "Silent":
  - : Set for "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone".
  - : Set for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".
  - : Set for "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone", and for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".
- If you have set "Step", the ring tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.
- While the phone is ringing for a voice call or videophone call, you can adjust the ring volume by pressing . However, you cannot adjust the ring volume in the following cases:
  - When "Ring volume" is set to "Step"
  - When "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent" and you stop the ring tone or voice guidance
  - During Manner Mode
  - When a call is cut off within the ring start time specified by "Ring time"

&lt;On Hold&gt;
















## Putting a Call on Hold when You cannot Answer Immediately

### 1 During ringing


The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps for confirmation and the call is put on answer-hold (On Hold).

- The confirmation tone does not sound during Manner Mode or when "Ring volume" is "Silent".
- The other party hears the hold tone set for "On hold tone" of "Hold tone setting". For videophone calls, the still image set for "On hold" of "Select image" is displayed.

### 2 Press or (Answer) to release hold and answer the call.

- If "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", you can release hold of voice calls by pressing any key of  through , , , , , , , , , , or .
- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing  or  (Answer) to release hold. If you press  (Subst) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.

#### Information

- The caller is charged for the call even during answer-hold (On Hold).
- If you press  during answer-hold (On Hold), the call will be disconnected.





&lt;Holding&gt;

## Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

### 1 During a call (Hold)

- The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Hold tone setting". For videophone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.
- You can put the call on hold by closing the FOMA terminal during the call if you have set "Setting when closed" to "Hold".

### 2 Press or (Answer) to release hold and answer the call.

- When you have put a voice call on hold, you can release the hold also by pressing .
- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing  or  (Answer) to release hold. If you press  (Subst) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.
- If you have set "Setting when closed" to "Hold" and put a call on hold by closing the FOMA terminal, you can release hold and answer the call by opening the FOMA terminal or by connecting an earphone/microphone (option). If you connect an earphone/microphone to release hold and answer a videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party.

#### Information

- The caller is charged for the call even while the call is on hold.
- If a new call comes in while the current call is put on hold, the hold (Holding) is released.

&lt;Hold Tone Setting&gt;

## Setting Hold Tone

You can set the guidance the other party hears while a call is put on hold.

### 1 Set./Service Hold tone setting Select a hold tone.



**Tone 1/2** . . . The caller hears the pre-installed guidance in Japanese.

#### RHAPSODY ON A THEME OF

. . . . . The caller hears the melody. You can set this for "Holding tone" only.

#### Voice announce

. . . . . The caller hears the sound recorded by "Voice announce". If it has not been recorded, this is not displayed.

- Press  (Play) to play back a hold tone. Press  to end the demo playback.


## Using Public Mode

### Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)


**Public mode is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public mode, the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently driving or in a place where you should refrain from speaking on the phone (a train, bus, movie theater, etc.). Then the call is disconnected.**

- Voice Mail Service<sup>※1</sup>, Call Forwarding Service<sup>※1</sup>, and Caller ID Display Request Service<sup>※2</sup> work taking priority over Public mode.
- ※1 If a ring time is set to other than 0 seconds for incoming calls, the service works after the Public mode guidance.
- ※2 When the other party notifies you of the phone number, Public mode works.
- Public mode does not work to the calls from the party set to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service.


### 1 Press and hold for at least one second.

Public mode is activated and "" is displayed.


When a call comes in, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

- To deactivate Public mode, perform the same operation. Then, Public mode is deactivated and "" disappears.

### Information

- You can activate/deactivate Public mode only from the Stand-by display. You can activate/deactivate Public mode even when "" is displayed.
- You can make calls as usual even during Public mode.
- If you make an emergency call at 110/119/118, Public mode is released.
- When Public mode and Manner Mode are activated simultaneously, Public mode has priority.
- If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (The Public mode guidance is not played back.)
- You cannot use this function during data communication.

### When Public mode (Drive mode) is activated

- Even when a call comes in, the ring tone does not sound. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received calls". The guidance is played back to the caller to the effect that you are currently driving or in an area where mobile phones should not be used. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you are driving is conveyed to them.
- However, when the power is off or "" is displayed, the caller hears the out-of-service area guidance instead of the Public mode guidance.
- The ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker even when mail or a message comes in. In addition, the set vibrator does not work.
- The ring tone for 64K data communication, alarm tone, charging confirmation tone, the ring tone for i-øppli call and effect tone at the start of i-Widget do not sound, and a melody while an i-øppli program is running is not played back.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed.
- See page 70 for how Public mode (Drive mode) and each network service work for incoming calls when they are simultaneously activated.

### Using Public Mode (Power Off)

**Public mode (Power off) is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public mode (Power off), the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently in a place where the power should be turned off (hospital, airplane, around priority seat in a train, etc.). Then the call is disconnected.**

### 1 Enter "✳25251"

Public mode (Power off) is set. (Nothing is changed on the Stand-by display.) After setting Public mode (Power off) and turning off the power, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

- To release Public mode (Power off), dial "✳25250".
- To check the setting for Public mode (Power off), dial "✳25259".



## When Public mode (Power off) is activated

The setting stays activated until you dial “\*25250” to deactivate Public mode (Power off). You cannot deactivate the setting just by turning on the power.

The guidance is played back to the caller telling that you are currently in a place where you should turn off the power. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message “Connection failed” appears on the caller’s display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you do not participate is conveyed to them.

The Public mode (Power off) guidance is played back even when you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.

· See page 70 for how Public mode (Power off) and each network service work for incoming calls when they are simultaneously activated.

## <Missed Calls>

# When You could not Answer an Incoming Call

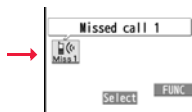
When you could not answer calls (Missed calls), the “Notification icon” appears on the Stand-by display. You can check Received Calls by selecting the icon.



- 1 Press or to return to the former display.
- When multiple icons are found, use to highlight an icon and press .
- See page 33 for when the FOMA terminal is closed.



Notification icon



## <Record Message Setting>

MENU 5 5

# Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer a Call

By activating Record Message, you can play back an answer message to incoming calls and record callers’ voice/video messages when you cannot answer them even if you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service.

You can record up to five messages for voice calls and up to two messages for videophone calls. Each message can be recorded for up to 20 seconds.

## Activate Record Message

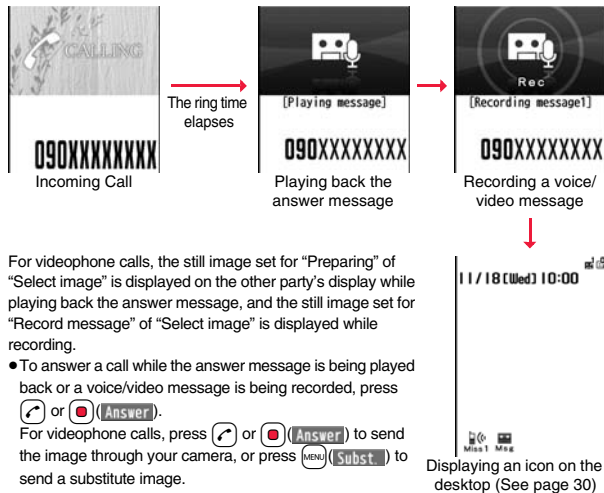
- 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo  
▶ Record message setting ▶ ON or OFF  
▶ Select an answer message.

- Press (Play) to play back the answer message. Press to end the demo playback.
- When “Japanese 1”, “Japanese 2”, or “English” is set, a beep sounds after playing back the answer message to the other party. If “Voice announce” is set, the beep does not sound.

## 2 Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter from “000” through “120” in three digits.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.
- While Record Message is activated, “”~“5” (the number of recorded messages for voice calls) and “”~“2” (the number of recorded messages for videophone calls) are displayed.

## Incoming calls when Record Message Setting is set to "ON"



For videophone calls, the still image set for "Preparing" of "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display while playing back the answer message, and the still image set for "Record message" of "Select image" is displayed while recording.

• To answer a call while the answer message is being played back or a voice/video message is being recorded, press or (Answer).

For videophone calls, press or (Answer) to send the image through your camera, or press (Subst) to send a substitute image.

You can answer a call also by pressing the switch on an earphone/microphone (option). For videophone calls, the image through your camera is sent to the other party.

## Information

- Record Message does not work when is displayed.
- When Public mode (Drive mode) and Record Message are simultaneously activated, the former has priority and the latter does not work.
- The priority order of answer messages is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Record message setting".
- If "Voice announce" selected as an answer message is deleted, the answer message will be set to "Japanese 1".

## Information

- When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set at the same time as Record Message, the priority depends on the ring time set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. To give Record Message priority, set the ring time for Record Message Setting shorter than that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Even when you do this, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works if there are already five record messages for voice calls and two record messages for videophone calls.
- You cannot receive a call from a third party while a voice/video message is being recorded. The third party will hear the busy tone.

## &lt;Quick Record Message&gt;

## Recording a Message when You cannot Answer an Incoming Call

Even if a call comes in while Record Message is not activated, you can record the caller's voice/video message just for that incoming call.

## 1 During ringing (Memo) or

The caller will hear the answer message and then can leave you a voice/video message.

- During Key Lock, press and hold for at least one second.
- Record Message does not work when five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded. Also if you press while a PushTalk call is arriving, Record Message does not work and Manner Mode is set.
- When "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", Record Message does not work even if you press with the FOMA terminal closed.

<Play/Erase Messages>  
<Play/Erase Videophone Messages>

MENU 5 5

## Playing/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone Record Messages/ Movie Memos

### Play Back/Erase Record Messages/a Voice Memo

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo

▶ Play/Erase msg.

▶ Select a record message or voice memo.



A beep sounds and playback starts.

- On the Record Message list, recorded items are indicated by "★".
- It is played back at the volume set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- When playback ends, a double-beep sounds and the message "Playing" is cleared from the display.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback. When a caller's phone number is provided, it is displayed. If the caller is stored in the Phonebook, his/her name is also displayed. However, the name is not displayed and the phone number only is displayed in the following cases:
  - When you play back a record message from the caller stored as secret data in Normal Mode
  - When you play back a record message for Number A in B Mode (or vice versa) while using 2in1
- If the caller's phone number is displayed during playback, you can make a voice call to that phone number by pressing . Press to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

#### To play back using

From the vertical Stand-by display, press to play back the latest record message. When record messages are not recorded, a voice memo is played back.

#### To skip to next message

Each time you press during playback, messages are played back in the following order: the next new record message → the oldest record message → a voice memo.

#### To cancel playback midway

Press (Stop) or (CLR).

### Play Back/Erase Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo

▶ Play/Erase VP msg.

▶ Select a videophone record message or movie memo.



- On the Videophone Record Message list, recorded items are indicated by "★".
- It is played back at the same volume of the playback sound of i-motion files.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback.

#### To play back using

From the vertical Stand-by display, press and hold for at least one second to play back the latest videophone record message. When videophone record messages are not recorded, the latest movie memo is played back.

#### To cancel playback midway

Press (Stop) or (CLR).

### Function Menu of the Record Message List/Videophone Record Message List

Play	You can play back the message.
Erase this	<p>▶ YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can erase the message/memo also by pressing  (Erase) during playback.</li></ul>

<b>Erase rec. msg.</b>	You can erase all record messages from the Record Message list, and can erase all videophone record messages from the Videophone Record Message list. ▶ YES
<b>Erase movie memo</b> [Videophone Record Message list only]	You can erase all movie memos. ▶ YES
<b>Erase all</b>	You can erase all record messages and a voice memo from the Record Message list, and can erase all videophone record messages and movie memos from the Videophone Record Message list. ▶ YES

## Using Chara-den


**You can set up for sending a Chara-den image to the other party.**




- See page 359 for Chara-den images.

### Set by Call

**You can set a Chara-den image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.**

#### 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den list ▶ (V. phone)

Enter the destination phone number and press  (V. phone) to make a videophone call.

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing  or from Redial by pressing .


### Information

- The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select image".

## Substitute Image

**You can set a Chara-den image for "Substitute image" of "Select image".**







#### 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den list/Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Substitute image

- From the Chara-den list, you can set it also by pressing  (Subst.).

## Chara-den Setup

**You can perform settings for a Chara-den call. These settings are effective only for during a videophone call.**

#### 1 During a Chara-den call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ Do the following operations.

<b>Switch Chara-den</b>	▶ <b>Select a Chara-den image.</b> • If you switch Chara-den images, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.
<b>Action list</b>	You can display the list for actions that you can operate. • Highlight an action and press  (Select) to execute the action. Press  (Detail) to check the details of the action. • You can display the Action list also by pressing  .
<b>Change action</b>	You can switch the action mode between Whole Action Mode (  ) and Parts Action Mode (  ). • You can switch modes also by pressing  .
<b>SW substitute img.</b>	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for "Pre-installed" of "Select image".
<b>SW orig. subst. img.</b>	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for "Original" of "Select image".

## Useful Functions for Videophone Calls

### Switching Cameras

At videophone start-up | Inside camera

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from through the inside camera to through the outside camera.

#### 1 During a videophone call ► (IN) (OUT)

- Press (IN) again to switch to the image through the inside camera.
- The setting here is effective only for the current videophone call.

### Send Substitute Images

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from the image through your camera to the still image or Chara-den image set as the substitute image.

See page 359 for Chara-den.

#### 1 During a videophone call ► (MENU) (Subst.)

The substitute image is sent to the other party.

"Subst." is displayed while the still substitute image is being sent, and "Hold" is displayed if you have set a Chara-den image as a substitute image (during a Chara-den call).

- Press (MENU) (My side) again to switch from the substitute image to the image through your camera.

### Information

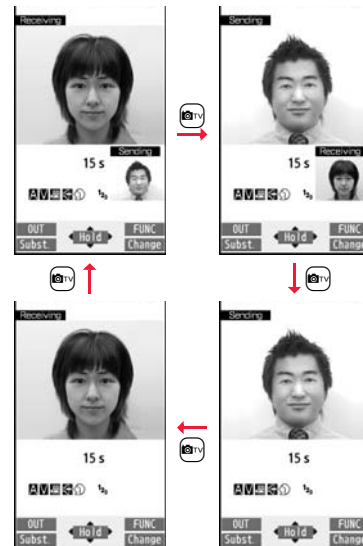
- The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select image". Note that "Setting for Phonebook entry" and "Group setting" are disabled when a videophone call comes in without notifying the caller ID.
- Even when you make a videophone call sending a substitute image, you are charged for the digital communication.

### Switch Image Display Positions

You can switch the display locations of the received image and the sent image.

#### 1 During a videophone call, press (TV) (Change).

- Each time you press (TV) (Change), the displays switch.



## Zoom

At videophone start-up	WIDE
------------------------	------

You can adjust the magnification for the camera image to be sent to the other party. During a videophone call, the maximum magnification is about 1.9 times for the inside camera and about 6.9 times for the outside camera.

### 1 During a videophone call

▶ Use  to adjust the magnification.

- The former zoom setting returns when the videophone call ends.

## Function Menu during Videophone Call

<b>CHG to voice call</b>	See page 53.
<b>Photo light</b>	You can turn on the photo light while sending the images through the outside camera. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
At videophone start-up OFF	
<b>Talk on BT/Phone</b>	You can set whether to communicate through the FOMA terminal or a Bluetooth device. (See page 423)
<b>Send DTMF tone/ DTMF tone OFF</b>	During a Chara-den call, you can switch to the DTMF Transmission Mode that enables you to enter the data from the numeric keys and to send DTMF (touch-tone signals). You can operate it only during a Chara-den call. • "Send DTMF tone" is displayed when the mode is not DTMF Transmission Mode and "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed in DTMF Transmission Mode. • In DTMF Transmission Mode, you cannot operate the action of Chara-den images. • The DTMF tone may not be received depending on the device of a receiving end.
<b>V.phone settings</b>	
<b>Visual preference</b>	See page 77.

<b>Brightness</b>	You can adjust the brightness of the camera image to be sent to other party to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright). ▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b>
At videophone start-up 0	
<b>White balance</b>	You can adjust the colors of the camera image to be sent to the other party, to make the colors look more natural. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Fine weather</b> . . . . . For talking outdoors in fine weather <b>Cloudy weather</b> . . . . . For talking in cloudy weather or in the shade <b>Automatic</b> . . . . . For adjusting white balance automatically <b>Light bulb</b> . . . . . For talking under incandescent light
At videophone start-up Automatic	
<b>Color mode set</b>	You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. ▶ <b>Select a color tone.</b>
At videophone start-up Normal	
<b>Night mode</b>	You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in a dark place. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
At videophone start-up OFF	
<b>Focus</b>	You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call. ▶ <b>Close-up or Landscape</b> • The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits), so you cannot change the setting.
At videophone start-up Landscape	
<b>Chara-den setup</b>	See page 74.
<b>Backlight</b>	You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds after an operation. ▶ <b>Constant light or 15 seconds light</b>
<b>LCD AI</b>	See page 115.
<b>Own number</b>	You can display your phone number.
<b>Key guide</b>	You can display the guide of key operation during a videophone call.

## <Hands-free with Videophone>

# Setting Hands-free Videophone

You can set whether to switch to Hands-free automatically for when a videophone call starts.

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Videophone**  
► **Hands-free w/ V. phone** ► **ON or OFF**

- See page 64 for the operation while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free.

## <Visual Preference>

# Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls

You can set the quality of the received image on the display.

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Videophone** ► **Visual preference**  
► **Select an image quality.**

- "Prefer motion spd" is effective when there is motion in an image. When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to "Prefer img qual".
- If you operate from the Function menu during a videophone call, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call.

### Information

- If the radio wave conditions weaken during a videophone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

## <Select Image>

# Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls

You can set an image to be sent to the other party.

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Videophone** ► **Select image**  
► **Select an item.**

**On hold** . . . . . Sets an image for during answer-hold (On hold).

**Holding** . . . . . Sets an image for while a call is on hold (Holding).

**Substitute image**

. . . . . Sets a substitute image (still image or Chara-den) for when the camera is off.

**Record message**

. . . . . Sets an image while recording a record message.

**Preparing** . . . . . Sets an image for while playing back an answer message.

**Movie memo**



. . . . . Sets an image for while recording a movie memo.

## 2 Select an image.

**Pre-installed** . . . . . For sending a pre-installed still image to the other party.

**Original** . . . . . For sending an appropriate message with a still image stored using "Set display".

**Chara-den** . . . . . For sending a Chara-den image selected by "Substitute image" from the Function menu while a Chara-den image is displayed. (See page 74)  
(Displayed only when "Substitute image" has been selected in step 1.)


- Press  (Play) to play back a demo to check the still image or Chara-den image.
- To change the setting of "Original" or "Chara-den", press , select "Change setting", then select a still image or Chara-den image. If you have selected "Original", select a still image after selecting a folder.

### Information

- Even if you delete the still image selected from "Original", that still image is displayed to the other party. To change, set by "Change setting" or "Set display".

## Set by Call

You can set an image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

- 1 Enter a phone number  
or  
call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.
- 2  **FUNC** ► Select image ► My side or Chara-den
  - The setting is completed when you select "My side".
  - To cancel the setting by call, select "Release". The setting is completed.
- 3 Select a Chara-den image.

## <Voice Call Auto Redial>

### Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected

If a videophone call cannot be connected, it will be automatically redialed as a voice call.

- 1  **MENU** ► Set./Service ► Videophone ► Voice call auto redial  
► ON or OFF

#### Information

- The charges for calls once switched to voice calls are billed at the rates for the voice calls.
- Voice Call Auto Redial does not work when a videophone call cannot be connected such as when the line is busy or the other party's phone is in Public mode (Drive mode). However, Voice Call Auto Redial works when you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function.

## <Notify Switchable Mode>

### Setting for Switching a Voice/Videophone Call during a Call

You can let the other party know that your FOMA terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

This function is set to "Indication ON" at the time of contract. When "Notify switchable mode" is set to "Indication ON", the caller can switch between the videophone call and voice call.

- You cannot operate "Notify switchable mode" when you are out of the service area or radio waves do not reach, or during a call.

- 1  **MENU** ► Set./Service ► Videophone  
► Notify switchable mode ► Do the following operations.

Indication ON ► YES ► OK

Indication OFF ► YES ► OK

Check indication You can check the setting of the function.  
► OK

## <Videophone while Packet>

### Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode

- 1  **MENU** ► Set./Service ► Incoming call  
► V.phone while packet ► Select an item.

#### V.phone priority

... Shows the Videophone Call Receiving display. When you answer the videophone call, packet communication is disconnected.

#### Packet downld priority

... Rejects the videophone call and continues the communication.

#### V.phone answerphone

... Connects the incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

#### Call forwarding

... Forwards the incoming videophone call to the forwarding destination.



### Information

- If you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, "Packet downld priority" works even if you set to "V.phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding".

## Using Videophone Calls by Interfacing to External Devices

You can operate your FOMA terminal from an external device such as your personal computer for making or receiving videophone calls by connecting them using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option).

To use this function, you need to install a videophone application program on a dedicated external device or personal computer, and further, you need to prepare equipment (commercial item) such as an earphone/microphone or USB compatible web camera.

- For operating environments for a videophone application program and how to set or operate it, refer to the instruction manual or other literature for an external device.
- You can use "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DOCOMO Videophone Software)" as the application program that supports this function.  
You can download "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DOCOMO Videophone Software)" from the DOCOMO website.

### Information

- You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.
- When you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during a voice call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls. The same applies for an incoming voice call, videophone call, and 64K data communication during a videophone call from an external device.

### <Remote Monitoring>

## Checking inside of a Room when You are Out


You can use the inside camera of the FOMA terminal as a monitoring camera to observe the remote location from a phone that has the videophone function based on 3G-324M. While "Remote monitoring" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically starts Remote Monitoring when it receives a videophone call from a phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote monitoring".

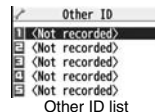
(The FOMA terminal needs to be set to Normal Style.)

### 1 ► Set./Service ► Videophone ► Remote monitoring ► Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- To release Remote Monitoring, select "Set", then select "OFF".

### 2 Other ID <Not recorded> ► Enter a phone number.


- To change, select the stored phone number.
- You can enter up to five phone numbers of up to 26 digits by using numerals, #, \*, and +.
- To return to the setting display for Remote Monitoring, press  from the Other ID list after storing phone number.





### 3 Ring time ► Enter a ring time (seconds).

- You can enter the time from "003" through "120" in three digits until Remote Monitoring starts after receiving a videophone call.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.

### 4 Set ► ON

- When receiving videophone calls from the phone numbers stored as "Other ID", the FOMA terminal automatically answers to start Remote Monitoring after the ring time elapses.
-  is displayed while this function is set to "ON".
- You cannot set to "ON" in Manner Mode.

## Function Menu of the Other ID List

<b>Look-up address</b>	You can call up a phone number in the Phonebook, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls to enter it. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> ... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number. <b>Dialed calls</b> ... Highlight a phone number and press  (Select). <b>Received calls</b> ... Highlight a phone number and press  (Select).
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ YES

### Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>

- If you delete all phone numbers stored as "Other ID", "Remote monitoring" is set to "OFF".




## Perform Remote Monitoring


### 1 Make a videophone call from a stored phone number.

- After the ring time set for "Remote monitoring" elapses, Remote Monitoring automatically starts.
- The image through the receiving end's camera appears and the sound comes out of the speaker.
  - You cannot set Voice-only Remote Monitoring.
  - Make a videophone call notifying your caller ID. If the caller ID is not notified, Remote Monitoring will not start and the call will be handled as an ordinary incoming videophone call.

### 2 Remote Monitoring ends when the calling end or receiving end presses .

### For answering a videophone call without starting Remote Monitoring at the receiving end

Press  or  (Answer) before the FOMA terminal answers a videophone call automatically. If you press  (Subst), the videophone call starts sending the substitute image to the other party.

- When a remote monitoring call comes in, "Setting when opened" is disabled.
- If you press  when a remote monitoring call comes in, the call will be cut and Remote Monitoring will not start.

### Information

- When your FOMA terminal is used for the receiving end, an image through the caller's camera appears, and sound comes out. (You cannot switch to a substitute image.)
- Remote Monitoring does not start during Manner Mode and Public mode (Drive mode). However, it starts even during Lock All.
- When Remote Monitoring is set to "ON" and a videophone call comes in from the phone number set as "Other ID", Remote Monitoring starts after the set ring time, even when "Ring time", "Auto answer setting", or "Record message setting" is set and regardless of their ring times.
- When Remote Monitoring is not performed, it is recorded in Received Calls as a missed videophone call.
- If an earphone/microphone (option) is connected when a remote monitoring call comes in, the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and the speaker, even when "Headset usage setting" is set to "Headset only".
- The ring tone for Remote Monitoring sounds. (You cannot change the ring tone for Remote Monitoring.)  
The ring tone sounds at the volume set for "Videophone" of "Ring volume", but at "Level 2" if you have set "Step", "Level 1" or below. The color is "Gradation", and its lighting pattern is "Standard", regardless of the Incoming Illumination setting.
- You cannot put incoming remote monitoring calls on answer-hold (On Hold).
- If you set both Call Forwarding Service and Remote Monitoring, and give priority to Remote Monitoring, set its ring time shorter than that for Call Forwarding Service.
- To use Call Forwarding Service for Remote Monitoring, store the phone number of dialing side as "Other ID" and set a 3G-324M videophone as the forwarding destination.
- **You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA terminal to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.**



**Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

## PushTalk

This service provides you a pleasurable group calls among multiple parties (two to five persons including yourself). The participants can speak by turns by pressing the PushTalk key.

※ You are charged a PushTalk communication fee each time you press the PushTalk key (speak).

● For details on PushTalk or compatible models, refer to DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

### ■ PushTalkPlus※

This service enables you to have a PushTalk call with up to 20 persons including you. You can use the shared Phonebook on the network, and can check the members for their status, thus PushTalk becomes more useful.

※ You need to subscribe separately.

● For details such as how to operate, refer to the booklet which is supplied at subscription.

## Making a PushTalk Call

### 1 Enter the other party's phone number










When you are dialing, a confirmation tone for starting a PushTalk call sounds for a few seconds, and then the same ringback tone as the voice (videophone) call sounds.

● You can make a group call to multiple persons using the PushTalk Phonebook. (See page 85 and page 86)



### 2 When the other party answers, talk while pressing .


When the other party answers, a confirmation tone for starting communication sounds.

- "P" blinks during dialing and lights during communication.
- When you get the talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone sounds. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing  and having the talker's right. When you release , the talker's right is released, and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds even if you press  when another member has it.
- Press  ( Add) or press  ( FUNC) and select "Add member" to add a member. Go to step 1 on page 83.






### 3 Press to end the communication after talking.

A tone to notify the disconnection of communication sounds at the other end.

- When a call you made is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press , and "Disconnected" appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members cannot communicate due to "Disconnected", "No PT Func", etc., the PushTalk communication itself ends.

### Information


- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses  and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- You cannot make emergency calls at 110/119/118 from PushTalk.
- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". (See page 88) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- The FOMA terminal works according to "Setting when closed" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing  ( FUNC) and selecting "Set. when closed". (See page 68)

## Information

- Whether to notify others of your phone number when you make PushTalk calls follows the setting for “Activate/Deactivate” of “Caller ID notification” (see page 48). However, when you set “Notify caller ID” from the Function menu for dialing, or when “Notify/Not notify” is displayed in the detailed Redial/Dialed Call/Received Call display, each of those settings will work.
- When you make a PushTalk call with your phone number notified, your phone number as well as all members' phone numbers are notified to all members including added members. When you make a PushTalk call without notifying your phone number, “User unset” appears in the caller's and member's fields on the displays of all the members including added members. Your phone number is very important information, so take the utmost care to notify others of it.
- If you make a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the i-mode communication is disconnected.
- You cannot use PushTalk by Number B of 2in1.

## Making/Receiving a PushTalk group call

You can use the PushTalk Phonebook or Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to communicate with multiple members.

While making or receiving a PushTalk group call, the group name and the members in the group are displayed. Press  to confirm other members. When a call is received with the other party's phone number not provided, “User unset” is displayed.

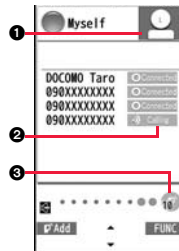
## Re-participating or participating midway in PushTalk communication

Use Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call while the PushTalk communication continues among other members.

- If the PushTalk communication has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.

## Display while dialing/communicating

- 1 The phone number of the member who has the talker's right is displayed, and the state of the talker's right is displayed in color of the round icon at the upper left. When the name of that member, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, his/her name and image are displayed. However, when you cannot receive a member's information correctly, “?” is displayed.



During group communication

Color of the round icon at the upper left	State of the talker's rights
Blue	Calling
Green	You can get the talker's right.
Blinking in green	You have the talker's right.
Blinking in yellow	Another member has the talker's right.
Blinking in green and red	The talker's right will be released automatically in a few seconds because it has long been retained (A release notice tone sounds).

2 The corresponding state\*\* of each member is shown.

Display	Corresponding state of members
Calling	Calling to the member
Connected	Has participated in the PushTalk call.
No PT Func	The destination phone does not support PushTalk.
Not avail.	The destination phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Busy	A voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is in progress at the member. i-mode communication is in progress at the member who has given priority to i-mode by "i-mode arrival act".
ID Request	You made a call without notifying of your caller ID to the member who has activated "Caller ID request".
Driving	The member has activated Public mode (Drive mode).
PublicMode	The member has activated Public mode (Power off), and is out of the service area or the power is turned off.
Disconnected	You have dialed a non-existent number. The state is other than above: the member does not answer, has ended the PushTalk call, or does not use a DOCOMO mobile phone.

\*\* The corresponding states other than "Calling" and "Connected" are displayed only for the PushTalk communication among three or more members.

3 The number of times you have got the talker's right is the total of the number of "●" and the number shown in "●". When 999 times are exceeded, the counting is reset to 0.

## Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call




You can make a PushTalk call to another member during PushTalk communication and add that member to the communication.


You can add a person to the members by accessing the PushTalk Phonebook, Phonebook, or Dialed Calls/Received Calls, or by directly entering a phone number.


You can add up to five members (including yourself), and can repeat adding up to that number.


- Members can be added from the calling end only.
- You can add even the members who use the PushTalk compatible models which do not have this function.
- If you have already made a call to four members, you cannot add a new member though you can call up a member who has exited the call again.
- The added members are not stored in Redial/Dialed Calls.

**1** During PushTalk communication ►  (  Add )  
► Do the following operations.

**View PushTalk PB** You can call up a PushTalk Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call. (See page 86)  
Instead of pressing , press  ( Dial ) to call.  
• Press  to switch between the PushTalk Phonebook list and PushTalk Group list.

**View phonebook** You can call up a Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call.  
► Call up a Phonebook entry ► Highlight a phone number and press  ( Dial ).

**Direct input** You can enter a phone number to make a PushTalk call.  
► Enter a phone number ►  ( Dial )

**View call records** You can call up Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call.  
► Dialed calls or Received calls ► Select a record  
► Select a phone number ►  ( Dial )

### Information

- The caller cannot add members if he/she uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function.

**Information**

- For a member who uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function, the members added during PushTalk communication are not shown and a confirmation tone does not sound.

**Receiving a PushTalk Call****1 When a PushTalk call comes in, "PushTalk call" is displayed, the ring tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.**

- "PushTalk group call" is displayed for an incoming group call.
- To reject a call, press **FUNC** during ringing and select "Call rejection". You can reject the call also by pressing **END**.

**2 Press **FUNC** to answer a PushTalk call**  
**▶ Talk while pressing **FUNC**.**

- You can answer also by pressing **END** or **Answer** instead of **FUNC**. You can answer also by pressing **FUNC** with the FOMA terminal closed.
- When you get talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone is played back. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing **FUNC** and having the talker's right. When you release **FUNC**, the talker's right is released and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds, even if you press **FUNC** when another member has it.
- "Setting when opened" and "Record message setting" become invalid.

**3 Press **END** to end the communication after talking.**

A tone for confirming the end of communication sounds at the other end.

- When a call you received is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press **END**, and "Disconnected" appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members cannot communicate due to "Disconnected", "No PT Func", etc., the PushTalk communication itself ends.

**Information**

- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses **FUNC** and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". (See page 88) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- The FOMA terminal works according to "Setting when closed" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing **FUNC** and selecting "Set. when closed". (See page 68)
- You cannot use "On hold" or "Holding" for PushTalk.
- When you received a PushTalk call from the phone number you set for "Call rejection" or "Reject unknown", "Disconnected" is replied. When you have activated "Caller ID request", "ID Request" is replied.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a voice call, a PushTalk call that comes in during Public mode (Drive mode), and a voice call (when "PushTalk arrival act" is set to other than "Answer"), a videophone call, data communication, or a PushTalk call that comes in during PushTalk communication are recorded as missed calls in Received Calls.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a videophone call or during data communication does not work and is not recorded in Received Calls.
- After you finish PushTalk communication or when you cannot answer to a PushTalk call, you can use a received call record to make a PushTalk call and to re-participate or participate midway in the communication so long as the PushTalk communication continues among other members. If the PushTalk communication among other members has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.
- When a caller adds members during PushTalk communication, the added members are not stored in Received Calls.

## Information

- See page 88 for how to respond to the PushTalk call during i-mode communication.
- When a PushTalk call comes in during Lock All or Omakase Lock, "Miss 1" appears after the lock is released.

<Store in PushTalk Phonebook>

## Adding Entries to PushTalk Phonebook

From the items stored in a FOMA terminal's Phonebook entry, you need to store a name (reading) and a phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook. You can store up to 1,000 entries in the PushTalk Phonebook.



▶ Do the following operations.

- You can store also by selecting <New>.
- If you store multiple phone numbers from a Phonebook entry, the phone number previously stored in the PushTalk Phonebook is overwritten.
- You cannot show the PushTalk Phonebook list even by pressing [P] from the horizontal Stand-by display.



PushTalk  
Phonebook list

### View phonebook

You can access an entry already stored in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook and store it in the PushTalk Phonebook.

▶ Call up a Phonebook entry ▶ Select a phone number ▶ YES

### Direct input

You can store the entry in the PushTalk Phonebook after storing it in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.

▶ Phone ▶ Select a storing method.

**New** . . . Go to step 2 on page 90.

**Add** . . . Go to step 3 on page 94.

- When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, press [Finish] and select the phone number you want to store in the PushTalk Phonebook. The "★" mark is added to the phone number that has already been stored in the PushTalk Phonebook.

### View call records

You can access a dialed call record or received call record to store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. You cannot store in the PushTalk Phonebook from the dialed/received call record of the party who is not stored in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.

- ▶ Dialed calls or Received calls ▶ Select a record
- ▶ Select a phone number ▶ YES

## Information

- In the PushTalk Phonebook, you cannot store the Phonebook entries set to B by Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

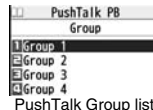
## Store in Group

You can store PushTalk Phonebook entries in groups. You can store up to 19 members per group and create up to 10 groups.

### 1 PushTalk Phonebook list



- Press [Member] to show the PushTalk Phonebook list.



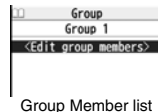
PushTalk Group list

### 2 Select a group ▶ MENU (Add)

▶ Put a check mark for members to be stored



- You can store also by selecting "<Edit group members>" from the Group Member list.



Group Member list



Group Member  
Selection display

## Function Menu of the Group Member Selection Display

### Members to store

You can display only members applied with a check mark.

- Press [Store] to store the members to the group.

Search	▶ Select a search method.
	Reading? . . . See page 95.
	Group? . . . . See page 95.
	▶ Select a member.
	You can display the Group Member Selection display with the searched members selected.

## Making a Call from PushTalk Phonebook

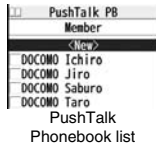
You can make a group call to up to four members using the PushTalk Phonebook or PushTalk group.

### 1 PushTalk Phonebook list

▶ Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to

▶ or ( Dial)

- Press () to show the PushTalk Group list.
- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.



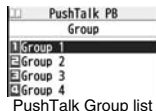
#### Information

- When all the members cannot communicate due to "Disconnected", "No PT Func", etc., the PushTalk communication ends.

### Make a Call from PushTalk Group

#### 1 PushTalk Group list ▶ Select a group.

- Select a group and press or ( Dial) to make a call to all the members in the group.
- Press () to show the PushTalk Phonebook list.



## 2 Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to

▶ or ( Dial)

- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.



#### Information

- When five or more members are stored in a group, you cannot make a call to all the members by selecting the group.

### Function Menu of the PushTalk Phonebook List/PushTalk Group List/Group Member List

#### Members to call

When the PushTalk Phonebook list or Group Member list is displayed, you can display the checked members only.

- Press or ( Dial) to make a PushTalk call.
- Press () to select "Notify caller ID" and then you can select whether to notify your phone number. When "Cancel prefix" is selected, the FOMA terminal works according to the setting by "Caller ID notification".

#### Search PushTalk PB

[Phonebook list only]

▶ Select a search method.

Reading? . . . See page 95.

Group? . . . . See page 95.

▶ Select a member.

You can display the PushTalk Phonebook list with the searched members selected.

#### Store in P-Talk PB

[Phonebook list only]

See page 85.

#### DEL from P-Talk PB

[Phonebook list only]

See page 87.



<b>Edit group members</b> [Group list/Member list]	You can edit the members in the group. Go to step 2 on page 85.
<b>Edit group name</b> [Group list only]	▶ <b>Enter a group name.</b> • You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters.
<b>DEL from PT group</b> [Group list only]	See page 87.
<b>DEL group members</b> [Member list only]	See page 87.
<b>Sound setting</b>	See page 88.
<b>Vibration setting</b>	See page 88.
<b>Auto answer set.</b>	See page 88.
<b>Ring time setting</b>	See page 88.
<b>Hands-Free</b>	See page 88.
<b>Set. when closed</b>	See page 68.
<b>i-mode arrival act</b>	See page 88.
<b>P-Talk arrival act</b>	See page 88.
<b>Network connection</b>	You can connect to the network to use PushTalkPlus. This is available only when you have signed up for PushTalkPlus. (See page 81)

<Delete from PushTalk Phonebook>

## Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

- PushTalk Phonebook list**  ( **FUNC** )  
▶ **DEL from P-Talk PB** ▶ **Do the following operations.**

Delete this

- ▶ **Select a deleting method.**

**DEL from P-Talk PB**

... Deletes an entry in the PushTalk Phonebook only. Does not delete the entry in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.

**DEL from all PBs**

... Deletes an entry in both the PushTalk Phonebook and FOMA terminal's Phonebook.


- ▶ **YES**

Delete all

- ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **YES**

• The FOMA terminal's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

## Delete from PushTalk Group

- PushTalk Group list**  ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **DEL from PT group**  
▶ **YES**

## Delete Group Members

- Group Member list**  ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **DEL group members**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

Delete this

- ▶ **YES**

Delete all

- ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **YES**

### Information

- Even when you delete PushTalk groups or group members, the PushTalk Phonebook entries and FOMA terminal's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

## Setting for Making/Receiving a PushTalk Call

### 1 **Set./Service** **PushTalk** ▶ Do the following operations.

#### Auto answer setting ▶ Select an item.

- ON** . . . . . Automatically answers immediately after receiving regardless of "Ring time setting".
- OFF** . . . . . Does not answer automatically.

#### Ring time setting ▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter two digits from "01" through "60".
- "Disconnected" is displayed at the other end after the ring time has elapsed.

#### Hands-free w/ PushTalk

You can set whether to hear the other party's voice from the speaker or from the earpiece for when PushTalk communication starts.

- ▶ **ON or OFF**
- See page 64 for how the FOMA terminal works while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free during communication.

#### PushTalk arrival act ▶ Select an item.

- Voice mail** . . . . . Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- Call forwarding** . . . . . Forwards an incoming voice call to the forwarding destination.
- Call rejection** . . . . . Rejects an incoming voice call and does not answer.
- Answer** . . . . . Shows the Voice Call Receiving display.

**Sound setting** You can set a pattern for the confirmation tones which sound during PushTalk communication.

- ▶ **Select a pattern.**

**Vibration setting** You can set whether to be notified by vibration for when you try to get the talker's right or when a member's state changes to "Connected".




- ▶ **ON or OFF**

### Information

#### <Auto answer setting>

- When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered even when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of "Setting when closed".
- When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered after switching to Hands-free regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". However, the FOMA terminal works following the setting of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk" if you open the FOMA terminal after you answer a call with the FOMA terminal closed.
- When you set to "ON", the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator, and backlight do not work. Calls are not automatically answered during Manner Mode.

#### <PushTalk arrival act>

- If you press  for an incoming voice call while "Answer" is set, the Call Receiving display appears after you finish the PushTalk communication, and then you can answer the voice call. To continue the PushTalk communication, press  (  ) and select "Call rejection", "Call forwarding", or "Voice mail".

#### <Sound setting>

- In the "Simple" mode, some confirmation tones (talking right obtained tone, etc.) during PushTalk communication become silent.

## i-mode Arrival Act

You can set whether to show the PushTalk Call Receiving display for when a PushTalk call comes in during i-mode communication.

### 1 **i-mode** **i-mode settings** **Common settings** ▶ **i-mode arrival act** ▶ Select an item.

**PushTalk preferred** . . . . . Ends i-mode communication and brings up the PushTalk Call Receiving display.

**i-mode preferred** . . . . . Rejects receiving a PushTalk call and continues i-mode communication. The call is not recorded in Received Calls.

# Phonebook

Phonebooks Available for FOMA Terminal .....	90
Storing Phonebook Entries .....<Add to Phonebook>	90
Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook .....	94
Setting Groups .....<Group Setting>	94
Making a Call from Phonebooks ..... <Search Phonebook>	95
Editing Phonebook Entries .....<Edit Phonebook>	99
Deleting Phonebook Entries .....<Delete Data>	100
Checking Phonebook Storage Status... <No. of Phonebook>	100
Making a Call with a Few Keys Operation ..... <2-touch Dial>	100
Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice ..... <Voice Dial>	101

## Phonebooks Available for FOMA Terminal

You can use two types of Phonebooks, namely the Phonebook in the FOMA terminal itself, and the Phonebook on the UIM.

		FOMA terminal	UIM	
Number of entries		1,000 entries	50 entries	
Contents of Phonebook	Basic item	Name (Reading)	○	
		Group	19 groups	10 groups
		Phone number	4 phone numbers	1 phone number
		Phone number icon	○	—
		Mail address	3 mail addresses	1 mail address
		Mail address icon	○	—
		Address	○	—
		Location information	○	—
	Setting item	Birthday	○	—
		Memo	○	—
		Image	100 images	—
		Memory No.	From 000 to 999	—
		Ring tone	○	—
		Vibrator	○	—
		Illumination	○	—
		Picture	○	—
Restrictions	Chara-den	100 Chara-den images	—	
	Mail ring tone	○	—	
	Mail vibrator	○	—	
	Mail illumination	○	—	
	Answer message	○	—	
	Restrict dialing	○	—	
	Call rejection	○	—	
	Call acceptance	○	—	
Call forwarding	○	—		
Voice mail	○	—		
Secret code	○	—		
Storage in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only	○	—		

		FOMA terminal	UIM
Contents of Group	Name	○	○
	Ring tone	○	○
	Vibrator	○	○
	Illumination	○	○
	Picture	○	○
	Chara-den	○	—
	Mail ring tone	○	—
	Mail vibrator	○	—
	Mail illumination	○	—
	Answer message	○	—

○: Can be stored. —: Cannot be stored.

- You can set your UIM into another FOMA terminal and use the UIM Phonebook entries.


### <Add to Phonebook>

## Storing Phonebook Entries


You can store Phonebook entries in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or on the UIM.

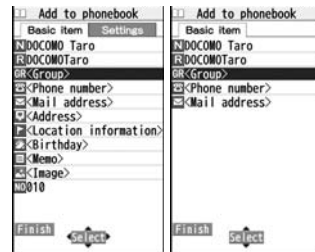
### 1 (for at least one second) ▶ Phone or UIM

The Edit Name display appears. Go to step 2 and enter a name.

- You cannot show the registration display for the Phonebook entries even by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the horizontal Stand-by display.

### 2 Do the following operations.

- You can press  to switch between the "Basic item" tab and "Settings" tab for the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.



For the FOMA terminal

For the UIM

**N Name**

You can enter the name of the person or company in kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.

▶ **Enter a name.**

- For the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. You can enter pictograms and symbols as well.
- For the UIM, you can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters/21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 10 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.

**R Reading**

You can enter the reading in half-pitch katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.

▶ **Edit the reading.**

- For the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters. You can enter half-pitch symbols as well.
- For the UIM, you can enter up to 12 full-pitch characters/25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 12 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.
- If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, they are not reflected in the reading.
- If you enter “㇀ (reduced size)” or “㇁ (reduced size)” for a name, “㇂ (half-pitch, regular size)” (for the FOMA terminal) and “㇃ (regular size)” (for the UIM) are displayed in the reading field.

**GR Group**

In the FOMA terminal, 19 groups are available. On the UIM, 10 groups are available.


▶ **Select a group.**

- When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is stored in “No setting”.



**Phone number**

You can store up to four phone numbers per Phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal. You can set an icon for each phone number to categorize mobile phone numbers, office phone numbers, and so on. You can store only one phone number per Phonebook entry on the UIM.

▶ **Enter a phone number.**

- Enter from the city code for the phone numbers.
- You can enter up to 26 digits. However, you can enter up to 20 digits for blue UIMs.
- Press and hold  for at least one second to insert a pause (p) into the phone number you store. However, you cannot insert the pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted to the end of phone number is not stored.
- If you insert “\*” in the middle of a phone number, you cannot make a call. However, the phone number is recorded in Redial or Dialed Calls.
- You can store the phone number which includes “#” such as that for information service as well.

▶ **Select an icon.**

- If you have stored a phone number in the FOMA terminal, another  <Phone number>” will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another phone number, select “ <Phone number>”.



**Mail address**







You can store up to three mail addresses per Phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal. You can set an icon for each mail address to categorize mobile phone addresses, home addresses, and so on. You can store only one mail address per Phonebook entry on the UIM.





▶ **Enter a mail address.**







- The mail address can consist of up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol characters.
- When the mail address is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, store the phone number only.
- For the FOMA terminal, you can set a secret code as well. (See page 99)


▶ **Select an icon.**

- If you have stored a mail address in the FOMA terminal, another “ <Mail address>” will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another mail address, select “ <Mail address>”.

 <b>Address</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a ZIP code</b> ▶ <b>Enter a postal address.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 7 digits for the zip code.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters for the postal address. Further, you can enter pictograms as well.</li> <li>• You cannot enter “-” or “-” (hyphen) in the zip code.</li> </ul>
 <b>Location information</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>By position loc.</b>      ... Measures the current location (see page 328) and store the location information. After checking the location information, press  (<b>Set</b>).</p> <p><b>From loc. history</b>      ... Select a piece of location information from Location History (see page 332) and store it.</p> <p><b>Attach from image</b>      ... Stores the location information from an image. Select a folder, then the image.</p> <p><b>From own number</b>      ... Stores the location information from “Own number”. Enter your Terminal Security Code and press  (<b>Select</b>).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To delete the stored location information, select “Delete location info”.</li> </ul>
 <b>Birthday</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a birthday.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter the birthday from January 1, 1800 through December 31, 2099.</li> <li>• You can check the birthday from Schedule. (See page 404)</li> </ul>
 <b>Memo</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a memo.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters. Further, you can enter pictograms as well.</li> </ul>

 <b>Image</b>	<p>The stored still image is displayed when you call up the Phonebook entry.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Select image</b> ... You can store a still image in Data Box.</p> <p><b>Shoot image</b> ... You can store the shot still image.</p> <p>Perform step 2 through step 3 on page 234.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored still image, select “Release image”.</li> <li>• The size of a still image you can store is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 500 Kbytes in JPEG format or GIF format.</li> <li>• If you store a still image larger than 72 x 54 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.</li> <li>• If you store a still image larger than 240 x 180 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the Call Receiving display.</li> <li>• When “Disp. PH-book image” is set to “ON”, the stored still image is displayed for an incoming call. However, when another image is stored for “Picture”, that image is preferentially displayed for the incoming call.</li> </ul>
 <b>Memory No.</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a memory number.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter a three-digit number of “000” through “999”.</li> <li>• The lowest empty memory number “010” through “999” is entered in advance.</li> </ul> <p>If “010” through “999” are all occupied, the lowest empty memory number from “000” through “009” is entered.</p>
 <b>Ring tone</b>	<p>You can set a ring tone for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select ring tone</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 104.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored ring tone, select “Release ring tone”.</li> </ul>
 <b>Vibrator</b>	<p>You can set a vibration pattern for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select vibrator</b> ▶ <b>Select a vibration pattern.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored vibrator, select “Release vibrator”.</li> </ul>

 <b>Illumination</b>	<p>You can set an illumination pattern for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select illumination</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored illumination, select "Release illumination".</li> </ul>
 <b>Picture</b>	<p>You can set an image to be displayed for when a call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select picture</b> ▶ <b>Select a type of image</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored image, select "Release picture".</li> </ul>
 <b>Chara-den</b>	<p>The stored Chara-den image is displayed as a substitute image for videophone calls with the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select Chara-den</b> ▶ <b>Select a Chara-den image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored Chara-den image, select "Release Chara-den".</li> </ul>
 <b>Mail ring tone</b>	<p>You can set a ring tone for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select ring tone</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 104.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored mail ring tone, select "Release ring tone".</li> </ul>
 <b>Mail vibrator</b>	<p>You can set a vibration pattern for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select vibrator</b> ▶ <b>Select a vibration pattern.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored mail vibrator, select "Release vibrator".</li> </ul>
 <b>Mail illumination</b>	<p>You can set an illumination pattern for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select illumination</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored mail illumination, select "Release illumination".</li> </ul>

 <b>Answer message</b>	<p>You can set an answer message for Record Message by Phonebook entry.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select answer message</b> ▶ <b>Select an answer message.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored answer message, select "Release answer message".</li> </ul>
---	---

### 3 Press (Finish).

- If you have not entered any name, "Finish" is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

### Phonebook entries while editing

#### When the low battery alarm sounds

The Phonebook entry you are editing is saved automatically. The confirmation display appears asking whether to resume editing when you continue editing after charging the battery or when you operate step 1 on page 90 and select the storage location for the interrupted Phonebook entry after changing to a charged battery.


Recall. . . . You can resume editing the Phonebook entry.

New . . . . You can edit a new Phonebook entry. In this case, the interrupted data is retained. If you execute "Add to phonebook" after storing the new Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears again.

- Only the most recently interrupted entry is retained.
- If you resume editing the data but then cancel editing without storing it, that data will be abandoned. Once you recall the data, be sure to store it.

#### If you receive a call or mail

You can respond it leaving the edited data as it is, thanks to the Multitask function.

To return to the Phonebook Edit display, press and hold  for at least one second to switch the menu. You can return to the Phonebook Edit display also by ending the call or mail function.

## Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook

You can store the displayed or selected phone number, mail address, and still image in the FOMA terminal's or UIM's Phonebook.

Operation	Storable items
While a phone number is entered	Phone number
While a redial item, dialed call record, or received call record is displayed	Phone number
While Sent Address or Received Address is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a site or screen memo is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the text of Message R/F or mail is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the data scanned by Bar Code Reader is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a ToruCa file is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While your current location is displayed	Location information
While the location history is displayed	Location information/ Phone number/Mail address
While a registered LCS client is displayed	Name/Phone number
While the Still Image list or a still image is displayed	Still image

### 1 Call up/Select an item to be stored (FUNC) (Select) ▶ Add to phonebook

- When you operate from the detailed mail display, select "Store" from the Function menu and then select "Add to phonebook".
- To store the address of the sender (or of another recipient of simultaneous mail) of the received mail or the destination address of the sent mail into the Phonebook, select "Store" from the Function menu and then select "Store address". If the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be stored.
- To store a still image in the Phonebook, select "Set display" from the Function menu and then select "Phonebook".
- When "Add to phonebook" is displayed on the Scanned Code Result display for Bar Code Reader, select "Add to phonebook"; then other information in the scanned code besides the phone number or mail address is entered into each field.

### 2 Phone or UIM ▶ Select a storing method.

**New** . . . Go to step 2 on page 90.

**Add** . . . Adds data to the existing Phonebook entry. When storing data on the UIM, "Overwrite" is displayed.

### 3 Select a search method ▶ Search the Phonebook

#### ▶ Select a Phonebook entry to be stored (Select)

The phone number or mail address is entered automatically.

- See step 2 on page 90 to edit other items in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store into the FOMA terminal's Phonebook, you can remain the original entry and store a new entry into a different location by changing the memory number.

### 4 (Finish) ▶ YES

- If you store the entry in the UIM Phonebook, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original entry, or select "Add" to store it as a new entry.

#### Information



- The Phonebook entry does not store the information of "Notify caller ID" included in Redial/Dialed Calls. To set Caller ID Notification, add "186"/"184" to the phone number and store it.
- Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces or deleted, and then stored.
- You may not be able to store the information from some sites into the Phonebook.

#### <Group Setting>

## Setting Groups

You can utilize the Phonebook by sorting the entries by group such as "Company" or "Friend", or by your interest such as "Baseball" or "Ceramic art". You can set a ring tone, vibration pattern, or illumination by group.


### 1 ▶ Phonebook ▶ Group setting

- The groups on the UIM are indicated by "".
- To reset the group names and respective settings by group, which have already been stored, press  (FUNC), select "Reset group", and then select "YES".



## 2 Highlight a group and press (Edit)

▶ Select an item to be set ▶ Set the contents.

- When you select "SR Group name", enter a group name. You can store up to 10 full-pitch/21 half-pitch characters. However, you can store only up to 10 characters (regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters) when you enter both full-pitch and half-pitch characters for a UIM group name.
- See step 2 on page 90 for the operations of the other items. However, you cannot set for groups on the UIM.
- Select a stored group, or press  (FUNC) and select "Check setting" to check its settings. However, you cannot check the settings of the groups on the UIM.




## 3 Press (Finish).

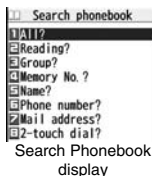
<Search Phonebook>


## Making a Call from Phonebooks








You can retrieve stored Phonebook entries by eight search methods.

### 1 Do the following operations.




- The display for the same search method as the previous one appears once you have carried out a search. Press  to show the Search Phonebook display.
- You can show the Search Phonebook display also by  Phonebook ▶ Search phonebook.
- You cannot show the Search Phonebook display even by pressing  from the horizontal Stand-by display.




All?	You can show all Phonebook entries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 96)</li></ul>
Reading?	You can enter the reading of the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full reading. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Enter a part of the reading ▶ </li><li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 96)</li></ul>

Group?	You can show Phonebook entries stored in a specified group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Select a group.</li><li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 96)</li><li>• If you press  (FUNC) on the Group list, the Function menu for "Group setting" is displayed.</li></ul>
Memory No.? [FOMA terminal only]	You can search for the entry by the memory number assigned when it was stored in the Phonebook. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Enter the memory number.</li><li>• Enter from "000" through "999" in three digits.</li><li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 96)</li><li>• From the Stand-by display, you can press  and then press  to display the Memory No. Dial display. From there you can make a voice call by entering the memory number of the phone number.</li></ul>
Name?	You can enter the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Enter a part of the name ▶ </li></ul>
Phone number?	You can enter a part of the other party's phone number and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of phone number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Enter a part of the phone number ▶ </li><li>• You can display the Phonebook list also by entering a part of the phone number from the Stand-by display or the "Talking" display, and pressing .</li></ul>
Mail address?	You can enter a part of the other party's mail address and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of mail address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Enter a part of the mail address ▶ </li></ul>
2-touch dial? [FOMA terminal only]	You can show the list of Phonebook entries in memory number 000 through 009. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Phonebook entries not yet stored or being set with secret are displayed as &lt;---&gt;.</li></ul>

## 2 Select an entry ▶ or (Dial)

- When the entry contains multiple phone numbers, or when you searched by "Mail address?", press  from the detailed display to select a phone number.
- You can make a videophone call by pressing  (V phone) or PushTalk call by pressing .

## Information





- In a search method other than “Group?” and “2-touch dial?”, enter nothing and press , then you can search all through the Phonebook.
- When no Phonebook entry is found that matches the condition you entered by “Reading?” or “Memory No.?”, the entry that is the closest to the condition is displayed.

## Search order





The Phonebook entries are searched in the order of readings you entered for storing, as follows:











“Space at the beginning of the reading” → “Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、...ン)” → “Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)” → “Numerals (0 through 9)” → “Symbols” → “No reading”.  
 For “All?” and “Reading?”, searching is done in the following order:  
 “Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、...ン)” → “Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)” → “Space at the beginning of the reading” → “Numerals (0 through 9)” → “Symbols” → “No reading”.  
 ※ The Memory No. Search searches in the order of the memory numbers.

## About Phonebook List


When you search from “All?”, “Reading?”, “Group?”, or “Memory No.?”, the tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. With “All?” and “Reading?”, the entries are sorted by every column of reading, with “Memory No.?” by every 100 of the memory number, and with “Group?” by every group.  
 Press  to display the Phonebook entries in the tab at left or right. However, when there are 12 or more Phonebook entries in a tab, pressing  (Page ▲),  (Page ▼), or  brings up the previous or next page.









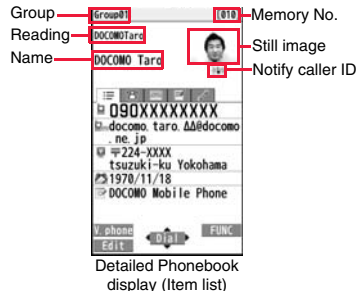
- After you search by “Reading?”, you can move the cursor to the “ア” through “ワ”, “英”, and “他” tab by pressing each numeric key from the list. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.  
 <Example> Press  to display the “ナ” tab. Each time you press , the cursor moves to the top of “ニ” “又” and so on.
- After you search by “Group?”, you can move the cursor to the top of each column in the tab by pressing each numeric key from the list. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.  
 <Example> Press  to move the cursor to the top of the “ナ” column. Each time you press , the cursor moves to the top of “ニ” “又” and so on.

- After you search by “Memory No.?”, you can move the cursor to the “000-” to “900-” tab by pressing each numeric key from the list.  
 <Example> Press  to move the cursor to the “500-” tab.
- You can make a voice call to the phone number stored for the name highlighted on the Phonebook list, by pressing . Also, press  (V phone) to make a videophone call and press  to make a PushTalk call. When multiple phone numbers are stored for the name, the one stored first will be dialed.
- For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, “” is displayed.
- For the Phonebook entry stored with i-concier information, “” is displayed.
- “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)
- When you refer to the Phonebook from a GPS compatible i-appli program, “” appears for the Phonebook entries which contain the location information.

## About the detailed display

Use  to highlight a tab, then the detailed contents are displayed.

- For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, “” is displayed on the memory number field.
- When Notify Caller ID is set to “Notify caller”, “” appears, and when set to “Don't notify”, “” appears.
- Under the still image, “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)
- When a Phonebook entry contains the setting for Multi Number or Chaku-moji, the set contents are displayed in the Item list/Phone Number display.



### Item list


The first stored phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, and memo are displayed. When i-concier information is stored, a postal address, URL, and memo obtained from i-concier are displayed instead of a postal address, birthday, and memo.

### Phone number



### Mail address

- When you select the item, you can compose an i-mode mail message with that mail address entered into the address field.



### Personal information

- When you select a postal address, the GPS compatible i-appli program set by "Select map" of "GPS settings" starts to show the map. When you highlight a postal address and press  (Detail), the full display appears.
- When you select the location information, the Function menu of the location information appears. (See page 329)
- When you select a memo or still image, the full display appears.

### i-concier information

- When you select a postal address, the GPS compatible i-appli program set by "Select map" of "GPS settings" starts to show the map. When you highlight a postal address and press  (Detail), the full display appears.
- You can display a site or Internet website when you select a URL, select "i-mode Browser" or "Full Browser", and then select "YES". When you highlight a URL and press  (Detail), the full display appears.
- When you select a memo, the full display appears.
- If you have not subscribed to i-concier, the i-concier information tab does not appear.

### Settings

- When you select each item, a demo is played back.  
Press  (Stop) or  (CLR) to end the demo.

## Function Menu of the Phonebook List

<b>New</b>	You can store a new Phonebook entry. Go to step 1 on page 90.
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can send an i-mode mail message with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 146.
<b>Search location</b>	You can access the site of "イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadoco kantan search)". ▶ YES
<b>Move/copy</b>	
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 369.
<b>Connect to Center</b>	See page 139.

<b>Sort</b>	You can change the display order. ▶ <b>Select a type of order.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>You can sort Phonebook entries in reverse order by selecting "Ascending" or "Descending".</li><li>You cannot sort on the Phonebook list with tabs displayed.</li></ul>
<b>Change font size</b>	You can switch font sizes for the Phonebook and on the displays within "Phonebook settings", etc. (See "Phonebook" on page 121)

### Send Ir/ trans/BT

#### Send Ir data

**Send phonebook** See page 383.

**Send all phonebook** See page 384.

#### transmission

**Send phonebook** See page 385.

**Send all phonebook** See page 385.

#### Send to Bluetooth

**Send phonebook** You can send the Phonebook entry using Bluetooth communication.  
▶ **Select a Bluetooth device to be sent** ▶ YES

- When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search.
- See page 421 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.

**Send all phonebook** You can send all Phonebook entries using Bluetooth communication.  
▶ **Select a Bluetooth device to be sent**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ YES

- When "Session number setting" of "Bluetooth settings" is set to "ON", enter your Terminal Security Code and then a session number.
- When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search.
- See page 421 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.

<b>Delete data</b>	See page 100.
<b>Set secret/Release secret</b>	You can activate/deactivate Secret for the Phonebook entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select "Set secret" in ordinary mode (not in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only"), enter your Terminal Security Code.</li> </ul>

### Information





#### <Send to Bluetooth>

- You cannot send Phonebook entries from the UIM.
- See page 418 for the Bluetooth function.

## Function Menu of the Detailed Phonebook Display


<b>Notify caller ID</b>	See page 59.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	See page 62.
<b>Int'l dial assist</b>	See page 61.
<b>Select image</b>	See page 78.
<b>2in1 dial</b>	You can select a phone number to notify the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 450)
<b>Multi number</b>	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 447)
<b>Chaku-moji</b>	See page 57.
<b>Search location</b>	See page 97.

### Edit data

<b>Edit phonebook</b>	Go to step 1 on page 99.
<b>Sort phone number/ Sort mail address</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a phone number or mail address</b></p> <p>▶ Use  to change the order ▶  (Select)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the detailed display, press  to highlight an item to be sorted. The items you can select from the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted item.</li> <li>• To change the order in succession, repeat the above steps.</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Finish)</p>

<b>Store in P-Talk PB</b>	You can store the phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook.
<b>Move/copy</b>	
<b>Copy to UIM</b>	See page 416.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 369.
<b>Copy to phone</b>	See page 416.
<b>Connect to Center</b>	See page 139.

### Copy item


<b>Copy name</b>	You can copy the name of Phonebook entry.
<b>Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/ Copy location info/ Copy birthday/ Copy memo/Copy URL</b>	<p>You can copy each item of Phonebook entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the detailed display, press  to highlight an item to be copied. The items can be selected in the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted item.</li> </ul>

### Mail


<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message to send to the mail address. Go to step 3 on page 146.
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can send an i-mode mail message with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 146.
<b>Compose SMS</b>	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 189.

<b>Change font size</b>	You can switch the font size for the Phonebook and on the displays within "Phonebook settings", etc. (See "Phonebook" on page 121)
-------------------------	---


<b>Restrictions</b>	See page 136.
---------------------	---------------

<b>Secret code</b>	<p>You need to add the recipient's secret code when sending i-mode mail to anyone who has registered a secret code. Once you set the secret code for the mail address in the Phonebook entry, it will be added automatically whenever you send mail to that address.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Set code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the detailed display, press  to highlight a phone number or mail address to be set with a secret code.</li> <li>• To check the secret code, select "Check code".</li> <li>• To release the secret code, select "Release code".</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Enter a four-digit secret code ▶ YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the Function menu, "Secret code" is indicated by "★", after it is set.</li> <li>• Enter a four-digit number for secret code. You cannot set "0000".</li> </ul>
--------------------	--

#### Set desktop/ key

<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 32.
 <b>long press set.</b>	See page 410.

#### Send Ir/ trans/BT

<b>Send Ir data</b>	
<b>Send phonebook</b>	See page 383.
<b>Send all phonebook</b>	See page 384.
<b> transmission</b>	
<b>Send phonebook</b>	See page 385.
<b>Send all phonebook</b>	See page 385.
<b>Send to Bluetooth</b>	
<b>Send phonebook</b>	See page 97.
<b>Send all phonebook</b>	See page 97.

<b>Delete data</b>	See page 100.
<b>Set secret/Release secret</b>	See page 98.

#### Information

##### <Secret code>

- You cannot set secret codes for UIM Phonebook entries.
- The secret code can be added only when the recipient's mail address is in the form of "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". It cannot be added to any other form of mail address.
- If you have stored the mail address as "phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail messages from the party of that mail address. After changing the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", set the secret code.

##### <Edit Phonebook>

## Editing Phonebook Entries

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display

▶ **Select an item to be edited ▶ Edit the contents.**

- See step 2 on page 90 for how to edit the Phonebook entry.
- Even if you edit the Phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal (Phone), you can remain the original contents in the original location and store the edited contents in the different location by changing the memory number.

### 2 ▶ YES




- If you edited the UIM Phonebook entry, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original contents, or "Add" to save the contents as a new entry.

&lt;Delete Data&gt;

## Deleting Phonebook Entries










### Delete from the Detailed Phonebook Display

- 1 Detailed Phonebook display  ( **FUNC** )  Delete data  
 Do the following operations.

Phone number/ This item	<p> YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Highlight an item to be deleted by pressing  from the detailed display.</li> <li>You cannot delete information obtained by i-concier.</li> </ul>
This phonebook	 YES

### Delete from the Phonebook List

- 1 Phonebook list  ( **FUNC** )  Delete data  
 Do the following operations.






Delete this	 YES
Delete selected	<p> Put a check mark for Phonebook entries to be deleted</p> <p> ( <b>Finish</b> )  YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can check or uncheck entries all at once by pressing  ( <b>FUNC</b> ) and selecting "Select all in tab/Select all/Release all in tab/Release all".</li> <li>Perform the same operation as that of "Delete all" when you have selected all Phonebook entries including secret ones.</li> </ul>
Delete all in tab	You can delete all the Phonebook entries for the displayed tab.  YES
Delete all	You can delete all Phonebook entries including secret entries.  Enter your Terminal Security Code  YES  YES

#### Information

- When you delete a Phonebook entry that is stored in the PushTalk Phonebook, the PushTalk Phonebook entry is also deleted.

&lt;No. of Phonebook&gt;

## Checking Phonebook Storage Status


- 1   Phonebook  No. of phonebook
- Phone  
 Phonebook . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone)
- Secret . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored as secret data (Displayed in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only)
- Image . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries in which still images are stored
- Chara-den . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries in which Chara-den images are stored
- PushTalk . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored in the PushTalk Phonebook
- Voice dial . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries set as voice dial entries
- Rest . . . . .: The number of phone numbers that can still be stored
- : The number of mail addresses that can still be stored
- UIM  
 Phonebook . . . . .The number of Phonebook entries stored on the UIM

#### Information

- When you use 2in1, the number of Phonebook entries for the mode in use is displayed. (See page 451)

&lt;2-touch Dial&gt;

## Making a Call with a Few Keys Operation

When the entry is stored in memory number "000" through "009" in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook, you can dial the phone number just by pressing the lowest one digit of memory number and .

- 1 Numeric key (  to  )   or  ( **Dial** )
- You can make a videophone call by pressing  ( **V. phone** ) or a PushTalk call by pressing .

## Information

- When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the first phone number will be dialed.
- When you set "Restrict dialing" to a Phonebook entry of memory number 000 through 009, set it to the first phone number in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store a Phonebook entry of memory number from 000 through 009 as secret data, make a call to that entry in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

## <Voice Dial>

# Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice

Just vocalize the other party's voice dial name and then the Phonebook entry is accessed for making a call.

## Voice Dial Setting



You can store up to 100 voice dial entries selecting from among the Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone).

### 1 ► Phonebook ► Phonebook settings ► Voice dial setting ► <New>

- You can edit the stored voice dial name by pressing (Edit). Go to step 3.
- To delete the stored voice dial entry, press (FUNC) and select "Delete" or "Delete all" and then select "YES".

### 2 Search the Phonebook ► Select a Phonebook entry.

- The display for search method you used last time appears.
- The "★" mark is added to the Phonebook entry stored in the Voice Dial list.

### 3 Enter a voice dial name.

- You can enter up to 22 half-pitch katakana characters.
- The reading (katakana only) of the Phonebook entry is displayed as the voice dial name. Correct the name to the easy-to-identify words.

## Information

- The voice dial name set by this function is effective only for calling up a voice dial entry. For the voice guidance function, the reading (name) stored in the Phonebook is read aloud.
- When multiple similar voice dial names are stored or when the voice dial name is short, the recognition rate lowers and a wrong voice dial entry (Phonebook entry) might be accessed. In this case, rename the existing voice dial name and store it.
- You cannot store "ボイスセットイ (Boisusettei)" as a voice dial name.

## Dial from Phonebook by Voice

By your voice, you can access the Phonebook entry you set in the Voice Dial list. When "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON" and "Voice dial" is checked, the operation is guided by the voice guidance.

### 1 (for at least one second) ► As soon as the voice recognition start tone sounds, vocalize the voice dial name.

- Short vocalizing within four seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds. Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.
- You cannot change the volume of the voice recognition start tone. The voice recognition start tone does not sound during Manner Mode.
- If you say the word "ボイス設定 (Boisusettei)", the display of "Voice settings" appears. (See page 102)
- When "Auto voice dial" is set to "ON", the display for Auto Voice Dial appears after the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry. Then about two seconds later, the FOMA terminal automatically dials out.
- You cannot access a voice dial entry even by pressing and holding for at least one second from the horizontal Stand-by display.

### 2 Highlight a detected result and press or (Dial).

- The first phone number in the selected Phonebook entry is dialed.
- You can show the detailed Phonebook display by pressing (Detail). Highlight a phone number and press or (Dial) to make a voice call. Also, you can make a videophone call by pressing (phone) or a PushTalk call by pressing .

**Information**



- When you vocalize, keep your mouth away from the microphone about 10 cm. If your voice is too distant, it may be difficult to recognize your voice.
- Pronounce the voice dial name as clearly as possible.
- Before and after voice production, avoid making the sounds unrelated to the voice dial name such as clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, noisy breathing or other noise.
- Vocalize in quiet, noise-free locations.
- While vocalizing, do not put your fingers over the microphone, or press or brush the keys.

**To access a voice dial entry using an earphone/microphone**

You need to set "Voice headset dial" to "ON" and open the FOMA terminal in advance.

**1** Press and hold the switch of the earphone/microphone (option) for at least one second.

**2** Perform the operations of "Dial from Phonebook by Voice" on page 101.


- You can make a call also by pressing the switch of the earphone/microphone instead of pressing  or .

**To access a voice dial entry using a Bluetooth device**

You can access a voice dial entry with the FOMA terminal closed as well. You need to set "Voice headset dial" to "ON" in advance, and connect with the Bluetooth device using the Headset service or Hands-free service.

- For using the Hands-free service, the Bluetooth device needs to support a voice recognition function.


**1** Press the switch of the Bluetooth device.

- You can access a voice dial entry also by pressing and holding  for at least one second when the FOMA terminal is closed.

**2** Access a voice dial entry following the voice guidance.

- Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.
- The FOMA terminal automatically dials out about two seconds after the voice guidance informing of dialing finishes.

**Voice Settings**

**1**  ► **Set./Service** ► **Other settings** ► **Voice settings**  
► Do the following operations.

<b>Auto voice dial</b>	You can automatically make a call to the phone number accessed by voice. ► <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Voice headset dial</b>	You can access the voice dial entries by using an earphone/microphone (option) or Wireless Earphone Set 02 (option). ► <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Read aloud settings</b>	See page 398.
<b>Read aloud volume</b>	See page 399.
<b>Read aloud speed</b>	See page 399.
<b>Read aloud output</b>	See page 399.
<b>Read aloud valid set.</b>	See page 399.



# Sound/Screen/Light Settings

## Sound Settings

Changing Ring Tone.....<Select Ring Tone>	104
Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody .....<Melody Effect>	105
Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration...<Vibrator>	106
Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone...<Voice Announce>	106
Changing Ringback Tone.....<Melody Call Setting>	106
Setting Keypad Sound.....<Keypad Sound>	107
Setting Charging-start/end Tones.....<Charge Sound>	107
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Nearly Disconnecting .....<Quality Alarm>	107
Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F .....<Mail/Message Ring Time>	107
Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only .....<Headset Usage Setting>	108
Muting Tones from FOMA Terminal.....<Manner Mode>	108
Selecting Manner Mode Type.....<Manner Mode Set>	109

## Screen/Light Settings

Changing Displays.....<Display Setting>	111
Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook while Ringing .....<Display Phonebook Image>	113
Setting Displays for Private Window.....<Private Window>	114
Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Terminal .....<Received Mail/Call at Open>	114
Setting Lights for Display and Keypad.....<Backlight>	114
Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically.....<LCD AI>	115
Making Display Hard to See from People Around .....<View Blind>	116
Setting Quality of Display.....<Image Quality>	116
Setting Color Combination for Display .....<Color Theme Setting>	116
Setting Displays for Main Menu.....<Menu Icon Setting>	116
Using Kisekai Tool.....<Kisekai Tool>	117
Setting Machi-chara Image.....<Set to Machi-chara>	118
Setting Display of Horizontal Open Menu .....<Horizontal Open Menu>	118
Setting Color and Others of Call/Charging Indicator .....<Illumination>	118
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator.....<Info Notice Setting>	120
Changing Character Font.....<Font>	120
Changing Font Size.....<Font Size Setting>	121
Setting Clock Display.....	122

<Select Ring Tone>

MENU 1 3

## Changing Ring Tone

You can set a ring tone for each incoming type.

If you select an i-motion file, the i-motion file is played back with sound for incoming calls/messages. (Chaku-motion)

- The ring tone is the PCM sound source, chord of 128 tones, and ADPCM compliant.
- See "Add to Phonebook" on page 90 for setting a ring tone by Phonebook entry, and see "Group Setting" on page 94 for setting it by group.

### ■ Ring Tone List (pre-installed)

Display	Title	Name of Lyricist/Composer
Pattern 1	—	—
Pattern 2	—	—
Pattern 3	—	—
Pattern 4	—	—
Pattern 5	—	—
Rush & Chase	Rush & Chase	—
Seaside Resort	Seaside Resort	—
PARADE OF THE WOODEN*	PARADE OF THE WOODEN SOLDIERS	Composer: JESSEL LEON
SUMMERTIME	SUMMERTIME	Composer: GERSHWIN GEORGE
TRITSCH TRATSCH POLK*	TRITSCH TRATSCH POLKA OP 214	Composer: STRAUSS JUN JOHANN
SOMEDAY MY PRINCE WI	SOMEDAY MY PRINCE WILL COME	Composer: CHURCHILL FRANK E
SONATINE*	SONATINE	Composer: WOLFGANG AMADEUS MOZART
PEER GYNT SUITE NR 1	PEER GYNT SUITE NR 1 OP 46/ MORGENSTEMNING	Composer: GRIEG EDVARD HAGERUP
Old Type Phone	—	—
Steelpan	—	—
Minimal*	—	—
Documentary*	—	—
Magical Stick*	—	—
Smart Beep	—	—

Display	Title	Name of Lyricist/Composer
Ukulele	—	—
Waterdrop	—	—

※ 3D sound is supported. See page 105 for 3D sound.


(Note) The names of lyricists and composers are described conforming to the JASRAC website.

Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.

### ■ i-motion (pre-installed)

Display	Title	Name of Lyricist/Composer
Tokyo Night Flight	Tokyo Night Flight	—


## 1 ▶ Set./Service ▶ Sound ▶ Select ring tone ▶ Select an incoming type.

- Select an item and press  (Play) to check the contents actually played back or displayed.

## 2 Select ring tone ▶ Select a type of ring tone.

**Melody** . . . . . Sets a melody as a ring tone.

**MUSIC** . . . . . Sets a Chaku-uta Full® music file as a ring tone.

 **motion** . . . . . Sets an i-motion file as a ring tone. (Chaku-motion/ Chaku-uta®)

**Voice announce** . . . . . Sets the sound recorded by "Voice announce" as a ring tone. The setting is completed.

**OFF** . . . . . Sets a ring tone off. The setting is completed.

## 3 Select a folder ▶ Select a ring tone.

- If you select "MUSIC" in step 2, select "Fullsong ring tone" or "Point ring tone". (See page 284)

- See page 209 when you select "Search by i-mode".

## Information

- You can set the Call Receiving display by selecting "Phone" or "Videophone", and then by selecting "Select calling disp.". Go to step 2 on page 112.
- You can set the Mail Receiving display by selecting "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF", and then by selecting "Select receiving disp.". Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.
- The priority order of ring tones is as follows: "Read aloud settings" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select ring tone" ("Select ring tone" of "Multi number" when a call comes in to the additional number, and "Ring tone set. for No. B" of "2in1 setting" when a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1).
- The ring tone or images set at purchase might be played back or displayed for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Display setting".
- See "i-motion info" to check whether the i-motion file can be set for a ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion file containing video and sound for a mail ring tone, you can press **CLR** or others to stop the ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion file containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back taking priority over "Display setting". However, if you set a voice-only i-motion file for the ring tone, the image set by "Display setting" is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion file containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion file is played back taking priority over this function for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion file containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for this function is played back for incoming calls.
- You cannot set an i-motion file which contains video for "PushTalk" or "i-concier".
- When different types of mail — i-mode mail, SMS messages, chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of ring tone as follows: "Chat mail" → "i-mode mail/SMS" → "MessageR" → "MessageF". If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the ring tone corresponding to the mail you have received last works.
- For melodies downloaded, attached to mail, or prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA terminal, a playing part may be specified in advance. When a play-part-specified melody is set for a ring tone, only the specified part is played back.

## <Melody Effect>

MENU 6 4

# Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody

You can set whether to add stereophonic sound effects to the playback tone of i-motion files, melodies, ring tones, and effect tones.

- 1 **MENU** ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Melody effect**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

<b>Stereo&amp;3DSound</b>	You can play back 3-dimensional sound from the Stereo Earphone Set (option). This is effective for the i-appli effect tones or ring tones. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Position to play</b>	You can set the play start position of the melody that has been set for the ring tone or alarm tone. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Play all</b> . . . . . Plays back from the beginning of the melody. <b>Play portion</b> . . . . . Plays back from the start position set for the melody.

## 3D Sound

3D Sound is a function that creates stereophonic sound and spatially-moving sound through the use of the Stereo Earphone Set. 3D Sound compatible i-appli games, ring tones, and i-motion files enable you to enjoy live-like feeling of sounds.

## Information

- Stereognostic sense might differ depending on the person. If you feel strange, switch "Stereo&3DSound" to "OFF".

&lt;Vibrator&gt;

MENU 5 4

## Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration


You can set the vibrator to notify you of incoming calls and mail.

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Incoming call** ► **Vibrator**  
 ► **Select an incoming type** ► **Select a vibration pattern.**

- When "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA terminal vibrates in time with the vibration pattern stored in the melody.
- While selecting a vibration pattern, you can check the selected vibration. However, you cannot check the vibration when you select "Melody linkage".
- The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF":

: You set "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone".

: You set "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".

: You set "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone", and set "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".

### Information

- The priority order of vibrators is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Vibrator".
- Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA terminal vibrates with "Pattern 2" if an i-motion file or melody with no vibration pattern is set for the ring tone.
- Be careful not to leave the FOMA terminal on a desk or similar places with the vibrator activated; when a call comes in, the FOMA terminal might move and fall by vibration.

&lt;Voice Announce&gt;







MENU 5 5

## Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone

You can set the sound recorded with the FOMA terminal for a ring tone (including a ring tone for Number B of 2in1), On-hold tone/Holding tone, alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", and "TV timer", and answer message for Record Message.

You can record only one item for about 15 seconds.

- 1  ► **LifeKit** ► **Rec.msg/voice memo** ► **Voice announce**  
 ► **Record**

- To suspend recording midway, press  (Stop), , or . The contents recorded to that point are saved.
- The tone beeps about 5 seconds before the recording time (for about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the tone beeps twice, and the former display returns.
- The recording is suspended when a call comes in, when an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "TV timer", or "Timer recording" sounds, or when you switch displays using Multitask while recording. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)
- To play back the recorded sound, select "Play". To suspend playback midway, press  (Stop), , or .
- To erase the recorded sound, select "Erase", then select "YES".


&lt;Melody Call Setting&gt;

## Changing Ringback Tone

Melody Call is a service that enables you to change the ringback tone phone the callers hear to a melody you like.

For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

- Melody Call is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Incoming call** ► **Melody Call setting**  
 ► **YES** ► Operate following the instructions on the display.

### Information

- Melody Call is not available for incoming videophone calls and PushTalk calls.
- When you select "YES" from the confirmation display asking whether to connect to the site, the line is connected to the i-mode site. You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the site for settings, however, you are charged for connecting to the IP site, i-mode menu site, and free melody corner.

### <Keypad Sound>

MENU 3 0

## Setting Keypad Sound

1 ► **Set./Service** ► **Sound** ► **Keypad sound** ► **ON or OFF**

### Information

- You cannot change the volume for keypad sound.
- If you set this function to "OFF", the battery level tone (see page 44) and respective warning tones do not sound.
- The keypad does not make a sound when you press or , while the phone is ringing, during playback of an i-motion file, or during playback of a movie file.
- When you press with the FOMA terminal closed, the FOMA terminal works following "Info notice setting" on page 120.

### <Charge Sound>

## Setting Charging-start/end Tones

The confirmation tone sounds twice when charging starts/ends.

1 ► **Set./Service** ► **Sound** ► **Charge sound** ► **ON or OFF**

### Information

- You cannot change the volume for charge sound.
- The charging confirmation tone does not sound when the power is turned off, when a display other than the Stand-by display is shown or during Manner Mode or Public mode (Drive mode).

### <Quality Alarm>

MENU 7 5

## Sounding Alarm when a Line is Nearly Disconnecting

When a call is nearly disconnecting midway due to bad radio wave conditions, an alarm sounds to inform you right before disconnection.

1 ► **Set./Service** ► **Talk** ► **Quality alarm**  
► **Select an alarm.**

**No tone** . . . . . Does not sound.

**High tone** . . . . . High alarm sounds.

**Low tone** . . . . . Low alarm sounds.

### Information

- You might be disconnected without hearing an alarm if radio wave conditions deteriorate suddenly.

### <Mail/Message Ring Time>

MENU 6 8

## Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F

You can set the duration of the ring tone which sounds for incoming i-mode mail, SMS messages, Chat mail, Messages R/F, and i-concier information.

1 ► **Set./Service** ► **Sound** ► **Mail/Msg. ring time**  
► **Select a type of mail or message** ► **ON or OFF**  
► **Enter a ring time (seconds).**


- Enter in two digits from "01" through "30".

&lt;Headset Usage Setting&gt;

MENU 5 1

## Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only

You can set from where you sound the ring tone and alarm for when you connect an earphone/microphone (option).

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Headset usage setting**  
▶ **Headset and speaker or Headset only**

### Information

- Even when you set to "Headset only", the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker about 20 seconds after ringing starts. However, the tone does not sound from the speaker but sounds from the earphone only even after 20 seconds have elapsed if the tone sounds for the operations other than incoming calls, incoming mail, and alarm notification.
- Even when you set to "Headset only", the tone sounds from the speaker when any earphone/microphone is not connected or at the start of shooting with the camera.
- In the following cases, the tone sounds from the earphone when an earphone/microphone is connected, and from the speaker when it is not connected, regardless of this setting:
  - While watching a 1Seg program
  - During playback of a video file
  - During playback of an i-motion file
  - During playback of a movie file
  - During playback of a melody
  - While an i-coppli program is running
  - During playback of a music file by MUSIC Player
  - During playback of a Music&Video Channel program
- Do not wind the cord of the earphone/microphone around the FOMA terminal.
- The FOMA terminal may pick up noise if you take the cord of the earphone/microphone close to the FOMA terminal during a call.


&lt;Manner Mode&gt;

## Muting Tones from FOMA Terminal





Just by pressing a key, you can set to mute the tones from the FOMA terminal, such as a ring tone and keypad sound .


You can use "Manner mode set" to select Manner Mode functions from three types; "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original".




While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or while "Mic sensitiv." is set to "Up" in "Original", you can talk softly on the phone but your voice can still be heard clearly at the other end.

- 1 Press and hold  for at least one second.

Manner mode selected in "Manner mode set" is set.

- During a call or while calling, you can activate Manner Mode by pressing and holding  for at least one second. While a PushTalk call is arriving, you can activate Manner Mode by pressing .
- When the FOMA terminal is closed, you can activate Manner Mode by pressing and holding  for at least one second.
- During Manner Mode, " " is displayed. The settings you selected for "Manner mode set" are also displayed.

: Indicates that "Vibrator" will work to notify events.

 /  / : Indicate that "Ring volume" has been set to "Silent".

### Information

- Even if you activate Manner Mode, the shutter sound and focus lock tone of the camera sound.
- In Manner Mode, if you try to play back a melody, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select "YES" to play back the melody at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If the setting is "Silent" or "Step", the volume is Level 2.

## Information

- In Manner Mode, if you do the following operations, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play back voice or music.
  - Watching a 1Seg program
  - Playing back a video file
  - Playing back an i-motion file
  - Playing back a movie file
  - Playing back a music file by MUSIC Player
  - Playing back a Music&Video Channel programSelect "YES" to play it back at the volume set for each player. When you change the volume level, it is played back at the set volume for the next time.
- When an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, the sound comes out of the earphone. The confirmation display asking whether to play back sound or music files during Manner Mode does not appear. Further, the playback tone does not sound from the speaker even if you unplug the earphone/microphone while playing back sound or music files by each player.
- When "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" and you play back a melody attached to a received mail message during Manner Mode, the melody does not sound from the earphone even when an earphone/microphone (option) is connected.

## To release Manner Mode

Press and hold **#** for at least one second. During a call or calling, two beeps sound and the message that is released appears.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed, you can release Manner Mode also by pressing and holding **▼** for at least one second.

<Manner Mode Set>



## Selecting Manner Mode Type

You can select one of three types of operations for Manner Mode.

### ■ Operations during Manner Mode

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record message	Set value of Record message		ON or OFF
Vibrator**1	ON		ON or OFF
Phone volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step①
Mail volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step②
Alarm volume**2	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step
Memo tone	ON	OFF	ON or OFF③
Keypad sound	OFF		ON or OFF④
Microphone sensitivity	Up		Normal or Up
Low voltage alarm tone (Low battery alarm)	OFF		ON or OFF When "LV alarm tone" is set to "ON", it works with the same set value as ①.※3
Confirmation tone for selecting ring tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①・②.
On hold tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※4
Holding tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※5
ToruCa-received tone and ToruCa failed-to-receive tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.
Confirmation tone for recording voice announcement	ON	OFF	Works with the same set value as ③.
Battery level tone	Silent		Silent
Voice recognition start tone	Silent		Silent
Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※6
Playback tones of attached melody	Silent		Silent
Effect tones of Decome-Anime	Silent		Silent
Warning tones	Silent		Works with the same set value as ④.
Schedule alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
ToDo alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.
TV timer alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※7
Timer recording alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※8
Shutter sound/focus lock tone of the camera	Level 4		Level 4
Confirmation tone for selecting a shutter sound	OFF		Works with the same set value as ①.※4
Switching to Hands-free by "Hands-free w/ V. phone" or "Hands-free w/ PushTalk"	OFF		OFF
Read aloud volume	Silent		Silent
Effect tones of Flash movies	Silent		Silent
Effect tones at the start of i-Widget	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※4

※1 Vibrator works for the following tones:

Ring tones and alarm tones for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "TV timer" and "Timer recording"

The vibration pattern is the same one as you set on page 106. However, if the pattern you set on page 106 is "OFF", "Pattern 2" applies.

Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail

The FOMA terminal vibrates for about 1 second when you have missed calls or new mail messages and vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls and new mail messages.

※2 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 401 is set to "OFF", the tone sounds at the volume set for Alarm.

※3 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is "Silent".

※4 The tone sounds at Level 2 when ① is "Step".

※5 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is not "Silent".

※6 The tone sounds at Level 6 when ① is not "Silent".

※7 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 262 is set to "OFF", the tone sounds at the volume set for TV Timer.

※8 The tone does not sound when ① is "Step".

You can select from among standard "Manner mode" to inform you of incoming calls or mail by the vibrator, "Super silent" to erase sounds including confirmation tones from the earpiece, or "Original" to customize operations.

1



▶ Set./Service ▶ Incoming call ▶ Manner mode set  
▶ Manner mode, Super silent or Original  
▶ Do the following operations.

#### Record msg.

▶ ON or OFF

- Even if you select "ON", the ring time is fixed to about 13 seconds and cannot be changed when "Record message setting" on page 71 is set to "OFF".
- See page 71 for Record Message Setting.

#### Vibrator

You can set the FOMA terminal to vibrate for incoming calls and mail.

▶ ON or OFF

- See page 106 for Vibrator.

#### Phone vol.

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls.

▶ Use to adjust the volume.

- See page 68 for Ring Volume.

#### Mail vol.

You can adjust the ring volume for i-mode mail, SMS messages, Messages R/F, and i-concier information.

▶ Use to adjust the volume.

- See page 68 for Ring Volume.

#### Alarm vol.

▶ Use to adjust the volume.

- See page 400 for Alarm.

#### Memo tone

You can set the FOMA terminal to sound a confirmation tone when a record message is played back, a voice memo is recorded or played back, and a movie memo is recorded.

▶ ON or OFF

#### Keypad sound

▶ ON or OFF

- See page 107 for Keypad Sound.

#### Mic sensitiv.

▶ Normal or Up



LV alarm tone

▶ ON or OFF

• See page 44 for LV Alarm Tone (low battery alarm).

**2** Press (Finish).

<Display Setting>

MENU 5 6

## Changing Displays

### Set Stand-by Display

You can set the Stand-by display which appears on the display. On the Stand-by display, you can randomly show the images in a specified folder, and set moving pictures shot by the FOMA terminal or i-motion files downloaded from sites for the Stand-by display. You can set them for the vertical display and horizontal display respectively.

**1** ▶ Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Display setting

▶ Stand-by display or Stand-by disp. Wide

▶ Select a type of image.

- When you select "Calendar/schedule", select a display format, and then select "BG image ON" or "BG image OFF". When you select "BG image OFF", the setting is completed.  
You cannot select "Calendar (2 months)" and "Calendar (3 months)" for "Stand-by disp. Wide".
- When you select "Random display", select a folder and then select "Every hour" or "Every day" for the switching interval of the Stand-by display. The setting is completed.
- When you select "i-appli display", select an i-appli program. The setting is completed.  
You cannot select "i-appli display" for "Stand-by disp. Wide".

**2** Select a folder ▶ Select an image.

- On the Stand-by display, the image smaller than the display is shown in equivalent dimensions or enlarged to fit to the display size, depending on the image size.
- See page 209 when you select "Search by i-mode".

### When Calendar/Schedule is set

You can display schedule events of the day (up to 10) or calendar in the set format on the Stand-by display. You can check the schedule events or calendar and can set schedule events (see page 403) with ease.

You can access the schedule events or calendar by pressing from the vertical Stand-by display. Highlight an item to be operated and press (Select).

- When you select a schedule event, you can confirm the previous or next schedule events by pressing .  
You can display the detailed schedule display by pressing (Select).
- When you select the calendar, you can display the previous or next calendar by pressing .  
You can set a schedule event by pressing (Select).



### When an original animation or animation GIF is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA terminal. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

### When a Flash movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA terminal. The image stopped such as by pressing during playback of a Flash movie is displayed as the Stand-by display.


- When a Flash movie which shows a clock or the like is set, the date/time is not updated during pause. When you play back the Flash movie by pressing , the date/time is corrected.
- If you set a Flash movie containing a progressive type FLV file, the FLV file is not played back.


### When an i-motion file is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA terminal. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.



- Press or during playback to adjust the volume.  
Press , , , , , , , or to end the playback.
- If you play back an i-motion file during Manner Mode, the sound is not played back.

## Not to display icons on the Stand-by display

Press  from the Stand-by display.

Calendar, schedule events, status icons, notification icons, and desktop icons are cleared. Press  again to show the icons and others.

When a Flash movie is set for the Stand-by display, however, the following operations are performed:

- When you press  during playback of a Flash movie, the playback pauses.
- Press  again to clear the icons and others.


### Information

- The schedule list shows the today's schedule events whose start time has not come, and the today's schedule events set as "All day". Holidays are not displayed.
- Some i-motion files might not be correctly displayed.
- You cannot set a still image larger than the Stand-by (480 x 854) or in excess of 500 Kbytes for the Stand-by display.
- When a folder selected for "Random display" includes images which cannot be set for the Stand-by display, pre-installed images might be displayed.
- You cannot set some images or i-motion files for the Stand-by display or for Random display. Also, some images may not be displayed with correct display direction.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.
- When you show the Stand-by display, the Flash movies such as a clock and the animation GIF files stop moving after a certain period of playback.

## Set the Wake-up Display

You can set an image or message to be displayed for when the power is turned on.

-  **Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Display setting**  
**▶ Wake-up display ▶ Select a type of image.**

- If you select "Message", enter a message. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters.
- If you select "My picture" or "  motion", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.
- See page 209 when you select "Search by i-mode".



### Information

- You cannot set some images or i-motion files for the Wake-up display. Also, some images may not be displayed with correct display direction.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

## Set Displays for Dialing/Calling and Others

You can set an image for the Dialing/Call Receiving display, Mail Sending/Mail Receiving display, and Checking display.

-  **Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Display setting**  
**▶ Select a type of display.**

- When "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" is selected, select "Select calling disp."
- When "Mail receiving" is selected, select "Select receiving disp." and go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.
- If you select "Dialing", "Videophone dialing", "Mail sending", "Check new messages", or "Mail/msg. rcpt result", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.
- Select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming" or "Mail receiving" and press  (  ) to check the contents actually displayed or played back.

- Select a type of image.**

Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.

### Information

- When you select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming", or "Mail receiving", select "Select ring tone" to set the ring tone. Go to step 2 on page 104.
  - The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Disp. PH-book image" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.
- The same order applies if a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1. However, when you set an i-motion file containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion) by "Ringtone set. for No. B", it is played back as Chaku-motion, taking priority over this function.

## Information

- When you set an i-motion file containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back for incoming calls, taking priority over this function. However, if you set a voice-only i-motion file, the image set by this function is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion file containing video and sound for “Select calling disp.”, the i-motion file is played back taking priority over “Select ring tone” of “Incoming call” for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion file containing only video for “Select calling disp.”, the ring tone selected for “Select ring tone” of “Incoming call” is played back.
- The images or ring tone set at purchase might be displayed or played back for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and “Select ring tone”.
- You cannot set some images for “Display setting”. Also, some images may not be displayed with correct display direction.
- The sound of Flash movies is not played back.

## Set Battery Icon

You can set indications/images for battery icons.

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Display setting** ▶ **Battery**  
▶ **Select an item.**

**Numerals** . . . . . The estimate of the battery level is indicated in percent figures. Select a font color.

**Icon** . . . . . . . . . . The estimate of the battery level is indicated by icons. Select images after selecting a folder.


## Information

- The image you can set for battery icons of “Icon” is a GIF image of 70 x 25 dots. (A battery icon is composed of an image of 14 x 25 dots.)

## Set Antenna Icon

You can set images for antenna icons.

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Display setting**  
▶ **Antenna icon** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image.**

- You cannot change icons such as “” or “**Self**”.

## Information

- The image you can set for antenna icons is a GIF image of 44 x 50 dots. (An antenna icon is composed of an image of 22 x 25 dots.)

## Show Icons in Color/Monochrome

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Display setting**  
▶ **Icon color** ▶ **Color or Monochrome**

- You cannot change the battery icon and antenna icon.

<Display Phonebook Image>

## Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook while Ringing

If the caller ID notified by the caller matches the phone number stored in the Phonebook, the still image stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Incoming call**  
▶ **Disp. PH-book image** ▶ **ON or OFF**

## Information

- The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: “Picture for Phonebook entry” → “Picture for group” → “Image for Phonebook entry” → “Display setting”. However, when “Incoming call” or “Videophone incoming” of “Read aloud settings” is set to “ON”, the default image is displayed.

&lt;Private Window&gt;

MENU 9 3

## Setting Displays for Private Window

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Private window**  
▶ **ON or OFF** ▶ **Do the following operations.**

<b>Brightness</b>	You can adjust the brightness to Level 1 (dark) through Level 5 (bright). ▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b>
<b>Stand-by display</b>	You can set the Stand-by display that appears on the Private window. ▶ <b>Set the Stand-by display.</b> • See page 111 for how to set the Stand-by display. However, "Random display", "i-motion", "i-appli display" and "Calendar (2 months)" and "Calendar (3 months)" of "Calendar/schedule" are not displayed.
<b>Clock</b>	You can set the clock that appears on the Stand-by display of the Private window. ▶ <b>Set a clock.</b> • See page 122 for how to set the clock.
<b>Called</b>	You can set whether to display the detailed Missed Call display. (See page 33) ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> • If you set to "ON", you can display the phone numbers (names when stored in the Phonebook) of the callers for incoming calls.
<b>Mail</b>	You can set whether to display the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Message R/F display. (See page 34) ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Movie display time</b>	You can set display time for playing back the i-motion file and others. ▶ <b>15 seconds or Always display</b>

### Information


#### <Stand-by display>

- When an original animation, animation GIF, or Flash movie is set, it is played back when you close the FOMA terminal or show the Stand-by display.

#### <Received Mail/Call at Open>

## Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Terminal

When you have a missed call, new mail message, new chat mail message, or new Message R/F, the detailed Missed Call display/Inbox list/Chat Mail display/Message R/F list is displayed at opening the FOMA terminal.

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Recv. mail/call at open**  
▶ **ON or OFF**

### Information

- When newly received messages and missed calls are found, the detailed Missed Call display appears.
- When a new mail message, chat mail, Message R/F are simultaneously received, the messages are displayed in the order of the chat mail message, i-mode message, Message R, and Message F.
- When you open the FOMA terminal in Horizontal Open Style, the detailed Missed Call display does not appear.

#### <Backlight>

MENU 7 0

## Setting Lights for Display and Keypad

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Backlight**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

### Lighting

You can set whether to light the backlight in ordinary time.

- ▶ **ON or OFF**
- If you set to "OFF", "💡" appears on the Stand-by display.

Also, you can set whether to activate Power Saver Mode for the display.

- ▶ **ON (Power saver mode) or OFF (Constant light)**
- ▶ **Enter a light time (seconds).**
- Enter from "060" through "999" in three digits.

<b>Charging</b>	<p>▶ <b>Standard or Constant light</b></p> <p><b>Standard</b> . . . . . Lights during charging in the same setting as it lights in ordinary time.</p> <p><b>Constant light</b> . . . . . When 15 seconds elapse without any operation during charging, the backlight switches to Level 1. It does not switch to Power Saver Mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When an AC adapter (option) or another device is connected, the backlight lights following the setting of this function even after charging is completed.</li> </ul>
<b>Area</b>	<p>You can set the range the backlight lights in.</p> <p>▶ <b>LCD+Keys or LCD</b></p>
<b>Brightness</b>	<p>You can adjust the brightness of the backlight for the display to Level 1 (dark) through Level 5 (bright).</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When "Auto setting" is set, the backlight set by "Area" is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness that has been detected by the light sensor.</li> </ul>
<b>Soft light</b>	<p>You can set whether to light the backlight softly for the display.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even if you set to "OFF", the backlight might light softly for some functions.</li> </ul>

### To switch the backlight on/off by pressing one key

Press and hold **[S]** for at least one second.

- While an i-oppli program is running or you are entering characters, you cannot switch the backlight on/off by pressing and holding **[S]** for at least one second. Also, depending on the Decome-Anime message or Flash movie, you may not be able to switch the backlight on/off while it is displayed.

#### Information

- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight stays lit while a call is coming in and the area specified by "Area" lights for about 15 seconds when you turn on the power, touch the keys, or open the FOMA terminal. The backlight stays lit while the camera is activated, during playback of an i-motion file, or during playback of a movie file. When "OFF" is set, it does not light. However, it stays lit during a moving picture shoot regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- See page 76 for Backlight during a videophone call.
- See page 266 for Backlight for while watching a 1Seg program.

#### Information

- When you display the text of i-mode mail or Messages R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the text.
- If "Power saver mode" is set to "ON (Power saver mode)" and the specified time elapses without doing any operations, the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saver Mode and the display goes off. However, the FOMA terminal might not switch to Power Saver Mode depending on the function in use.
- When an i-motion file is set for the Stand-by display, the Stand-by display changes to Power Saver Mode after ending the playback and a standby time elapses.
- The display appears when you operate the FOMA terminal, receive a call, or receive i-Channel tickers. However, the receiving display does not appear when you receive a call in Public mode (Drive mode).
- If you press the switch of an earphone/microphone (option) in Power Saver Mode, the Power Saver Mode is released but the operation such as dialing is not made. However, if you press and hold the switch of the earphone/microphone for at least one second during a call (except Multi calling), the Power Saver Mode is released and the call ends.

#### <LCD AI>

### Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically

You can set whether to automatically adjust the brightness of the display backlight and to compensate the image quality according to that brightness during playback of i-motion files/movie files, Music&Video Channel programs, or video files, during a videophone call, or while watching a 1Seg program.

#### 1 ▶ Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ LCD AI ▶ ON or OFF

- If you operate the setting from the Function menu during a videophone call or watching a 1Seg program, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call or 1Seg program.

#### Information


- If you set to "ON", the brightness is adjusted within the level specified for "Brightness" of "Backlight". The brightness is adjusted also while you are selecting a menu item.
- This function is disabled during Play Background.

&lt;View Blind&gt;

## Making Display Hard to See from People Around


You can adjust the contrast of the display so that it is hardly viewed from a slanted angle.

**1**  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **View blind** ▶ **ON or OFF**  
▶ **Select a contrast.**

- When "ON" is set, "" appears on the Stand-by display.
- While selecting a contrast level, you can check the selected contrast on the display.

**To switch View Blind on/off by pressing one key**

Press and hold  for at least one second.

- While an i-oppli program is running, a PDF file is displayed, or you are entering characters, you cannot switch View Blind on/off by pressing and holding  for at least one second. Also, depending on the Decode-Anime message or Flash movie, you may not be able to switch View Blind on/off while it is displayed.

&lt;Image Quality&gt;

## Setting Quality of Display

**1**  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Image quality**  
▶ **Select an item.**

**Normal** . . . . . Normal image quality

**Vivid** . . . . . Vivid image quality

**Dynamic** . . . . . Dynamic image quality in which motion is emphasized

&lt;Color Theme Setting&gt;

 **8** **6**

## Setting Color Combination for Display

You can set the display color pattern of characters, backgrounds, and so on.

**1**  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Color theme setting**  
▶ **Select a color theme.**

- While selecting a color theme, you can check the selected color theme on the display.

**Information**

- You cannot change the color for icons and images displayed in multiple colors, the DOCOMO pictograms, and the Internet websites (sites) supporting i-mode.

&lt;Menu Icon Setting&gt;

 **5** **7**

## Setting Displays for Main Menu



You can change the icons and the background images of Main Menu.

**1**  ▶  (**Menu set**) ▶ **Select a pattern.**

- See page 37 for Simple Menu.

**2** When you select "Customize" in step 1, select a menu icon or background image to be changed  
▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image.**

Repeat step 2 and set menu icons and a background image.

- While selecting a menu icon or background image, press  (**Play**) to confirm the currently set image.
- To reset the menu icon and background image set to "Customize" to "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder, press  (**FUNC**) and select "Reset" or "All reset", then select "YES".
- See page 209 when you select "Search by i-mode".

**Information**

- The image you can set for "Customize" is a JPEG or GIF image whose size is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 500 Kbytes. Perform "Change size" or "Trim away" for other images.
- When the image you set "Customize" is deleted, "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder returns.
- When you activate Personal Data Lock while "Customize" is set, the default image is displayed. However, when "Display setting" is set to "Accept" for "Customize" of Personal Data Lock, the image set for this function is displayed.
- When you set "Customize", the main menu icons do not switch even if you switch "Select language".

## Using Kisekae Tool



You can use Kisekae Tool to change the ring tone, Stand-by display, menu icons and others at a time.

- See page 208 for details on how to download Kisekae Tool files.
- See page 365 for the operation from Data Box.

### ■ Functions that can be set with Kisekae Tool

- Select ring tone
- Display setting
- Color theme setting
- Menu icon setting
- "Stand-by display" and "Clock" of Private window
- Font
- Disp. call/receive No.
- Ticker font size set.
- Ticker color set.
- Ticker scroll speed
- i-øppli call sound
- Positioning ring tone
- Tone

- Functions that can be set differ depending on the Kisekae Tool file.
- The changes of functions you can respectively set according to the mode of 2in1 are reflected to A Mode only, regardless of the mode at changing. The other changes of functions are applied to the all modes of 2in1.

1  **▶ Set./Service ▶ Kisekae**  
 ▶ Highlight a Kisekae Tool file and press  (Set all)  
 ▶ YES

- "★" is added to the Kisekae Tool file collectively set at the moment.
- Depending on the selected Kisekae Tool file, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the font size. When you select "NO", you might not be able to set the Kisekae Tool file correctly.

### Information

- For the functions set by Kisekae Tool, each setting display is shown with "Follow Kisekae Tool" highlighted. You can separately change each setting, however, if you want to reset to the setting by Kisekae Tool, you need to perform collective settings again. You cannot select "Follow Kisekae Tool".
- If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.


## Function Menu of Main Menu

<b>Change launcher</b>	You can manually replace the items on Main Menu. ▶ Select a destination to save to ▶ YES
<b>Disp. default MENU</b>	You can temporarily show Main Menu of "Normal". • Once you close Main Menu of "Normal", the currently set Main Menu returns.
<b>Reset</b>	See page 117.

## Reset Changed Design

You can reset the functions changed by Kisekae Tool.

1  ▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Reset**  
 ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item  
 ▶ YES

- Reset disp. /sound. . . .** Resets all of "■ Functions that can be set with Kisekae Tool" to the default.
- Reset menu screen . . .** Resets Main Menu to the default. You can reset also by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the vertical Stand-by display and selecting "YES".
- Reset menu log . . . . .** Resets the operation records of Main Menu to the default.

### Information

- Even if you perform "Reset disp. /sound" or "Reset menu screen", you cannot reset "Font size setting".
- Even if you execute "Reset menu screen", the Main Menu items you have manually replaced by "Change launcher" are not reset.

&lt;Set to Machi-chara&gt;

## Setting Machi-chara Image

When Machi-chara is set, a Machi-chara image appears on the Stand-by display to tell you missed calls, new mail messages, new i-concier information and others.

- See page 208 for downloading Machi-chara images.
- See page 362 for the operations from Data Box.

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Machi-chara**  
▶ **Set to Machi-chara**

- To release Machi-chara, select "Release Machi-chara".

2 **Highlight a Machi-chara image and press**  (**Set**).

- "★" is added to the currently set Machi-chara image.

### Information

- The Machi-chara image is not displayed in the following cases:
  - During Lock All
  - During Personal Data Lock
  - During Omakase Lock
  - While an icon or another is selected on the Stand-by display
 However, when "Display setting" is set to "Accept" for "Customize" of Personal Data Lock, Machi-chara images are displayed even during Personal Data Lock.
- The Machi-chara image is not displayed on the Stand-by display of the Private window.
- Some Machi-chara images change their appearance according to the elapsed time, total calls duration, and number of mail messages sent/received after setting. If you move these Machi-chara images to the microSD card or execute "Reset all info", they return to the default state.

&lt;Horizontal Open Menu&gt;

## Setting Display of Horizontal Open Menu

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Horizontal open menu**  
▶ **Pattern 1 or Pattern 2**


&lt;Illumination&gt;

## Setting Color and Others of Call/Charging Indicator

1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Illumination**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

<b>All illum. setting</b>	You can set all illumination items at one time. ▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b>
<b>Incoming illumination</b>	See page 119.
<b>Illumination in talk</b>	You can set the illumination for during a call. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> • While selecting an item, you can check the flickering of the Call/Charging indicator. • It flickers in the same color while Record Message is working, during answer-hold (On Hold), or while a call is on hold (Holding).
<b>Missed/unread illum.</b>	The Call/Charging indicator flickers at about 5-second interval for missed calls, new mail messages, new chat mail messages, new Messages R/F, i-oppli calls you did not reply to, or new i-concier information. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>OFF when checked</b> . . . The Call/Charging indicator flickers until you check missed calls or others. <b>OFF after 24hours</b> . . . Even if you do not check missed calls or others, the Call/Charging indicator automatically goes off after it flickers for 24 hours. <b>OFF</b> . . . . . The Call/Charging indicator does not flicker. • It does not flicker in Public mode (Drive mode), during Lock All, and during Omakase Lock. Flickering does not resume even after Public mode (Drive mode) or each lock is released except when new i-concier information is found.
<b>Music&amp;Video Ch illum.</b>	The Call/Charging indicator flickers at about 5-second interval for about 30 minutes when obtaining Music&Video Channel programs is completed. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>illum. when closed</b>	The Call/Charging indicator lights when the FOMA terminal is closed. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>










<b>Hourly illumination</b>	<p>You can be notified of the specified time (every hour at 0 minutes) by the tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b></p> <p><b>OFF</b> . . . . . The Call/Charging indicator does not light.</p> <p><b>Pattern 1</b> . . . . A fixed tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights in the fixed color.</p> <p><b>Pattern 2</b> . . . . The tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator change by time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• While selecting a pattern, you can check the lighting of the Call/Charging indicator and the time tone.</li> <li>• "Hourly illumination" does not work while a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, or Lock All or Omakase Lock is activated.</li> <li>• Time tone sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". It sounds at Level 2 when "Step" is set.</li> </ul>
<b>MUSIC illumination</b>	<p>The Call/Charging indicator flickers when you start playback by MUSIC Player.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>
<b>Bluetooth illumination</b>	<p>The Call/Charging indicator flickers during connecting to Bluetooth devices.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It flickers at about 5-second interval for about 5 minutes when the connection is completed.</li> </ul>
<b>IC card illumination</b>	<p>The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you place the FOMA terminal over an IC card scanning device or during iC communication.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It does not light/flicker during IC Card Lock.</li> </ul>
<b>PushTalk illumination</b>	<p>The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you try to get the PushTalk talker's right, or when a member's state changes to "Connected".</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>
<b>Side key illumination</b>	<p>You can set the illumination for when you press  with the FOMA terminal closed.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• While selecting an item, you can check the flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.</li> <li>• The lighting duration varies depending on the illumination.</li> </ul>
<b>Check settings</b>	<p>You can check the setting contents for "Incoming illumination", "Illumination in talk", "Hourly illumination" and "Side key illumination".</p>

## Incoming Illumination



You can set an illumination for each incoming type.

**1**  ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Illumination** ▶ **Incoming illumination**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

<b>Select color</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an incoming type</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To make the indicator light in colors "Color 1" to "Color 12" in order, select "Gradation".</li> <li>• While selecting an item, you can check the lighting/flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.</li> </ul>				
<b>Set pattern</b>	<p>You can set the lighting pattern of the Incoming Illumination.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b></p> <p><b>Standard</b> . . . . . Lights in the same pattern repeatedly.</p> <p><b>Melody linkage</b> . . . . Lights with the ring tone.</p>				
<b>Color setting</b>	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Edit color name</b></td> <td> <p>▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Enter a name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Adjust color tone</b></td> <td> <p>▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Adjust the color tone.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> <li>• Use  to select a color and use  to change the color tone.</li> </ul> </td> </tr> </table>	<b>Edit color name</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Enter a name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>	<b>Adjust color tone</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Adjust the color tone.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> <li>• Use  to select a color and use  to change the color tone.</li> </ul>
<b>Edit color name</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Enter a name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>				
<b>Adjust color tone</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a color</b> ▶ <b>Adjust the color tone.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> <li>• Use  to select a color and use  to change the color tone.</li> </ul>				

### Information

#### <Select color>

- The priority order of incoming illumination is; "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select color".

#### <Set pattern>

- The Call/Charging indicator lights in specified pattern for each illumination when "Select color" is set to other than "Color 1" through "Color 12" and "Gradation".
- The Call/Charging indicator lights by "Standard" when an i-motion file or melody with no flickering pattern is set for the ring tone.

&lt;Info Notice Setting&gt;

MENU 6 5

## Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator

With the FOMA terminal closed, you can check for missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, new Messages R/F, record messages, and voice mail messages by pressing . To use this function, you need to set "Side keys guard" to "OFF" in advance.

### 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **Incoming call** ▶ **Info notice setting** ▶ **Select an item.**

**ON**\* . . . Notifies you whether there are missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, or new Messages R/F by the electronic sound and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.

**OFF** . . . Turns off the information notice.

※ When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", you can select "電子音 (electronic sound)" or "ボイス (voice)". With "ボイス (voice)", Japanese electronic voice and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator notify you of new chat mail, new mail, missed calls, record messages and voice mail messages in this order.

If you press while the FOMA terminal is closed

**When you have a missed call, new mail, new chat mail, or new Message R/F**  
(When the "Missed call" icon, "New mail" icon, "Chat mail" icon, or "Message R/F" icon is displayed on the Stand-by display.)

When "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", a double-beep tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

When "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" on the Japanese display, a beep tone sounds and a voice message announces that you have new mail, a missed call, and so on, and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

- When "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" on the Japanese display, and a new Message R/F is found, a voice message announces that you have new mail.
- When you press again while the voice is being played back, you can stop it.

**When you have no missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, or new Message R/F**

When "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", or "ボイス (voice)" on the Japanese display, a triple-beep tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers for about five seconds. Even when "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)", the notice is not made by voice.

### Information

- You cannot check for the mail messages held at the i-mode Center by this function.
- The confirmation function might not work depending on the function being activated.
- The sound volume for electronic sound cannot be changed.
- "ボイス (voice)" sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". It sounds at Level 2 when "Step" is set.
- When "Phone" of "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF", the Call/Charging indicator and vibrator notify you of missed calls, new mail, and new chat mail.
- The vibrator notifies the information as follows:
  - Vibrates for about 1 second when you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail message.
  - Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail message.
- If you open the FOMA terminal during notification, it stops.

&lt;Font&gt;

MENU 6 6

## Changing Character Font

### 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Font** ▶ **Font 1, Font 2, or Font 3**

### Information

- Some characters are displayed in "Font 1" regardless of the setting of this function.
- You cannot change the font of a phone number entry or clock display.

## Set Character Font and Color of Phone Numbers

You can set the font and color of names stored in the Phonebook and phone numbers displayed on the following displays:

### ■ Font of dial number

- Dialing/Call Receiving display
- Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Detailed Redial display
- Detailed Sent Chaku-moji message

### ■ Font color



- Dialing/Call Receiving/Talking display
- Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Redial
- Detailed Sent Chaku-moji message
- Sent/Received Address list
- When you use 2in1, the setting here applies to Number A. To specify for Number B, operate "Disp. call/receive No." of "2in1 setting".

1  **Set./Service ▶ Incoming call ▶ Disp. call/receive No.**  
▶ Do the following operations.

Font of dial number ▶ Select a pattern.

### Font color

▶ Select a color.

- You can switch between 16 color and 256 color by pressing  (Change).
- You can reset the set color by pressing  (Reset).

### Information

- If you change the background color by "Color theme setting" or "Kisekxae Tool", the font color automatically changes as well.
- You cannot change the color of pictograms.

## <Font Size Setting>

## Changing Font Size

1  **Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Font size setting**  
▶ Do the following operations.

### Set at one time

You can set all the changeable items such as font size at a time.






▶ **Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small**

- The confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the font size of the menu as well. When you select "YES", the menu icons are changed to "Enlarge menu" while "Extra large" or "Large" is set, and they are changed to "Normal" while "Standard" or "Small" is set.
- When "Extra large" is set, "Phonebook" and "Dialed/recv. calls" are set to "Large".
- When "Small" is set, "Phonebook" and "Dialed/recv. calls" are set to "Standard".

### Mail

You can set the font size for the detailed mail display, detailed Message R/F display and for "Mail settings".

▶ **Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small**

- While the detailed mail display is shown, press  (FUNC) to select "Display" and then select "Font size set.". You can change the font size also by pressing , or pressing and holding  for at least one second. However, another mail message is displayed when you press and hold  for at least one second while "Extra large" is set, or you press and hold  for at least one second while "Small" is set.
- You cannot change the font size of the Decome-Anime text or Deco-mail pictograms.

### i-mode

You can set the font size for sites and "i-mode settings".

▶ **Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small**

### Phonebook

You can set the font size for the Phonebook and "Phonebook settings".

▶ **Large or Standard**

- You can set also by  Phonebook ▶ Phonebook settings  
▶ Font size setting ▶ Phonebook.

<b>Dialed/recv. calls</b>	<p>You can set the font size for the Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address and Received Address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Large or Standard</b></li> <li>• You can set also by  Phonebook ▶ Phonebook settings</li> <li>▶ Font size setting ▶ Dialed/recv. calls.</li> </ul>
<b>Character input</b>	<p>You can set the font size for the character entry display, Message Composition display, or SMS Composition display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small</b></li> </ul>

### Information

- Depending on the function, characters might not be displayed in the set size.
- When "Extra large" or "Large" is set, some items displayed for each operating procedure differ from the ones displayed for when "Standard" or "Small" is set.

5 6

## Setting Clock Display

### Set Stand-by Clock Display

You can set the display pattern and others of the clock on the Stand-by display. You can set clock for the vertical Stand-by display and horizontal Stand-by display respectively.

- ▶ **Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Clock**  
▶ **Stand-by clock or Stand-by clock Wide**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

- During operation or when you press while "Stand-by clock" or "Stand-by clock Wide" is highlighted, you can check the clock actually displayed. However, it might differ from the actual one depending on the setting of each function.

<b>Position</b>	<p>You can set the clock position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b></li> </ul>
<b>Pattern</b>	<p>You can set the display pattern of the clock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b></li> </ul>
<b>Display size</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Largest, Large, or Small</b></li> <li>• You cannot change the clock size of World Time Watch and the sub clock.</li> </ul>

 ( 曜日 )  
**Day of week**

When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", you can select "日本語 (Japanese)" or "英語 (English)".

- If you set to "英語 (English)", the region names of World Time Watch are displayed in English as well.

## 2 Press ( Set ).

- The setting of this function might not be reflected depending on the settings of other functions or the condition of the FOMA terminal.

### Set Icon Clock Display

You can set a display pattern of Icon Clock at the upper right of the display (lower right of the horizontal display).

- ▶ **Set./Service ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Clock**  
▶ **Icon clock ▶ Select a pattern.**

# Security Settings

<b>Security Code</b>	
Security Codes Used for FOMA Terminal .....	124
Changing Terminal Security Code .....	
..... <Change Security Code>	125
Setting PIN Code.....<UIM Setting>	125
Releasing PIN Lock .....	126
<b>Restricting Operations and Functions on Mobile Phone</b>	
Restricting Others from Using .....	<Lock All> 126
Using Omakase Lock .....	<Omakase Lock> 127
Using Self Mode .....	<Self Mode> 128
Hiding Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events .....	<Personal Data Lock> 128
Setting a Variety of Locks .....	<Lock Setting> 130
Using Face Reader .....	<Face Reader Setting> 131
Locking Keypad Dial .....	<Keypad Dial Lock> 134
Restricting Key Operation .....	<Key Lock> 134
Restricting Side Key Operation.....	<Side Keys Guard> 134
<b>Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls or Messages</b>	
Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls .....	<Record Display Set> 135
Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from .....	
Prying Eyes .....	<Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only> 135
Applying Secret for Mail in Mailbox .....	<Secret Mail Display> 136
Setting not to Display Mail in Mailbox without Permission .....	<Mail Security> 136
Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries .....	<Restrictions> 136
Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID .....	<Call Setting without ID> 138
Delaying Start of Ringing Operation .....	<Ring Time> 138
Rejecting Incoming Calls from Phone Numbers which are not .....	
Stored in Phonebooks .....	<Reject Unknown> 139
Using Data Security Service .....	<Data Security Service> 139
Resetting Function Settings .....	<Reset Settings> 141
Deleting Saved Data All at Once.....	<Initialize> 141
Resetting Data by Remote Control.....	<Remote Reset> 142
<b>Other Security Settings</b>	
Other Security Settings .....	142


## Security Codes Used for FOMA Terminal

For some functions of the FOMA terminal, you need to enter your security code. In addition to the Terminal Security Code for operating respective mobile phone functions, the Network Security Code to use network services, and i-mode password are available. These security codes help you utilize your FOMA terminal.

### ■ Cautions on security codes

- You should avoid using the numbers for security codes such as denoting your birth date, part of your phone number, local address number, room number, "1111" or "1234" that is easily decoded by a third party. Also make sure that you take a note of the security codes you have selected just in case you forget them.
- Take care not to let others know your security codes. Even if your security codes are known and used by a third party, we at DOCOMO take no responsibility in any event for the resultant loss.
- If you do not remember your respective security codes, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license, the FOMA terminal and UIM to the handling counter of a docomo shop.  
For details contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

## Terminal Security Code

The Terminal Security Code is set to "0000" at purchase but you can change it by yourself. (See page 125)  
When the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears, enter your four- to eight-digit code and press .

- When you enter your Terminal Security Code, the entered numbers are indicated by "." and not displayed.
- If you have entered wrong numbers or nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed; then the display prior to entering the Terminal Security Code returns. Check the correct code and retry entering numbers.



## Network Security Code

This is a four-digit number required for your identification to give orders/apply at a docomo shop, docomo Information Center, or "お客様サポート (User support)" site, or when you use respective network services. This is determined at the time of contract but can be changed by yourself. If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo", the overall support site for personal computers, you can use a personal computer to take proceedings of changing your Network Security Code to new one. Further, you can change it by yourself from "各種設定 (確認・変更・利用) [Respective settings (Confirmation/Change/Use)]" of "お客様サポート (User support)" from i-mode.  
※ For "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (User support)", see the inside of the back page of this manual.

## i-mode Password

The four-digit "i-mode password" is required to register/delete My Menu, apply for/cancel Message Services or i-mode pay services, etc. (Some information providers may provide you with their specific password.) The i-mode password is "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change it by yourself. (See page 196)  
From i-mode, you can change the i-mode password by following operation:  
"☰ Menu" → "English" → "Options" → "Change i-mode Password"

## PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

For the UIM, you can set two security codes, namely the PIN1 code and PIN2 code. These security codes are "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change them by yourself. (See page 126)  
The PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit number for checking the user each time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA terminal or each time the FOMA terminal is turned on, to prevent the unauthorized use by the third party. By entering your PIN1 code, you can make or answer calls, or use functions in the FOMA terminal.  
The PIN2 code is a four- to eight-digit number for executing Reset Total Cost, using the user certificate or applying for the issue of it, etc.

- If you purchase a new FOMA terminal and use the existing UIM with the new FOMA terminal, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code you have set previously.

When the PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code Entry display appears, enter your four- to eight-digit PIN1 code/PIN2 code and press **Set**.

- The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as "\_\_\_\_".
- If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession, it is locked and the FOMA terminal cannot be used. (The remaining number of times you can enter appears on the display.)

When you enter the correct PIN1 code/PIN2 code, the remaining number of times you can enter will return to three times.

- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PIN1/PIN2 Code Entry display.

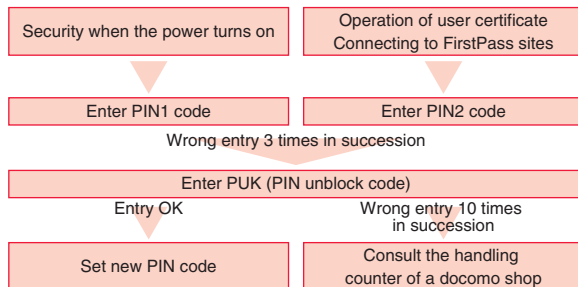


For PIN1 code

## PUK (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK (PIN unblock code) is the eight-digit number for releasing the PIN1 code and PIN2 code lock state. You cannot change this code by yourself.

- If you enter a wrong PUK (PIN unblock code) 10 times in succession, the UIM is locked.



<Change Security Code>



## Changing Terminal Security Code

Change the default for the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions to your own four- to eight-digit code so that you can make full use of the FOMA terminal. Make sure you take a note of the security code you have changed just in case you forget it.

- 1 **MENU** ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Change security code** ▶ **Enter the current Terminal Security Code.**

- If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".

- 2 **Enter a new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits)** ▶ **YES**

<UIM Setting>

## Setting PIN Code

### PIN1 Code Entry Set


You can set the FOMA terminal not to work unless you enter your PIN1 code when turning on the power.

- 1 **MENU** ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **UIM setting** ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **PIN1 code entry set** ▶ **ON or OFF** ▶ **Enter the PIN1 code.**

- See page 124 for the PIN1 code.

## Change PIN1 Code/Change PIN2 Code

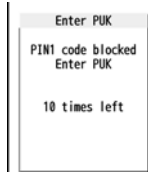
You need to have set “PIN1 code entry set” to “ON” to change the PIN1 code.

-  **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **UIM setting**  
 ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**  
 ▶ **Change PIN1 code or Change PIN2 code**  
 ▶ **Enter the current PIN1 code/PIN2 code.**
  - See page 124 for the PIN1 code/PIN2 code.
- Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).**
  - The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as “\_”.
- Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.**

## Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession on the display requiring its entry, it is locked and the FOMA terminal cannot be used. In this case, release the PIN1 code/PIN2 code lock and set a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

- Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code) (eight digits).**
  - The entered unblock code is displayed as “\_”.
  - You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PUK Entry display.
- Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).**
  - The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as “\_”.



- Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.**

<Lock All>

## Restricting Others from Using







If you set Lock All, you can do no operations other than answering calls and turning on/off the power.

-  **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Lock all**  
 ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

“” and “Lock all” appear and Lock All is set.

- To release Lock All, enter your Terminal Security Code from the Stand-by display. Even if you turn off the power, Lock All will not be released.

### Information

- You cannot make calls during Lock All. However, you can make emergency calls at 110/119/118. Select “YES” from the confirmation display for dialing.
- You can receive calls, but the callers’ data such as their names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. Further, the default ring tone sounds.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Lock All.
- If you fail to release Lock All five times in succession, the power to the FOMA terminal turns off. However, you can turn it on again.
- You can receive mail messages or Messages R/F during Lock All; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail messages and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as “”, “”, or “” appear after Lock All is released.
- During Lock All, the notification icons, desktop icons, and schedule events are not displayed on the desktop except “”, “”, and “”. When Lock All is released, they are displayed.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed during Lock All.
- The default Wake-up display appears during Lock All even when an i-motion file has been set for the Wake-up display.
- Even if you set Lock All, IC Card Lock is not activated.



## Using Omakase Lock

When you have lost your FOMA terminal or in other cases, you can lock your personal data (such as Phonebook entries) and the IC Card function of Osaifu-Keitai by contacting DOCOMO. Omakase Lock protects your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. Also, if Omakase Lock cannot be set at subscription but the communication to your FOMA terminal becomes available within one year, the lock will be automatically set. However, if you cancel or halt the line contract, change your phone number, or have your new UIM issued (only when you specify a phone number to lock it) at the loss of the UIM, etc., the lock will not be automatically set even within one year.

To release the lock, contact DOCOMO by phone, etc.

※ If you are a member of the DOCOMO Premium Club, you can use this service as often as you need without handling charge. If you are not, the service is available on chargeable basis. (However, you are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the line or during suspension.) Further, if you have signed up for Keitai Anshin Pack (Mobile Phone Security Package), you can use Omakase Lock within the flat-rate fee of Keitai Anshin Pack (Mobile Phone Security Package).

※ Even during Omakase Lock, your FOMA terminal corresponds to the location provision request of GPS function if "Location request set." is set for permission.

### ■ Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock

☎ 0120-524-360 Business hours: 24 hours

※ You can set/release also from My docomo site via a personal computer or other devices.

● For details on Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## When Omakase Lock is set

"Omakase lock" is displayed on the Stand-by display.

- During Omakase Lock, all the key operations are locked and respective functions (including IC card functions) are disabled, except for answering voice calls/videophone calls, putting them on answer-hold (On Hold), turning on/off the power, adjusting the earpiece volume and adjusting the ring volume.
- You can receive voice calls and videophone calls (except PushTalk calls), but the callers' data such as names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. In addition, the ring image and ring tone are reset to the default. When you release Omakase Lock, the former settings return.
- Mail messages received during Omakase Lock are held at the i-mode Center.
- You can turn on/off the power, however, Omakase Lock is not released by turning off the power.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Omakase Lock.
- Note that neither the UIM nor the microSD card is locked.

## Information

- Even while another function is working, Omakase Lock applies after finishing that function.
- Omakase Lock can be set even when another lock function is set. However, if you have set Public mode (Drive mode) before setting Omakase Lock, you cannot receive voice calls and videophone calls.
- Omakase Lock cannot be set/released when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, turned off, or used overseas. Besides Omakase Lock might not be set depending on your use, etc.
- When you have signed up for Dual Network Service and are using the mova service, Omakase Lock cannot be set.
- Even when the contractor and the user of the FOMA terminal differ, the FOMA terminal will be locked if the contractor offers to DOCOMO.
- You can release Omakase Lock only when the UIM of the same phone number at locking is inserted in your FOMA terminal. If you cannot release it, contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

## &lt;Self Mode&gt;

## Using Self Mode

You can disable all phone calls and communication functions. During Self Mode, the caller hears the guidance to the effect that radio waves do not reach or the power is turned off. If you use DOCOMO Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use these services in the same way as when the FOMA terminal is turned off.

1  **Set./Service**  **Lock/Security**  **Self mode**  **YES**  
 **OK**

"self" appears and Self Mode is set.

- To release Self Mode, perform the same operation.

## Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even during Self Mode. In this case, Self Mode is released.
- You cannot receive mail messages, Area Mail messages, or Messages R/F during Self Mode.
- Even if a call comes in during Self Mode, the icons notifying you of "Missed call" or presence of Voice Mail messages do not appear after releasing Self Mode.

## &lt;Personal Data Lock&gt;

## Hiding Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events

Including the functions which use personal information, you can set the following functions not to be used.

- |                              |                       |   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| · Desktop                    | · Chat group          | · Melody  |
| · Record message             | · i-mode              | · microSD card  |
| · Play/Erase msg.            | · Full Browser        | · Infrared communication                                  |
| · Select image               | · Bookmark            | · iC communication  |
| · Remote monitoring          | · i-Channel           | · Voice recorder  |
| · PushTalk phonebook         | · i-concier           | · PDF viewer  |
| · Add to phonebook           | · Camera              | · Document viewer   |
| · Group setting              | · Bar code reader     | · Alarm   |
| · Search phonebook           | · 1Seg                | · Schedule  |
| · No. of phonebook           | · Music&Video Channel | · ToDo  |
| · Phonebook settings         | · MUSIC               | · Alarm setting   |
| · Voice dial                 | · MUSIC player        | · Own number  |
| · Voice announcement         | · i-oppli             | · Voice memo  |
| · Kisekae Tool               | · i-Widget            | · Movie memo  |
| · Machi-chara                | · IC card content     | · Text memo   |
| · Feel * Mail image playback | · ToruCa              | · UIM operation   |
| · Restrictions               | · GPS function        | · "Number setting" and "Select ring tone" of Multi number |
| · Reject unknown             | · Still image         | · Data transfer   |
| · Reset settings             | · i-motion file       |   |
| · Initialize                 | · Movie file          |   |
| · Mail                       | · Video               |   |
| · Mail group                 | · Chara-den           |   |

## Setting/releasing Personal Data Lock

- 1 **MENU** ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Personal data lock**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**  
▶ **Activate/Deactivate**

"P<sub>On</sub>" appears and Personal Data Lock is set.

- You can set Personal Data Lock also by pressing **6** for at least one second from the Stand-by display.
- To release Personal Data Lock, perform the same operation. When Timer Lock ON At Close is set and Lock OFF At Open is activated, the display for releasing Personal Data Lock appears also by opening the FOMA terminal.  
When you set "PIM/IC security mode" to "Face reader", follow the operation of "Use Face Reader to Release Lock" on page 133.  
When you set to "Double security", enter your Terminal Security Code after the operation on the page 133.

## To temporarily release Personal Data Lock

When you select a function which cannot be used during Personal Data Lock, the display for entering your Terminal Security Code appears depending on the function. When you enter your Terminal Security Code, "P<sub>On</sub>" is cleared and you can temporarily use the function.

- When you show the Stand-by display while no menu function is activated, Personal Data Lock is set again.

### Information

- During Personal Data Lock, some notification icons and desktop icons such as "Record message", "Phone number", "URL" and "Mail address" do not appear, however, they reappear when you release Personal Data Lock.
- During Personal Data Lock, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party if you send the substitute image during a videophone call.
- If you set "Lock all" during Personal Data Lock, "P<sub>On</sub>" is cleared and "F" appears instead.
- You cannot set Personal Data Lock while "Reject unknown" is set.

## Setting Performance During Personal Data Lock

Even during Personal Data Lock, you can release the lock for some functions such as a notice of alarm and mail receiving.

- 1 **MENU** ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Personal data lock**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **Customize**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

### Alarm tone

Alarm	▶ Accept or Not accept
Schedule alarm	▶ Accept or Not accept
ToDo alarm	▶ Accept or Not accept
TV timer	▶ Accept or Not accept
Timer recording	▶ Accept or Not accept

### Incoming call act


Mail receiving	▶ Accept or Not accept
Information receiving	▶ Accept or Not accept
Phonebook available	You can set whether to refer to the Phonebook for an incoming call. ▶ Accept or Not accept

### Display/Tone

Display setting	You can set whether to activate the setting contents for "Display setting". ▶ Accept or Not accept
Select ring tone	You can set whether to activate the setting contents for "Select ring tone". ▶ Accept or Not accept
i-Channel ticker	▶ Accept or Not accept

**Information**

## &lt;Mail receiving&gt;

- When "Not accept" is set, you can automatically receive Messages R/F, i-mode mail messages, chat mail messages, and SMS messages during Personal Data Lock; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display does not appear. Further, the receiving operation such as ringing/vibration does not work, so you are not notified of receiving. The icons such as "📧", "📧", or "📧" appear after Personal Data Lock is released.
- When "Not accept" is set, you cannot check a missed call or new mail during Personal Data Lock, by pressing  with the FOMA terminal closed.


## &lt;Display setting&gt;

- Whether to validate/invalidate the setting contents for "Stand-by display" and "Stand-by disp. Wide" of "2in1 setting" is also set.

## &lt;Lock Setting&gt;

**Setting a Variety of Locks****Timer Lock ON At Close**

You can set "Timer lock ON at close" that automatically activates Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock when the specified time elapses after closing your FOMA terminal.

- 1  **Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting**
  - ▶ **Timer lock ON at close**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **Personal data lock or IC card lock**
  - ▶ **Select an elapse time.**


If you set to other than "OFF", "📞" appears and then Timer Lock ON At Close is set. The display asking whether to activate "Lock OFF at open" also appears.

**Information**

- When the Stand-by display is not shown, or when another function is working with the Stand-by display shown, the lock is not activated even after the specified time elapses. However, when another function ends after closing the FOMA terminal, the lock is activated after the specified time elapses.
- When "Reject unknown" is set, Personal Data Lock is not activated even after the specified time elapses.
- When a call or mail message comes in after closing the FOMA terminal, or when you open it, the elapsed time counter returns to 0 seconds.
- When this function is activated, the lock is temporarily released if you release each lock. However, it is re-locked when the specified time elapses after closing the FOMA terminal.
- If you set "Key lock" during Timer Lock ON At Close, "📞" is cleared and "📞" appears instead.

**Lock OFF at open**

You can set to show the display for releasing each lock for when you open the FOMA terminal after Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock is set by "Timer lock ON at close".


- 1  **Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting**
  - ▶ **Lock OFF at open ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **Personal data lock or IC card lock ▶ ON or OFF**

**Information**

- When you open the FOMA terminal in Horizontal Open Style while "Work with style" is set to other than "OFF", the Lock Release display does not appear.

## PIM/IC Security Mode

You can set the way to release Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock.

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Lock/Security** ► **Lock setting**
  - **PIM/IC security mode**
  - **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - **Select a security mode.**

**Security code** . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock. The setting is completed.

**Face reader** . . . . . Use Face Reader authentication to release the lock.

**Double security** . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock after using Face Reader authentication. The setting is completed.

## 2 YES

### Information

- You cannot change PIM/IC Security Mode when the face data files stored by Face Reader Setting are fewer than three, or during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.

## <Face Reader Setting>

### Using Face Reader

You can store your face data files in Face Reader and use it for authentication when releasing IC Card Lock or Personal Data Lock. To use Face Reader, you need to store three or more face data files and set “PIM/IC security mode” to either “Face reader” or “Double security”.

#### ■ Notes on using Face Reader

- The dirty camera might result in erroneous operation. Use this function after wiping it with a soft cloth to clean the dirt off.
- In environment where the face is exposed to strong light and the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face, the face will not be recognized easily. In this case, storing might become difficult or the recognition rate (the rate of correct identification) might be lowered. Adjust so that the face is exposed to even light.
- The face might not be recognized normally when its entire part is exposed to the light and becomes white.
- Storing the face might become difficult or the recognition rate might be lowered when the face conditions are as described below:
  - When the features of the face (eyes, mouth, nose, and eyebrows, etc.) are hard to see as they are covered by hair, glasses, or a mask
  - When the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face such as when you are under the light in a dark place
- The recognition rate might rise by reacting in accordance with the face conditions such as by raising the hair so that the eyes, nose, mouth, and eyebrows are clearly visible (taking the glasses and mask off) or moving to a place where the face is exposed to even light. The recognition rate rises also by storing the face data file additionally.
- The face authentication technology does not completely guarantee that you are recognized as yourself. Accordingly, we are not at all responsible for damages resulting from the use of this product by a third party or when the damages are caused by what you could not use the function because of wrong authentication by Face Reader.

## Store

To use Face Reader, store 3 or more face data files. You can store up to 10 face data files.

- 1 **Set./Service**  
**Lock/Security**  
**Lock setting**  
**Face reader setting**  
**Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **Store**  
**OK**

Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. You can prevent the failure in authenticating the face data file, which results from the difference in the position of the face at storing and authenticating the data.

When your face is recognized, the recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off your eyes and mouth, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.

- The number of face data files is displayed by the bar on the Face Data Reading display.

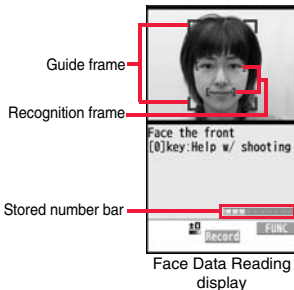
- 2 Press **(Record)**.

The face data file is shot.

- 3 Press **(Store)**.

The face data file you have shot is stored. Repeat step 2 through step 3 to store three or more face data files.

- When the third face data file is stored, the message appears telling that Face Reader can be more easily used by adding face data file.
- When you press **(CLR)**, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the face data file.
- If you try to store the face data file in the same environment, you might not be able to store it. Change the direction of the face or the place for shooting.



## Information

- At shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers and the shutter tone sounds regardless of the Manner Mode setting. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.

## Function Menu of the Face Data Reading Display

### Brightness

At Face reader start-up  
±0

You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).

- ▶ **Select a brightness level.**

- You can adjust brightness also by pressing **(3)** from the Face Data Reading display.

### Help

You can check the cautions for shooting.

- You can show Help also by pressing **(O)** from the Face Data Reading display.

## Delete Stored Images

You can reset all the face data files stored in Face Reader.

- 1 **Set./Service** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Lock setting**  
**Face reader setting**  
**Enter your Terminal Security Code**  
**Delete stored images** ▶ **YES**


## Information


- You cannot reset the face data files during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.
- When you reset the face data files, "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Security code".

## Recognition-failed Image

The images not judged as yourself by Face Reader recognition operation are saved. You can use these images to specify who tried to illegally access your data.

The image is overwritten every time recognition-failed image is made.

- 1  **Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting**
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Recog. failed image ▶ Select an image.

- To delete the recognition-failed images, press  ( **FUNC** ), select "Delete this", and then select "YES".

## Face Reader Security

You can set Face Reader to additionally recognize blinking of the eyes.


- 1  **Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting**
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Face reader security ▶ Normal or High

**Normal** . . . Does not recognize blinking of the eyes.

**High** . . . . Recognizes blinking of the eyes.

## Change Security Code

You can set a security code to be entered instead of the Face Reader authentication for when "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".

- 1  **Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting**
  - ▶ Face reader setting
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ Change security code
  - ▶ Enter the current Face Reader Security Code.

- If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".

## 2 Enter a new Face Reader Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

### Use Face Reader to Release Lock

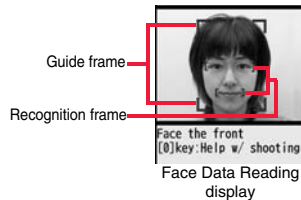
When "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader", use Face Reader to release the lock instead of using your Terminal Security Code.


When it is set to "Double security", use Face Reader for authentication and then enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock.

- 1 **Display for releasing Personal Data Lock/IC Card Lock**
  - ▶ Match the face to the guide frame and press



Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. The recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed, and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.



- Perform the operation for authentication with the same facial expression as when you stored the face data file.
- Press  and enter your Face Reader Security Code; then you can operate to authenticate instead of using Face Reader.  
For the Face Reader Security Code, see page 133.

### If you failed to be authenticated

When additional storing of the face data file is possible, select "OK" to show the confirmation display asking whether to store additional face data file. Select "YES", enter your Terminal Security Code; then you can store additional face data file. When you cannot store any more face data files, select "OK" to show the Face Data Reading display. If the shot face is judged as another person, a shutter tone sounds and the recognition-failed image is saved. Select "OK" to show the Face Data Reading display. Try authentication using Face Reader again.

- When 10 face data files are stored and a new data file is added, the oldest data file is overwritten.

### When “Face reader security” is set to “High”

After you are successfully authenticated by Face Reader, your eye blinking is checked. Repeat blinking your eyes slowly.

When the detection of eye blinking fails, the authentication also fails.

- Even in the same environment as that for the authentication by Face Reader, the detection of eye blinking may fail. Change the place or the direction of your face, and then operate.

### <Keypad Dial Lock>

## Locking Keypad Dial

You can lock dialing from the numeric keys. When using the FOMA terminal for business purposes, private use of the FOMA terminal can be prevented.

#### ■ Unavailable operations

- Dialing from the numeric keys
- Initial setting
- Phonebook (storing, editing, deleting, copying from the microSD card, backing up/restoring by the microSD card, sending/receiving using Infrared rays, sending/receiving using iC communication, and sending/receiving using Bluetooth communication)
- Phone To/AV Phone To function
- Mail To function

#### ■ Available operations

- Dialing from the Phonebook or Voice Dial
- Dialing from Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, or Received Address (Only phone numbers stored in the Phonebook)

- 1  **▶ Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Keypad dial lock**  
**▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

“D” is displayed and Keypad Dial Lock is set.

- To release Keypad Dial Lock, perform the same operation.

#### Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 using numeric keys even during Keypad Dial Lock.

#### Information


- If you set Keypad Dial Lock, you can send mail only when the address is called up from the Phonebook and when the address stored in the Phonebook is called up from Sent Address or Received Address.

### <Key Lock>

## Restricting Key Operation






You can disable the keys except .

- 1 Press and hold  for at least one second.

“” appears and Key Lock is set.

- To release Key Lock, perform the same operation.

#### Information

- You cannot turn off the FOMA terminal during Key Lock. You cannot switch display/nondisplay of icons and other indications by pressing  from the Stand-by display.
- Even during Key Lock, you can answer an incoming call by pressing  and an incoming PushTalk call by pressing . You can get the talker’s right by pressing  during the PushTalk communication.
- Even during Key Lock, Quick Record Message works when you press and hold  for at least one second while a voice call or videophone call is arriving.
- You can operate an earphone/microphone (option) and Bluetooth devices regardless of the setting of this function.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Key Lock.


### <Side Keys Guard>

## Restricting Side Key Operation

You can disable the side keys , , , and  for when the FOMA terminal is closed.

You can prevent operation errors in a bag.







- 1  **▶  (for at least one second)**

“” appears and “Side keys guard” is set to “ON”.

- To set to “OFF”, perform the same operation.



## Information

- Even when “Side keys guard” is set to “ON”, you can operate by pressing , , , or  while the camera is activated. You can answer an incoming PushTalk call by pressing , and can get the talker’s right by pressing  during the PushTalk communication.

<Record Display Set>

## Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls

- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Incoming call** ► **Record display set**  
► **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ► **Select an item.**

- Received calls** . . . . . Sets whether to display Received Calls and Received Address.
- Redial/Dialed calls** . . . . . Sets whether to display Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address.

## 2 ON or OFF

- When you set “Received calls” to “OFF”, you cannot play back record messages of voice calls, either.

<Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only>


## Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes

In ordinary mode, you cannot access/refer to Phonebook entries or schedule events stored as secret data. In Secret Mode, you can select whether to store the stored/edited Phonebook entries/schedule events as secret data or as ordinary data. The Phonebook entries/schedule events you have stored/edited in Secret Data Only are stored as secret data. You can access/refer to all the data files in Secret Mode but can access/refer to only the secret data files in Secret Data Only.




## Activate Secret Mode

## Activate Secret Data Only



- 1  ► **Set./Service** ► **Lock/Security**  
► **Secret mode or Secret data only**  
► **Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

When “Secret mode” is selected, “ $S_{om}$ ” appears and Secret Mode is activated. When “Secret data only” is selected, “ $S_{om}$ ” blinks, the number of stored secret data items is displayed, and then Secret Data Only is activated.

- Secret mode is activated also by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the Stand-by display and entering your Terminal Security Code.
- If you call up a Phonebook entry or schedule event in Secret Mode, “ $S_{om}$ ” stays lit for ordinary data and “ $S_{om}$ ” blinks for secret data.
- To deactivate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, perform the same operation, or press and hold  (for at least one second) or press  from the Stand-by display.

## To change secret data to an ordinary Phonebook entry or schedule event

In Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, select “Release secret” from the Function menu of the Phonebook entry or schedule event to be released.

## Information

- Only the Phonebook entries in the FOMA terminal can be stored as secret data.
- When you make a call to the party stored as secret data, his/her name is not displayed but the phone number is displayed on the Dialing/Talking display.
- If you call up a secret entry to make a call or send mail, the record is not stored in “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address”.
- If you simultaneously activate “Lock all” and “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”, deactivating “Lock all” deactivates “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”.

&lt;Secret Mail Display&gt;

## Applying Secret for Mail in Mailbox

You can set whether to display the mail (secret mail) message from the sender or to the destination address that matches secret data in the Phonebook.

- 1  ▶ Mail settings ▶ Secret mail display  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- Even when "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", you can check secret mail in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret address is included in addresses of simultaneous mail, that mail message is not displayed.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret member is included in chat members, chat mail messages of all chat members are not displayed.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", Area Mail messages are not displayed in Secret Data Only.

&lt;Mail Security&gt;

## Setting not to Display Mail in Mailbox without Permission

You can set the security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft of the Mail menu.

You need to enter your Terminal Security Code to display the mail messages in security-activated boxes.

- 1  ▶ Mail settings ▶ Mail security  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ Put a check mark for boxes to be set ▶  (Finish)

- When security is set, "🔒" is added to the set box in the Mail menu.





### Information

- If you set security for the Outbox and Inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address and Received Address.

&lt;Restrictions&gt;

## Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

### Restrict Dialing

You can disable making voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls to phone numbers other than specified ones. When you use the FOMA terminal for business use, this function is useful for preventing the private use. Call up the specified Phonebook entry and press  or  (Dial) to make a voice call. (Press  (V phone) to make a videophone call, and press  to make a PushTalk call.) You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

### Call Rejection

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you do not want to receive to be rejected. The caller hears a busy tone. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

### Call Acceptance

You can receive voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls only from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you want to accept to be connected. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" simultaneously.

## Restrict Dialing/Call Rejection/Call Acceptance

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display ▶ ( )

#### ▶ Restrictions

#### ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

**Restrict dialing** . . . You can dial the specified phone numbers only.





**Call rejection** . . . . You can reject calls from the specified phone numbers.

**Call acceptance** . . . You can accept calls from the specified phone numbers only.

**Call forwarding** . . . See page 443.

**Voice mail** . . . . . See page 440.

The set item is indicated by "★".

- When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, press  on the detailed display to highlight the phone number you will set Restrictions for.
- To set Restrict Dialing for multiple phone numbers, first set Restrict Dialing and press  to return to the detailed Phonebook display;  to highlight the phone number to be set for Restrict Dialing and continue the operation.  
If you press  to return to the Stand-by display, additional settings cannot be done. To do additional settings, release Restrict Dialing for the set phone number and activate Restrict Dialing again, including the released phone number.
- To release Restrictions, perform the same operation.

### Information



- You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored as secret data, and in the UIM Phonebook.
- If you activate "Personal data lock" while "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" is set, you can accept all incoming calls.
- You cannot operate the following while "Restrict dialing" is set:
  - Calling up/Referring to phone numbers other than specified
  - Keypad dial (except for the calls to the specified phone numbers)
  - Dialing from Received Calls (except for the calls from the specified phone numbers)
  - Storing/Editing/Deleting Phonebook entries, copying Phonebook entries from the microSD card, backing up/restoring by the microSD card, and copying Phonebook entries to the UIM
- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even if you set "Restrict dialing".

### Information

- When a call comes in from the phone number set with "Call rejection", or from other than the phone number set with "Call acceptance", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail messages regardless of the setting of "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance".

## Check/Release Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

### 1 ▶ Phonebook ▶ Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

- The set item is indicated by "★".
- To release all the Phonebook entries set with Restrictions, press  (  ), select "Release", and then select "YES".

### 2 Select a Phonebook entry.

The phone number set with Restrictions is displayed.

- To release "Restrictions" per phone number, select the phone number you want to release and select "YES".

&lt;Call Setting without ID&gt;



## Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID

You can set whether to receive (accept) or not to receive (reject) a voice call, videophone call, and PushTalk call according to the reason for no caller ID. There are three reasons; "Unavailable", "PublicPhone", and "User unset".

### 1 Set./Service > Lock/Security > Call setting w/o ID > Enter your Terminal Security Code > Select an item.

**Unavailable** . . . . Calls from the other party who cannot notify his/her phone number such as calls from overseas or from land-line phones via call forwarding services.

(However, the caller ID might be notified depending on the telephone companies the calls go through.)

**PublicPhone** . . . . Calls from public phones, etc.

**User unset** . . . . . When the caller has set the caller ID not to be notified.

### 2 Accept or Reject

- If you select "Accept", go to step 2 on page 104 to select a ring tone. If you select "Same as ring tone", the ring tone will be the one selected in "Phone" of "Select ring tone".

#### Information

- If you select "Reject", the ring tone does not sound even if a call comes in, the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail messages regardless of this setting.

&lt;Ring Time&gt;



## Delaying Start of Ringing Operation

### 1 Set./Service > Incoming call > Ring time > Do the following operations.

#### Ring start time

You can set the FOMA terminal not to start ringing operation immediately for when a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call comes in from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is effective as a countermeasure for blocking nuisance calls such as one ring phone scam (one-giri).

- ▶ **ON or OFF** ▶ Enter a start time (seconds).
- Enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.

#### Missed calls display

You can set whether to display the call disconnected within the time specified for "Ring start time" in Received Calls.

- ▶ **Display or Not display**

#### Information

- When a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the FOMA terminal starts ringing as soon as the call comes in even if "186"/"184" is added to the phone number. However, during Personal Data Lock (except for when you set "Phonebook available" to "Accept" for "Customize"), or for the call from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, ringing starts according to the setting for this function.
- If the ring start time is longer than the ring time for Record Message Setting, the ringing operations do not start, activating Record Message instead. To activate Record Message after starting the ringing operations, set the longer ring time for Record Message Setting than the ring start time. The same applies to the ring time for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto Answer Setting.

<Reject Unknown>

## Rejecting Incoming Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

**1**  **▶ Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Reject unknown**  
**▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Accept or Reject**

### Information

- If a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If you simultaneously activate "Reject unknown" and "Call acceptance" of "Restrictions", the latter has priority.
- When a call comes in from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook while you set this function to "Reject", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record, and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Even when this function is set to "Reject", the FOMA terminal follows the setting of "Call setting w/o ID" if each setting of "Call setting w/o ID" is set to "Accept".
- You can receive SMS and i-mode mail messages regardless of this setting.
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" during Personal Data Lock.
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" to "Reject" while "Ring start time" of "Ring time" is set to "ON".

<Data Security Service>


## Using Data Security Service

This service enables you to save the Phonebook, images, mail messages, ToruCa files, and schedule events (hereafter, "saved data files") in your FOMA terminal to the DOCOMO's Data Storage Center and to restore them when you unexpectedly lose your handset or change models. Further, you can notify the concerned parties of your mail address change at a time. You are not charged a packet communication fee for sending the multi-address notice mail. If you have a personal computer (My docomo), you can use this service more conveniently.

- For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for Data Security Service).

### Save to Data Storage Center

**1** **Display of the data file to be saved**  **(FUNC)**  
**▶ Move/copy ▶ Connect to Center or Store in Center**  
**▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES**

- You do not need to select "Move/copy" depending on the function.
- When you operate from the Inbox list, Outbox list, Draft list, or Still Image list, put a check mark for the data files to be saved and press  **(Finish)**. You can select up to 10 data files.

### Information


- You cannot save the data files stored on the UIM or microSD card.
- You cannot save the files attached to mail.
- You cannot save the following images:
  - Images whose sizes exceed 100 Kbytes
  - Images whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited
  - Images other than in JPEG or GIF format

## Restoring to your FOMA terminal

Note that if you delete Phonebook entries from your FOMA terminal and save the Phonebook to the Data Storage Center, the Phonebook entries on the Data Storage Center are also deleted. When you restore the Phonebook from the Data Storage Center to your FOMA terminal, do the following operations.

### 1 English ▶ My Menu

- ▶ 電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)
- ▶ お預かりセンター (Data Storage Center)
- ▶ Enter your i-mode password.

- When you have subscribed to i-concier, operate  English ▶ My Menu
- ▶ お預かり / i コンシェル (Data Storage/i-concier)
- ▶ お預かりデータ確認 (Check saved data) ▶ Enter your i-mode password.

### 2 Select “ケータイヘダウンロード (Download to mobile phone)” from the Phonebook on the Data Storage Center ▶ OK

- Download starts in about 15 seconds. Wait for a while with the Stand-by display shown.



#### Information

- When the Phonebook entries saved to the Data Storage Center exceeds the number of Phonebook entries storable in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook, the excess entries cannot be updated.

## Auto-update of the Phonebook

On the site of the Data Storage Center, you can set so as to periodically update and save the Phonebook entries in your FOMA terminal to the Data Storage Center.

#### Information

- The data files are not automatically updated while another function is working at the time of Auto-update.
- If the data files cannot be updated, the notification icon of “ Update” (Data Sec. Service UD) appears on the desktop. Select “ Update” to show the update display.

## Setting Data Security Service

- 1  LifeKit ▶ Data Security Service
- ▶ Do the following operations.

**Connect to Center** See page 139.

**Exchanging history** You can display the records of communication with the Data Storage Center.

- ▶ Select a record.
- Select a communication completion time in the list to switch to the detailed display.

**PB image sending** You can set whether to save images set for the Phonebook entries to the Data Storage Center.

- ▶ ON or OFF

#### Information

<Exchanging history>

- Up to 30 records are saved. When more than 30 records are saved, the older records are overwritten.

<PB image sending>

- You cannot save the images whose output from FOMA terminal is prohibited.

## Using Data Security Service with i-concier

### 自動お預かり / 更新設定 (Automatic saving/Update settings)

You can configure settings for Data Security Service.

- 1  i-concier ▶  (MENU) ▶ 設定 (Settings)
- ▶ 自動お預かり / 更新設定 (Automatic saving/Update settings) ▶ Follow the instructions on the display.

### お預かりデータ確認 (Check saved data)

You can check the data files at the Data Storage Center.

- 1  i-concier ▶  (MENU) ▶ 設定 (Settings)
- ▶ お預かりデータ確認 (Check saved data)
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the display.

## お預かりデータ更新 (Update stored data)

You can update the data files at the Data Storage Center and in the FOMA terminal.

- 1  **i-concier**  (MENU) **設定 (Settings)**  
▶ **お預かりデータ更新 (Update stored data)**  
▶ **Put a check mark for data files to be updated**  
▶  (Finish) ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**  
▶ **YES**

## お預かり通信履歴 (Communication records of saving)

You can show the records of communication with the Data Storage Center.

- 1  **i-concier**  (MENU) **設定 (Settings)**  
▶ **お預かり通信履歴 (Communication records of saving)**  
▶ **Select a record.**
  - Select a communication completion time from the list to show the detailed display.

## <Reset Settings>


### Resetting Function Settings

MENU 2 3

You can reset the items indicated by  of "Function List" to their default. (See page 472)

- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Other settings** ▶ **Reset settings**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **YES**

### Information

- You cannot execute "Reset settings" while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.
- You cannot execute "Reset settings" during IC Card Lock while "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".
- After you execute "Reset settings", the i-Channel tickers are not displayed. Then, when the information is automatically updated or you press  to receive the latest information, the tickers automatically flow.

## <Initialize>

### Deleting Saved Data All at Once

You can delete the saved data and reset the setting contents of each function to the default.

See "Function List" on page 472 for the setting at purchase.

- The pre-installed data files are not deleted.
- All the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppli programs except "ID 設定アプリ (ID appli)" are deleted. However, they might not be deleted depending on your usage state.
- The data files stored in the pre-installed i-oppli programs are deleted. However, the data files stored in Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppli programs that have not been deleted are not deleted.
- The protected data files are also deleted.
- All the stored data files are deleted regardless of the mode of 2in1.
- Even if you have deleted the pre-installed data files, they are restored when you execute "Initialize". However, if you delete the pre-installed i-oppli programs, they are not restored.
- Charge the battery full before initializing the FOMA terminal. When the battery level is not enough, you may not be able to initialize the FOMA terminal.
- During initialization, never turn off the power of the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot use other functions during initialization. Also, you cannot receive calls or mail messages.


- 1  **Set./Service** ▶ **Other settings** ▶ **Initialize**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **YES** ▶ **YES**

When initializing ends, the power automatically turns off and then turns on and the "Initial setting" display appears.

### Information

- You cannot execute "Initialize" while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.
- You cannot execute "Initialize" during IC Card Lock while "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".
- You cannot delete the data saved to, stored in, or set for the UIM or the microSD card.
- You cannot delete the setting of data communication set by a personal computer.

**Information**

- To restore the i-appli programs, download them from the "P-SQUARE" site. For downloading, you are charged an additional communication fee.
- After you execute "Initialize", the i-Channel tickers are not displayed. Then, when the information is automatically updated or you press  to receive the latest information, the tickers automatically flow.
- After you initialize the FOMA terminal, you cannot automatically obtain Music&Video Channel programs. Access the Setting Confirmation display from the Music&Video Channel menu to reflect the program setting.
- Initialization may take a while if the data to be deleted is bulky.

&lt;Remote Reset&gt;

**Resetting Data by Remote Control**



If you contract with the service of this function (Business mopera Anshin Manager), you can initialize the data files (memory within the handset/microSD card/UIM) of the target FOMA terminal by the offer from you (administrator).

**Inquiries****docomo Business Online**

From personal computers <http://www.docomo.biz> (in Japanese only)  
 ※ You may not be able to access due to system maintenance, etc.

**When Remote Reset launches**

The display appears telling that operation is disabled and the initialization starts.

- When Remote Reset launches, all the key operations are locked and you cannot operate the functions except for answering voice calls and answer-hold (On Hold). When the initialization starts, you cannot use all the functions.
- When Remote Reset launches while the phone is ringing or during a call, all the key operations except for  and  are locked. When initialization starts, ringing or the call automatically finishes.

**Information**

- "Set time" is not initialized.
- The microSD card might not be initialized when the FOMA terminal is connected to a personal computer.

**Other Security Settings**

Besides introduced in this chapter, the following functions/services for the Security Settings are available:

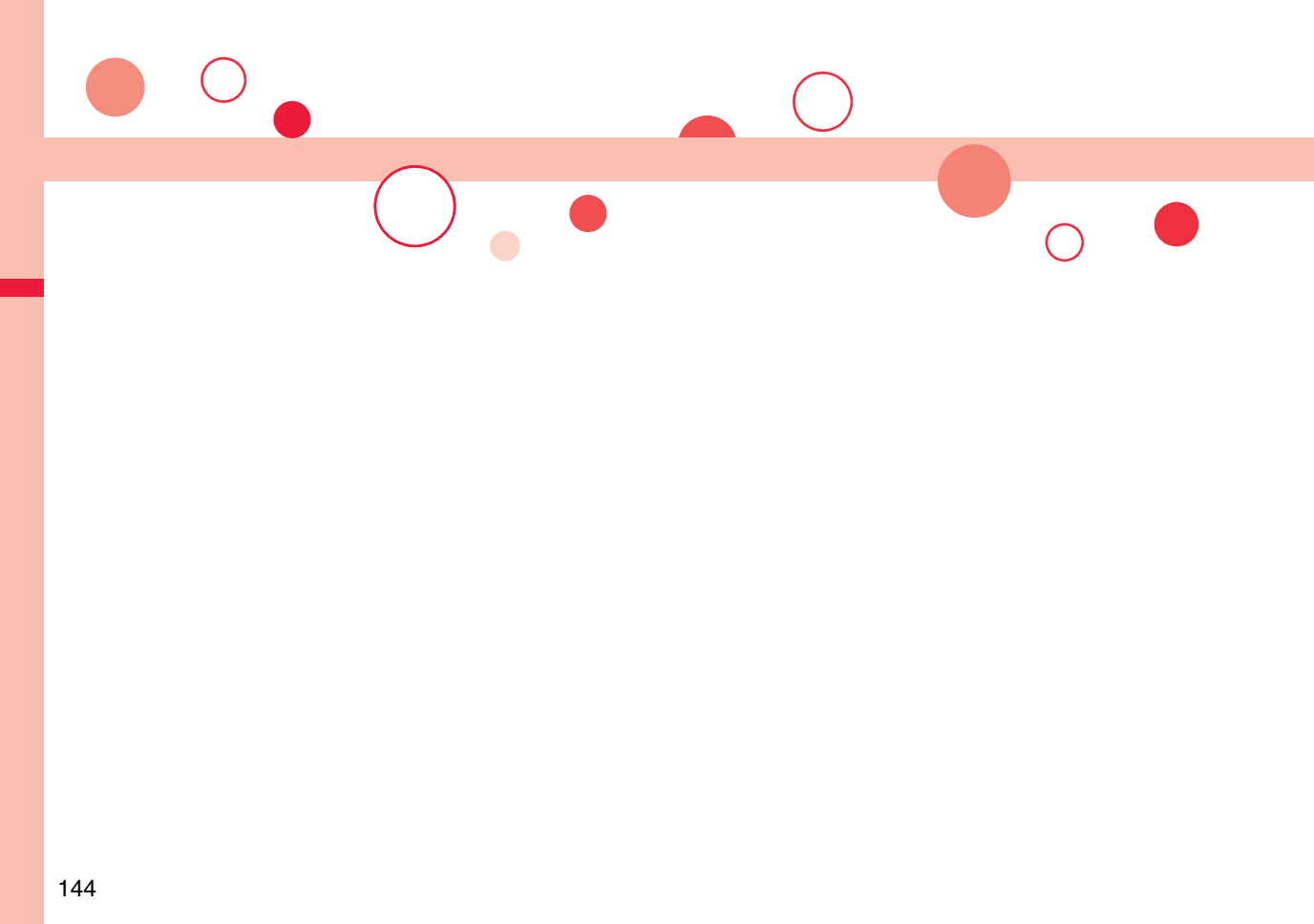
Functions/Service name	Purposes	Reference page
IC Card Lock	To protect the IC card function from being used illegally	318
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	To prevent crank calls or vicious sales calls from incoming	443
Caller ID Request	To prevent the incoming call that does not notify a caller ID	444
FirstPass	To ensure safe and reliable data communication by using electronic authentication services ※ Limited to FirstPass sites	217
Software Update	To update software programs in the FOMA terminal when necessary	523
Scanning Function	To protect the FOMA terminal from data liable to cause trouble	528
Receive Option	To receive necessary mail only from among the large volume of incoming mail	159



Functions/Service name	Purposes	Reference page
i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version"	
Change Mail Address		
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL) (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) (Kantan Mail Settings) (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders) (SMS Rejection Settings) (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail) (Confirm Settings)		
Suspend/reactivate Mail		
Limit Mail Size		
Keitai-Osagashi Service		
imadoco kantan search		

#### Information

- The priority order of functions simultaneously set to prevent nuisance calls is as follows: "Nuisance Call Blocking Service" → "Call rejection" → "Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID" → "Ring time".



i-mode Mail .....	146	<b>Configuring Mail Settings</b>	
<b>Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail</b>		Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder .....	<Auto-sort> 175
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail		Creating Mail Group .....	<Mail Group> 177
..... <Compose Message>	146	Setting Mail and Messages R/F .....	<Mail Settings> 178
Creating and Sending Deco-mail .....	149	<b>Using Message Services</b>	
Creating and Sending Decome-Anime .....	152	Receiving Messages R/F Automatically	
Using a Template to Create Deco-mail/ Decome-Anime		..... <Receive Message R/F>	180
..... <Template>	154	Reading Received Messages R/F .....	<Display Message R/F> 181
Attaching a File .....	<Attachments> 156	<b>Using Early Warning “Area Mail”</b>	
<b>Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail</b>		Early Warning “Area Mail” .....	183
Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically .....	<Mail Auto-receive> 158	Receiving Early Warning “Area Mail” .....	183
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively .....	<Receive Option> 159	Setting Early Warning “Area Mail”	
Checking New i-mode Mail .....	<Check New Messages> 159	..... <Early Warning “Area Mail” Settings>	184
Replying to Received i-mode Mail		<b>Using Chat Mail</b>	
..... <Reply> <Reply with Quote>	160	Using Chat Mail .....	<Chat Mail> 185
Forwarding Received i-mode Mail .....	<Forward> 160	Creating Chat Group .....	<Chat Group> 188
When i-mode Mail with Files Attached/Pasted is Received ...	161	<b>Using SMS</b>	
<b>Operating Mailbox</b>		Composing and Sending SMS .....	<Compose SMS> 189
Displaying Mail in Inbox/Outbox/Draft		Receiving SMS Automatically .....	<Receive SMS> 190
..... <Inbox> <Outbox> <Draft>	162	Checking New SMS .....	<Check New SMS> 191
How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display .....	164	Setting SMS .....	<SMS Settings> 191
Managing Mail Messages .....	168		
<b>Using Mail History</b>			
Displaying Sent/Received Mail Record			
..... <Sent Address> <Received Address>	173		

## i-mode Mail

Once you subscribe to i-mode, you can exchange e-mails over the Internet as well as among i-mode phones.

You can attach files (photos, moving picture files, etc.) within 2 Mbytes in total (up to 10 files) besides mail text. The i-mode mail also supports Deco-mail, so you can change the font color, font size, and background color of mail text. You can use the Deco-mail pictograms, so you can easily send expressive messages.

Further, it supports Decome-Anime of Flash movies with messages and images inserted.

- For details on i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

<Compose Message>





## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

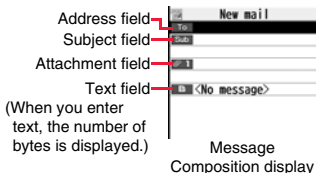
You can compose and send i-mode mail messages.

You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages to the Outbox.

See page 149 for creating a Deco-mail message.



- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can select your sender's address by "ChangeFromAddr A/B" (see page 450). "" instead of "" is displayed when no sender's address is set, and "" instead of "" is displayed when the sender's address is set for Address B.



## 2 Select the address field ▶ Select an item.

**Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.

**Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press



**Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press



**Mail group** . . . . . Select a mail group.

**Enter address** . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number.

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
- If the destination is an i-mode phone, you can send mail also by entering only the part preceding the "@" mark of a mail address.
- See page 147 for sending to multiple destination addresses.
- See page 148 for deleting an added address.

## 3 Select the subject field ▶ Enter a subject.

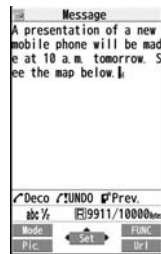
- You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.

## 4 Select the attachment field ▶ Select an item.

- See page 156 for how to select an attachment.

## 5 Select the text field ▶ Enter text.

- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters.
- See page 148 for pasting a header or signature.
- See page 430 for the Function menu while entering (editing) characters.



Message Entry display

## 6 Press (Send).

The animation display during transmission appears and the mail message is sent.

- To cancel sending midway, press  (Cancel) or press and hold  (for at least one second). However, the mail message might be sent depending on the timing.


### Information

- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be displayed correctly at the destination.
- If you send an i-mode mail message with a pictogram entered to another carrier's mobile phone, the pictogram is automatically converted into a similar pictogram at the receiving end. Depending on the model or function of the receiving end's mobile phone, however, the pictogram might not be correctly displayed or be converted into a character or "—" when no corresponding pictogram is found.
- When the sent mail messages stored in the FOMA terminal exceed the maximum number/size of storage, they are deleted from the oldest one. However, protected sent mail messages are not deleted.
- You cannot compose an i-mode mail message when sent mail messages in the Outbox are saved to the maximum number/size of storage and all of them are protected, when 20 draft mail messages are saved, or when the Draft is full. Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
- When you select "Compose message" from the Function menu such as when entering a phone number, the mail address is entered as a destination address if the phone number and mail address are stored in a Phonebook entry. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the Phonebook entry, the first mail address is entered.
- If you try to send the mail whose address is a phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
- When a destination phone number or mail address is stored in a Phonebook entry, the name stored in the Phonebook entry is displayed in the address field.
- You cannot send mail to the addresses that include a comma (,).
- You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields.
- If a Phonebook entry with a secret code is set as a destination address, the secret code will be automatically added at sending. Even if a secret code is set for the Phonebook entry, however, it will not be added and the i-mode mail message will be sent as ordinary one unless the destination address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".
- If you store the secret code and send mail to a mail address other than that of DOCOMO mobile phones, you might not receive the error message for unknown address.
- The recipients might not be able to receive the full length of the subject depending on their phones.
- You can send up to 2,000 full-pitch characters in text to the i-mode phone of the mova service.
- Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character, and a space is counted as one full-pitch or half-pitch character.

### Information

- The mail message you entered a Deco-mail pictogram becomes a Deco-mail message.

### Function Menu of the Message Composition Display

<b>Send</b>	You can send the mail message. Go to step 7 on page 147.
<b>Preview</b>	Check the address, subject, text and attachments before sending. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can send the mail message by pressing  (<b>Send</b>).</li> </ul>
<b>Save</b>	When composing or editing the mail, you can save it to the Draft.


### Operate receiver


#### Add receiver

You can add multiple addresses in the address field to send the same i-mode mail to multiple recipients simultaneously. You can send the same mail to up to five addresses at the same time.

#### ▶ Select an item.


**Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.


**Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  (**Select**).

**Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  (**Select**).

**Enter address** . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number.


- To consecutively add addresses, select <Not entered> and repeat the above operations.

- Press  (**FUNC**) and select "Delete receiver" to delete the selected mail address. Select "YES".

- Press  (**FUNC**) and select "Change rcv. type" to change the type of mail. (See page 148)

- Select an entered mail address on the Mail Composition display to show the Address list.

▶  (**Finish**)

<b>Delete receiver</b>	You can delete the selected address when there are multiple addresses. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Change rcv. type</b>	▶ <b>Select a receiving type.</b> <b>To</b> . . . . This is the direct destination address. "To" recipients are displayed at the receiving ends.※ <b>Cc</b> . . . . Specify to let parties know the mail contents in addition to the direct recipients. "Cc" recipients are displayed at the receiving ends.※ <b>Bcc</b> . . . . Specify to hide the recipients from others. "Bcc" recipients are not displayed at the receiving ends. ※ They might not be displayed depending on the mobile phone, device, or mail software of the receiving end.
<b>Operate att. file</b>	
<b>Activate camera</b>	You can shoot a still image or moving picture to attach to mail. ▶ <b>Select a shooting mode.</b> ● See page 234 and page 237 for how to shoot.
<b>Attach file</b>	See page 156.
<b>Delete att. file</b>	See page 157.
<b>Template</b>	
<b>Load template</b>	You can read in a Deco-mail template and create a Deco-mail message. ● When the text has already been entered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the text. ▶ <b>Select a template.</b> The contents of the template are entered into the text. ● While selecting a template, press  (Play) to check the contents of the template. ● See page 149 for creating a Deco-mail message.

<b>Save template</b>	You can save the Deco-mail message you are creating as a template. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● See page 210 when templates are stored to the maximum. ● See page 154 for how to check the stored template.
<b>Add header/sig.</b>	You can paste a header/signature at the beginning or ending of the text of the i-mode mail message. ▶ <b>Add header or Add signature</b> ● You need to store the header/signature beforehand. (See page 179) ● In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can select a signature to be pasted from "Address A" or "Address B".
<b>ChangeFromAddr A/B</b>	In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can select a sender's address. (See page 450)

### Information

#### <Operate receiver>

- You cannot add any addresses if the address field for "To", "Cc", and "Bcc" already contains five addresses in total or contains no addresses.
- You cannot send i-mode mail if the "To" field is blank.

#### <Save template>

- The subject of i-mode mail you are composing will be the title of the template. If no subject is entered, the title takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm".  
(Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)

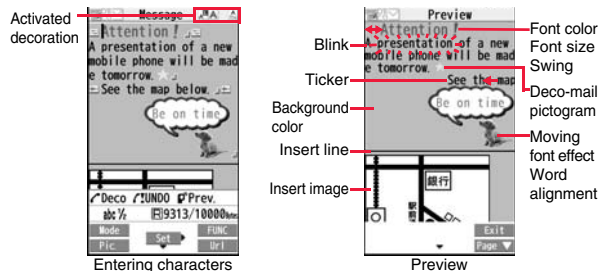
#### <Add header/sig.>

- You cannot paste a header/signature if the text, including the header/signature, would exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
- If the decoration such as font color or font size is set for the top or end of text, the header or signature will be decorated as well.

## Creating and Sending Deco-mail

When editing an i-mode mail message, you can change the size of the font and the color of the background as well as inserting images, thus composing your own original mail.

You can create Deco-mail also using the templates (patterns).  
(See page 154)



**1** Perform the operations in step 1 through step 4 on page 146.

**2** Select the text field ▶ Decorate the text using Palette.

- See page 150 for how to use Palette.

### To enter text after selecting decorations

▶ Select one of decorations ▶ Enter text.

### To set decorations after entering text

Enter text ▶ ▶ (Select area)

Go to "Select area" on page 151.

- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters. (The number of characters you can enter decreases depending on the decoration.)
  - Once you decorate the mail text, appears.
  - You can preview the contents of the text by pressing .
- Press (Exit) to finish previewing and return to the former display.

**3** Press (Set).

The Message Composition display is displayed.

Go to step 6 on page 146.

### Information

- Even if you delete the decorated characters, only the decoration data remain and the number of characters you can enter might decrease. Clear the decoration and then delete the characters. If you delete the characters by pressing and holding for at least one second, the characters as well as the decoration data are deleted.
- When you reply with quote to a received Deco-mail message or you forward it, the decorations and inserted images are entered in text as they are.
- If you use a template containing an image unable to attach to mail for sending, the image is deleted.
- When you send a Deco-mail message in excess of 10,000 bytes, the mail message with the URL for browsing is received at some destination i-mode phones. However, only the mail text without the URL for browsing might be received at some models.
- Decorations might not be correctly displayed if you send/receive Deco-mail messages to/from the devices such as personal computers.
- The movement of Ticker/Swing, blink and animation playback stop when a certain period has passed.

### Decorations



You can decorate the text of i-mode mail using Palette.



You can set multiple decorations for one point.

- You cannot combine Word Alignment, Ticker, and Swing for one point.
- Lines are inserted by Line Insert with the color specified by Font Color.
- If Word Alignment, Ticker, or Swing is specified, the images and moving font effects are inserted with the specified state.
- You can enter Deco-mail pictograms using "Insert image", and by "Pictograms" on the Function menu as well.


**■ How to use Palette**


Press  from the Message Entry display to display Palette.

- When the cursor is over the decorated character, the Palette appears with the icon for the set decoration depressed. Highlight the depressed icon and press  (**Select**); then you can change, complete or cancel the decoration. You can release the area selection also by pressing  while the area is selected.






- Press  (**Exit**) to close Palette. You can close Palette also by pressing  while you are operating on it.

**Switch operations**

You can switch between the operation of Palette and the operation of entering text, each time you press . You can move the cursor and enter text with Palette displayed.













- After you enter text, the text entry operation returns. When you use Palette in succession, press  and operate it.

**■ How to operate Decoration**

 <b>Insert image</b>	
 <b>Font effect</b>	<p>You can convert characters to a mark and insert it into the text. The mark animates in various ways and conveys your feelings to the other party.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a moving font effect ▶ Enter text.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To delete the moving font effect, move the cursor to the moving font effect and press .</li> </ul>
 <b>My picture</b>	<p>You can insert the image stored in "My picture" into the text of mail.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a folder ▶ Select an image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To delete the image, move the cursor to the image and press .</li> </ul>



Palette operation


 <b>Camera</b>	<p>You can insert the image shot by the camera on the spot into the text of mail.</p> <p>▶ <b>Shoot a still image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The image size of the camera is Sub-QCIF (96 x 128), QCIF (144 x 176) or QVGA (240 x 320).</li> <li>● To delete the image, move the cursor to the image and press .</li> <li>● See step 2 and step 3 on page 234 for how to shoot.</li> </ul>
 <b>Font color</b>	<p>You can change the color of characters and lines to be entered.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a color ▶ Enter text.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can switch between "20 Color" and "256 Color" by pressing  (<b>Change</b>).</li> <li>● In the font color changing mode, "" is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>● You can set other decorations in succession.</li> <li>● When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.</li> </ul>
 <b>Background color</b>	<p>You can change the background color of the mail text.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a color.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can switch between "19 Color" and "256 Color" by pressing  (<b>Change</b>).</li> </ul>
 <b>Insert line</b>	<p>You can insert a horizontal line into the mail text. The line feed is inserted automatically, and the line is inserted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To delete the line, move the cursor to the line and press .</li> </ul>
 <b>Undo</b>	<p>You can return to the former status of the set decoration. You can do it up to twice.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can undo the operation also by pressing and holding  for at least one second.</li> </ul>
 <b>Reset all decor.</b>	<p>You can release all the decorations.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have inserted an image, the message "In-line image is deleted" is displayed.</li> </ul>



## Select area

You can set Font Color, Blink, Font Size, Word Alignment, Ticker and Swing over the selected text you have entered. You can also change the set decoration, add another decoration, or cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing.

### ▶ Select a start point.

- You can select all text by pressing  (All) and selecting "YES".

### ▶ Select an end point.

Set, change, add or cancel each decoration.

- "DEPR/SELECT" is displayed at the upper right of the display during selecting decoration area.

### <Set, change, or add decoration>

#### ▶ Select an icon and set, change, or add decorations.

- Select another icon in succession to change the multiple decorations or add decorations.



- When Blink, Ticker, or Swing has been set, reselect each icon and complete decorations.

### <Release Blink, Ticker, or Swing>



#### ▶ Select the icon for Blink, Ticker, or Swing

#### ▶ Select the same icon again.

## Font size

You can change the size of characters to be entered.

### ▶ Select a font size ▶ Enter text.


- In the font size changing mode, " " or " " is displayed at the upper right of the display.
- You can set other decorations in succession.
- When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.

## Select blink

You can make characters to be entered blink.

### ▶ Enter text.

The set characters are blinking.


- In the blink setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display.
- You can set other decorations in succession.


### ▶ (Reset blink)

## Select ticker

You can make characters to be entered and images to be inserted flow (moving from right to left).

### ▶ Enter text.

The line feed is inserted automatically and " " is displayed before and after the cursor.

- In the ticker setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display.
- You can set other decorations in succession.


### ▶ (Reset ticker)


The line feed is inserted automatically.

## Select swing

You can make characters to be entered and images to be inserted swing (moving to left and right back).

### ▶ Enter text.

The line feed is inserted automatically and " " is displayed before and after the cursor.

- In the swing setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display.
- You can set other decorations in succession.

### ▶ (Reset swing)


The line feed is inserted automatically.

## Word alignment

You can change the position of characters to be entered and images to be inserted.

### ▶ Select a word alignment ▶ Enter text.

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the alignment is set.

- In the word alignment setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display.
- You can set other decorations in succession.
- When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.

**Information****<Insert image>**

- You can insert up to 20 types of images within 90 Kbytes in total. However, you can insert up to 2 types of Flash movies. Even if the inserted images are 20 types or fewer, the number of inserted images reaches maximum depending on the operation and the confirmation display for re-editing appears.
- If multiple same images are inserted, they are counted as a single type of file. If you copy/paste the image already inserted, that image is regarded as the same image and handled as a single type of file. However, if you insert the same Flash movie, it is handled as the second type of files.
- You can apply Blink, Ticker, Swing, and Word Alignment to the inserted images, however, you cannot apply them to Flash movies.

**<Font color>**

- If you move the cursor to the character for which another color is set, the setting changes to that color.
- The color for pictograms is also subjected to the specified font color. To restore the color to ordinary one, select "指定なし/Default".
- You cannot change the color of Deco-mail pictograms.

**<Background color>**

- You cannot change the background color when editing the header or signature.

**<Font size>**

- If you move the cursor to the character for which a different font size is set, the font size is changed to that size of the character.
- You cannot change the size of the Deco-mail pictogram.

**<Select blink>**

- You cannot make Deco-mail pictograms blink.

**Creating and Sending Decome-Anime**

**Decome-Anime** is a mail service which enables you to create expressive mail messages which have Flash movies with messages and images, using **Decome-Anime** templates.

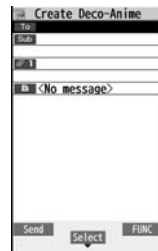
You can create them using templates pre-installed or purchased on the **IPs (Information Providers)** site.



Edit Decome-Anime display

Preview

## 1 Create new Decome-Anime



Create Decome-Anime display

## 2 Perform the operations in step 2 through step 4 on page 146.

### 3 Select the text field ▶ Phone or microSD ▶ Highlight a Decome-Anime template and press (NewMail).

- When a Decome-Anime template is already selected, the Edit Decome-Anime display appears. Go to step 4.
- You can show the preview of the Decome-Anime template by selecting it.
- Depending on the Decome-Anime template, you cannot edit contents.
- When you send the contents of the Decome-Anime template as they are, go to step 5.
- You cannot edit the Decome-Anime text when you re-edit it from the Draft or Outbox or when you forward it from the Inbox.

### 4 Select the contents field to be edited.




#### To edit characters

Select the character entry field ▶ Edit characters.

#### To change images

Select the image entry field

▶ Select a folder, and select the image to be changed.

- You can show the preview by pressing  (Preview) from the Edit Decome-Anime display or selecting "▶ Preview" from the character entry field.
- When you enter characters, you cannot set decoration for them and cannot enter Deco-mail pictograms. In addition, you cannot paste header or signature.
- When you insert a line feed in the middle of a line, the number of characters you can enter decreases.
- When the total size of Decome-Anime template, characters, and images exceeds 90 Kbytes, you can no longer enter characters and images.
- Depending on the Decome-Anime template, you might not be able to insert images even if the total size is 90 Kbytes or less.
- As the fonts and display position of images and characters are fixed, you cannot edit them.
- Depending on the character entry field,  (red) which shows the line feed position or  (orange) which shows the nonenterable area may appear on the Character Entry (Edit) display.


### 5 (Finish)

The editing of the Decome-Anime message is completed.  
Go to step 6 on page 146.

#### Information

- You cannot create a Decome-Anime message when sent mail messages in the Outbox are saved to the maximum number/size of storage and all of them are protected, when 20 draft mail messages are saved, or when the Draft is full.
- The images you can insert into Decome-Anime messages are GIF files (including animation GIF), JPEG files, and SWF files.
- When animation GIF files or SWF files are inserted, the volume overflow for sending might occur.
- Even when sending fails, you cannot re-edit it.
- In the character entry field of some Decome-Anime templates, the text such as “使い方 (how to use)” is pre-entered. Delete it before sending.
- When you send a Decome-Anime message, the mail message with the URL for browsing is received at some destination i-mode phones. However, only the Decome-Anime text without the URL for browsing might be received at some models.
- You cannot use the received Decome-Anime message as a template.

#### Function Menu of the Create Decome-Anime Display

<b>Send</b>	You can send the Decome-Anime message. Go to step 7 on page 147.
<b>Preview</b>	You can check the playback of Decome-Anime message before sending. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• See page 155 for how the Decome-Anime messages are played back.</li><li>• Press  (Exit) to return to the Create Decome-Anime display.</li></ul>
<b>Save</b>	You can save the Decome-Anime message you are creating to the Draft. After saving, you cannot re-edit the text of the Decome-Anime message. ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When you save it before selecting a Decome-Anime template, it is saved as an i-mode mail message.</li></ul>
<b>Operate receiver</b>	See page 147.
<b>Operate att. file</b>	See page 148.

<b>Template</b>	<p>You can read in a Decome-Anime template to create a Decome-Anime message.</p> <p>▶ <b>Phone or microSD</b> ▶ Highlight a Decome-Anime template and press (NewMail).</p> <p>Go to step 4 on page 153.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If any Decome-Anime template is selected, the confirmation display appears asking whether to discard the current contents to read in the new one.</li> </ul>
-----------------	---

## Function Menu of the Edit Decome-Anime Display

<b>Template</b>	See page 154.
<b>Preview</b>	See page 153.
<b>Delete</b>	You can delete the entered image. The image entry field becomes blank.
<b>Quit editing</b>	You can end the editing of the Decome-Anime message. Go to step 6 on page 146.

## <Template>

# Using a Template to Create Deco-mail/ Decome-Anime

The template is the form data in which text and images are inserted. Deco-mail templates and Decome-Anime templates are available. Besides pre-installed templates, you can download templates from sites (see page 208). You can save the sent/received/created Deco-mail messages as the Deco-mail templates (see page 148 and page 172). You can edit the saved Deco-mail templates using Palette. You cannot edit the Decome-Anime templates.

- You can delete the pre-installed templates. You can re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site (see page 209). When you use a UIM other than the one used for downloading, the UIM security function (see page 39) is set for them.

## Deco-mail Template

### 1 [NewMail] ▶ Template ▶ Deco-mail ▶ Select a template.

- Press (NewMail) to create a Deco-mail message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 146.
- Even if you set "Header/signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, you cannot paste it.
- See page 209 when you select "Search by i-mode".



Deco-mail Template list



Detailed Deco-mail Template display

## Function Menu of the Deco-mail Template List

<b>Compose message</b>	You can create a Deco-mail message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 146.
<b>Sort</b>	You can change the order of displayed templates. ▶ <b>Select an order.</b>
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Enter a title.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 15 full-pitch/30 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Info</b>	You can display the file size, saved date and time of the template, and whether it contains images.
<b>No. of templates</b>	You can display the number of saved templates.
<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for templates to be deleted</b> ▶ (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>

Delete all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

## Function Menu of the Detailed Deco-mail Template Display

<b>Compose message</b>	You can create a Deco-mail message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 146.
<b>Edit</b>	You can edit the contents of the template and save it. ▶ <b>Edit the text</b> ▶  (NewMail) ▶ <b>YES</b> or <b>NO</b> <b>YES</b> . . . Overwrites and saves. <b>NO</b> . . . Saves as a separate file. • See step 2 and step 3 on page 149 for how to edit the text. • See page 210 when the templates are stored to the maximum.
<b>Save insert image</b>	You can save images inserted into the template or Deco-mail text, and set them as the Stand-by display and Wake-up display. ▶ <b>Select an image</b> ▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b> . Go to step 3 on page 208. • See page 210 when images are stored to the maximum.

### Information

#### <Edit>

- The title name when saved as a separate file takes "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: Year, M: Month, D: Date, h: hour, m: minute).

#### <Save insert image>

- Deco-mail pictograms are saved to the "お気に入り (Favorite)" folder in the "Deco-mail pictograms" folder.

## Decome-Anime Template

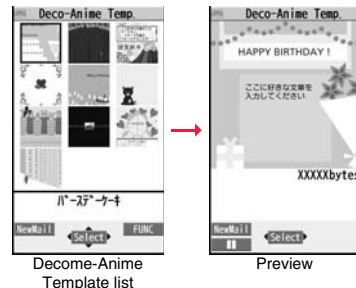
### 1 ▶ Template ▶ Decome-Anime ▶ Phone or microSD

- See page 209 when you select "Search by i-mode".

## 2 Select a template.

The preview of the template is displayed.

- Press (NewMail) to create the Decome-Anime message with the template contents. Go to step 2 on page 152.



## When you show the Decome-Anime Playback display or preview

The animation is played back automatically. The effect tones may sound and the FOMA terminal may vibrate for some Decome-Anime messages. Further, you can operate from the playback display or preview of some Decome-Anime messages by using , , , or .

- Press ( ) to pause the animation and effect tone during playback. Press ( ) again to resume the animation playback.
- The effect tone sounds following the setting of "Auto-start attachment". Each time you show the preview from the Decome-Anime Template list, the effect tone sounds regardless of the setting.
- The effect tone does not sound during Play Background.
- The FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the setting of "Vibrator" or "Manner mode set".
- Some Decome-Anime messages refer to the phone information in your FOMA terminal. To permit the use of the information in your FOMA terminal, set "Phone info use setting" in "i-mode Browser set." of "i-mode settings" to "Valid". ("Valid" is set at purchase.)
- The FLV file contained in a Flash movie is not played back.

## Function Menu of the Decome-Anime Template List

<b>Create Deco-Anime</b>	You can create a Decome-Anime message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 152.
--------------------------	--

<b>Preview</b>	You can display the preview of the Decome-Anime template.
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Enter a title.</b> ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 369.
<b>Copy to phone</b>	See page 369.
<b>Info</b>	You can display the title, file name, format, and whether it set with file restriction.
<b>Ir/ transmission</b>	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	See page 383.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	See page 384.
<b> transmission</b>	See page 385.
<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete this</b>	See page 154.
<b>Delete selected</b>	See page 154.
<b>Delete all</b>	See page 155.

&lt;Attachments&gt;

## Attaching a File

You can send an i-mode mail message with files attached.

You can attach following files:

- Still image
- Melody
- i-motion file
- ToruCa file
- PDF file
- Phonebook entry
- Schedule event
- ToDo item
- Bookmark
- Word
- Excel
- PowerPoint
- SD other files

You can attach up to 10 files within 2 Mbytes in total.





- You cannot attach files prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA terminal.
- Regardless of the "File restriction" setting, you can attach the still images/moving pictures shot with your FOMA terminal or the files received via infrared rays.
- When you attach a file, another attachment field appears on the Message Composition display.

- Depending on the destination i-mode phone, only the compatible files are received within the memory space of that phone.
- It might take a time to send the i-mode mail depending on the size of attached files.

## 1 Message Composition display

▶ **Select the attachment field**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

<b>Picture</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b> ● Select an attached image to display it. Press (CLR) to return to the former display.
<b>Melody</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a melody.</b> ● Select an attached melody to play it back. Press any key to stop the playback.
<b>i motion</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an i-motion file.</b> ● Select the attached i-motion file to play it back. Press (CLR) during playback or stop the playback to return to the former display.
<b>ToruCa</b>	When the ToruCa file is a ToruCa file (details), it is attached as a ToruCa file (details). ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a ToruCa file.</b> ● Select the attached ToruCa file to preview it. Press (CLR) to return to the former display.
<b>PDF</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a PDF file.</b> ● Select an attached PDF file to display it. Press (CLR) to return to the former display.
<b>Phonebook</b>	▶ <b>Select a search method</b> ▶ <b>Select a Phonebook entry</b> ▶ (Select) ● When you specified a search method last time, the Phonebook entry is searched by that method. ● Select the attached Phonebook entry to display the details. Press (Return) or (CLR) to return to the former display.
<b>Schedule</b>	▶ <b>Select a date</b> ▶ <b>Select a schedule event</b> ▶ (Select) ● Select the attached schedule event to display the details. Press (CLR) to return to the former display.

<b>ToDo</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a ToDo item</b> ▶  (Select)</li> <li>• Select the attached ToDo item to display the details. Press  to return to the former display.</li> </ul>
<b>Bookmark</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a bookmark.</b></li> <li>• Select the attached bookmark to display the title, address, and others of the bookmark. Press  (Return) or  to return to the former display.</li> </ul>
<b>Document file</b>	<p>You can attach a file of Word, Excel, and PowerPoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a file.</b></li> </ul>
<b>Other</b>	<p>You can attach a file stored in "SD other files".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a file.</b></li> </ul>

## 2 Go to step 2 on page 146.

- When the confirmation display appears asking whether to attach the file, select "YES". If you select "YES (default)", the same confirmation display does not appear afterward. If you select "NO", the attached files of 100 Kbytes or larger are deleted.

### Information

#### <Picture>

- The images are not sent as the attachments to i-mode terminals of the mova service; they are sent in the form of URLs for browsing images and automatically attached with expiry dates, and can be obtained by selecting URLs. The mail text that can be sent to an i-mode terminal of the mova service is up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes). (When the acceptable number of characters for the mova terminal at the receiving end is "250 full-pitch characters")

When multiple files are attached, the files are deleted and just the mail text is sent.

- The i-mode phone of the mova service cannot receive GIF images.
- You can attach a Flash movie as well.
- When the file is a JPEG image whose size is larger than 2 Mbytes (except Progressive type files), it is converted to 2 Mbytes or less.
- The still image might not be received correctly or not be displayed or coarsely displayed depending on the model at the receiving end.

### Information

#### <Melody>

- Melodies stored on the microSD card cannot be attached. Copy the melodies to the FOMA terminal. (See page 371)
- If the receiving end is other than P-07A, the sent melody might not be played back correctly or the attachment might be deleted.
- You cannot receive the attached melody on the i-mode phone of the mova service.

#### < motion>

- Some i-motion files cannot be attached to mail or their file sizes may become larger or smaller.
- i-motion files stored on the microSD card cannot be attached. Copy them to the FOMA terminal. (See page 371)
- Depending on the mobile phone of the receiving end, i-motion files cannot be correctly received/displayed, might become coarse, or might be converted into consecutive still images.

When sending a moving picture to other than the 2 Mbytes compatible model, it is advisable to shoot with the following settings:

File size setting: Mail restrict'n (S)

Image quality: Normal

#### <ToruCa>

- ToruCa files stored on the microSD card cannot be attached. Copy the ToruCa files to the FOMA terminal. (See page 321)

## Delete Attached File

You can delete a selected attached file or all attached files.

### 1 Message Composition display ▶ (FUNC)

- ▶ Operate att. file ▶ Delete att. file
- ▶ Delete this or Delete all ▶ YES

- To delete a single file, highlight a file to be deleted.

## Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

When the FOMA terminal is in the service area, i-mode mail, SMS messages and SMS reports automatically arrive. (See page 159 for receiving i-mode mail after selecting it.)

When a mail message arrives, " (pink)" appears at the top of the display.

You can save up to 2,500 received i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

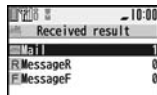
### 1 When i-mode mail arrives, " (pink)" blinks and the message telling its arrival appears.

When receiving is completed, the display shows the number of received i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F.

- You can display the Inbox list by selecting "Mail".
- To cancel receiving midway, select "Cancel" or press and hold **(CLR)** for at least one second while "Mail Receiving..." is displayed. However, the mail message might be received depending on the timing.
- If no keys are pressed for about 15 seconds, " New!" (see page 30) appears on the desktop and the former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)

Press **( )**, highlight " New!", and press **(Select)** to display the Inbox list.

- See page 34 for when the FOMA terminal is closed.



Reception Result display

#### Information

- You can automatically receive up to 100 Kbytes of an i-mode mail message including attached files. You can manually obtain the attached files in excess of 100 Kbytes from the i-mode Center. (See page 161)
- When the received mail messages exceed the maximum number/size of storage, they are deleted in order of mail in the "Trash box" folder and older received mail. However, unread or protected mail messages are not deleted.

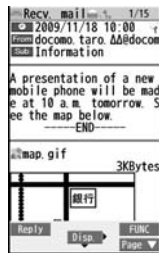
#### Information

- When the unread or protected mail messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum number/size of storage, no new mail can be received and " (dark blue)" is displayed. To receive i-mode mail, delete received mail or read unread mail or release protection of mail until " (dark blue)" clears, and then perform "Check new messages".
- You can receive i-mode mail with melodies, still images, or other files attached. You can receive incompatible attached files but you cannot display them.
- When you receive mail from a device that can set To, Cc and Bcc, you can check whether the message was sent to you as To, Cc or Bcc.
- Mail Messages received in the following cases are held at the i-mode Center:
  - When the power is off
  - During Self Mode
  - During infrared communication
  - During PushTalk communication
  - During iC communication
  - While connecting to the Data Storage Center
  - When the space of the Inbox is full with protected or unread messages
  - During a videophone call
  - When you are out of the service area
  - While connecting to the FirstPass center
  - During Omakase Lock
  - While copying to the microSD card
- When i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center, " (pink)" appears, and when they are held to the maximum, " (dark blue)" appears.

### Display Newly Received i-mode Mail

#### 1 Reception Result display ▶ Mail ▶ Select an i-mode mail message to be displayed.

- For a Decome-Anime message, the Decome-Anime Playback display appears. Press **(Detail)** to show the detailed display.
- Press and hold **( )** for at least one second from the detailed i-mode mail display to change the size of characters. (See "Mail" on page 121.)



#### Information

- Undisplayable characters are replaced by spaces, etc.




## Information

- When the number of characters in the text of received i-mode mail exceeds the maximum, “r” or “/” is inserted at the end of the text and the excess part is deleted automatically.
- The still image automatically displayed at opening might not be correctly displayed. When the image is larger than the screen size, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- Some decorations inserted into the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer might not be displayed correctly.

## <Receive Option>

### Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check the titles of i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center and select them to receive, or delete them at the Center before receiving.


To use this function, set “Receive option setting” to “ON” beforehand. When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, you cannot receive i-mode mail messages automatically. When a mail message comes in the i-mode Center, “



## Receive Option Setting

You can set whether to select and receive necessary i-mode mail only.


1  ▶ Mail settings ▶ Receive option setting ▶ ON or OFF

## Select and Receive Mail Messages

1  ▶ Receive option ▶ Operate following the procedure described in “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

- When “Receive option setting” is set to “OFF”, the display to the effect that it will be set to “ON” appears.  
Press  (Select) to set “Receive option setting”.
- You can show the Receive Option display also by  (FUNC).  
▶メニューリスト (Menu List) ▶メール選択受信 (Receive Option).


## Information


- Even when Receive Option Setting is set to “ON”, you will still receive all mail messages if you execute “Check new messages”. If you do not want to receive all mail messages, remove a check mark from “Mail”. (See page 178)
- When you show the Receive Option display, the “


## <Check New Messages>



### Checking New i-mode Mail

i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F arriving at the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, the messages will be held at the i-mode Center if your FOMA terminal cannot receive mail because it is turned off or out of the service area, or when Receive Option Setting is set to “ON”.


When “

1 Press and hold  for at least one second.

“



- You can also execute “Check new msg.” during a voice call by pressing  (FUNC).
- To cancel receiving midway, press and hold  for at least one second. However, the mail message might be received depending on the timing.

## Information

- When icons such as “

Mail

**Information**

- Even when i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center, the “ (pink)” icon to that effect, or the “ (dark blue)” icon telling that messages are held to the maximum at the i-mode Center might not appear. (This happens if mail arrives at the Center when, for instance, your FOMA terminal is off.)
- You can select items to be checked by “Set check new messages”.
- You cannot use this function to receive SMS messages. Use “Check new SMS” to receive them.


&lt;Reply&gt; &lt;Reply with Quote&gt;

**Replying to Received i-mode Mail**



By “Rep.w/ i-mode mail”, you can reply with a normal i-mode mail message, and by “Rep. w/ Deco-Anime”, you can reply with a Decome-Anime message. By “Reply with quote”, you can quote the text of your received i-mode mail to reply. You cannot use “Reply with quote” for Decome-Anime messages and SMS messages.

**1 Inbox list/Detailed Received Mail display**  


▶ Reply/forward ▶ Rep.w/ i-mode mail,  
Rep. w/ Deco-Anime or Reply with quote

- Press  (Reply) to reply by i-mode mail.
- If other recipients of the simultaneous mail are found, you can choose whether to reply to the sender only or to all addresses. Select “To sender” or “To all”.
- Just one quotation mark (see page 180) is added to the beginning of the text in the i-mode mail to be replied with quote.

**2 Enter a subject and text, and then send.**

When you have selected i-mode mail, go to step 3 on page 146.  
When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 3 on page 189.  
After you send mail, “” changes to “”.

**Information**

- For the sender’s address that cannot be replied to (such as when the mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters), “” is displayed.



**Information**

- “Re:” is prefixed to the subject of the mail message to be replied or replied with a quotation. When the subject exceeds 100 full-pitch characters, the excess is deleted. (When “Re:” has already been prefixed, it changes to “Re2:” and will be counted up to “Re99:”.)
- Even if the i-mode mail text contains pasted data, you cannot quote it in your reply. Also, you cannot quote it when using the DOCOMO keitai datalink or infrared communication function. See page 165 for pasted data.
- If the Deco-mail text contains images prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA terminal, such images will be deleted when you reply.

&lt;Forward&gt;



**Forwarding Received i-mode Mail**

You can forward the i-mode mail or SMS messages to others.

**1 Inbox list/Detailed Received Mail display**    
▶ Reply/forward ▶ Forward

- You can forward also by pressing  (Forward) from the Inbox list.

**2 Enter a subject and address, and send the mail.**

When you have selected an i-mode mail message or a Decome-Anime message, go to step 2 on page 146.  
When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 189.  
After you send mail, “” changes to “”.

**Information**

- “Fw:” is prefixed to the subject of the mail message to be forwarded. When the subject exceeds 100 full-pitch characters, the excess is deleted. (When “Fw:” has already been prefixed, it changes to “Fw2:” and will be counted up to “Fw99:”.)
- When you forward an i-mode mail message with a file you have not obtained yet, the file information is deleted.
- Even if the i-mode mail text contains pasted data, you cannot quote it in your forwarding mail. Also, you cannot quote it when using the DOCOMO keitai datalink or infrared communication function. See page 165 for pasted data.

## Information

- When a mail message is forwarded and a ToruCa file (details) that contains data whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited is attached to the mail message, the attached file returns to a ToruCa file before receiving details.
- When a mail message on the microSD card is forwarded, the attached file is deleted.
- When you "Forward" an SMS message received to Number B in Dual Mode of 2in1, the sent SMS message is retained in the Outbox or Draft, even if you switch to A Mode.

## When i-mode Mail with Files Attached/ Pasted is Received

You can receive up to 2 Mbytes of the attached files on your FOMA terminal. However, if attached files exceed 100 Kbytes, only information of all or part of attached files is received. You need to obtain attached files again from the i-mode Center.

The FOMA terminal supports following files:

- Still image
- Melody
- i-motion file
- Movie file
- ToruCa file
- PDF file
- Phonebook entry
- Schedule event
- ToDo item
- Bookmark
- Word
- Excel
- PowerPoint

You cannot play back or display the files other than above. You can save them to any folder in "SD other files", or use the i-mode mail to forward them.

You can use "Attachment preference" to select the files to be received.

- When multiple data items are pasted, they might not be displayed.

## Obtain Receive Option Attached Files

You can obtain the receive option attached files held at the i-mode Center.

### 1 Detailed Received Mail display

▶ Select an attached file which has not been obtained.

After obtaining is completed, files are played back/ displayed.



## Information

- You cannot obtain the attached files when the unused memory space in the Inbox is smaller than the files.

## Play Back/Display Attached or Pasted Files

You can play back or display the attached/pasted files already obtained.

### 1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ Select an attached file.

The file is played back or displayed.

- For a movie file or document file, the confirmation display appears telling that you cannot play it back/display it. Play it back/display it after saving it to the microSD card.
- For the files which are not supported by the FOMA terminal, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save them.
- You can display only the first item when a file of Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items or bookmarks is attached.

## Information

- When the sender's device is other than P-07A, the received melodies might not be played back correctly.

## Information

- When the first attached file is an obtained still image, that still image only is automatically displayed when the mail message is opened. The size of a still image displayed automatically is up to 8M (2448 x 3264).
- When the image size is larger than the screen, it is displayed shrunk.
- You cannot play back a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- You cannot play back a Flash movie in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- The FLV file contained in a Flash movie is not played back.
- You cannot display a ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte and ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes.

## Save Attached or Pasted Files

You can save the attached or pasted files that you have obtained. You can set some files for a ring tone, or an image on the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or other displays.

### 1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display/Detailed Message R/F display

- ▶ Highlight an attached file and press  (FUNC)
- ▶ Operate file ▶ Save attached file ▶ YES

- Movie files are saved to the destination folder in "SD movie" folder of "Movie".
- Document files are saved to the destination folder in "Document viewer".
- The files not supported by the FOMA terminal are saved to the destination folder in "SD other files".
- Even if the files are supported by the FOMA terminal, some of them cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal depending on the file such as an invalid data file or whose size is too large. In that case, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save it to the microSD card. When you save it, it is saved to a destination folder in "SD other files".
- The confirmation display might appear telling that a part of the file cannot be saved depending on the attached file.

### 2 Select a destination or folder to save to.

For melodies, go to step 3 on page 209.

For still images, go to step 3 on page 208.

- Bookmarks are saved according to each information of i-mode or Full Browser.
- If the maximum number of files has already been saved to the microSD card or there is no usable memory space when you save SD other files, movie files, or document files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete unnecessary files to save new files. Select "YES", and select unnecessary files from the displayed list in Data Box to delete them. See page 210 when files other than SD other files, movie files, or document files are stored to the maximum.

## Information

- You cannot save a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot save a Flash movie in excess of 500 Kbytes to the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot save a ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte and ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA terminal.

<Inbox> <Outbox> <Draft>

## Displaying Mail in Inbox/Outbox/Draft

### Display Mail from Inbox

You can save up to 2,500 received i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

You can save up to 30 Area Mail messages separately from i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

You can check the received i-mode mail messages, SMS messages, and Area Mail messages.

- Welcome mail messages have been saved by default.

### 1 Inbox ▶ Select a folder.

- See page 181 for displaying Messages R/F.



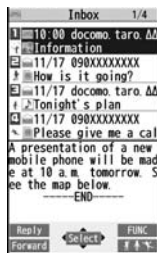
## 2 Select a mail message.

• When you select an unread mail message, “ (pink)” changes to “ ”.

• For a Decome-Anime message, the Decome-Anime Playback display appears. Some Decome-Anime messages are played back repeatedly. Press **(Detail)** to show the detailed Received Mail display. See page 155 for how the Decome-Anime messages are played back.

• Use **( )** to check other mail messages. When you press **( )** to show the Decome-Anime message from the detailed Received Mail display, the Decome-Anime Playback display does not appear.

• When the mail text is long, use **( )** to scroll the display to check it. Further, you can press **(MENU) (Page ▲) ( ) (Page ▼)** or **(▲) (▼)** to scroll page by page. You cannot scroll the Decome-Anime messages.



Inbox list



Detailed Received Mail display

### Information

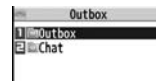
- You are not charged a communication fee for welcome mail messages.
- You cannot reply to welcome mail messages.
- The attached melody, effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text, and effect tone of Decome-Anime text sound following the setting of “Auto-start attachment”. However, when a mail message with an attached melody includes the effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text or effect tone of Decome-Anime text, the melody is preferentially played back. The effect tone does not sound.
- The melody and effect tone do not sound during Play Background.
- The FLV file contained in a Flash movie is not played back.

## Display Mail from Outbox

You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

You can check the sent i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

## 1 Outbox Select a folder.



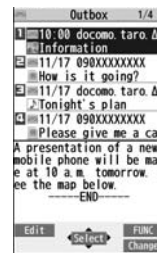
Outbox Folder list

## 2 Select a mail message.

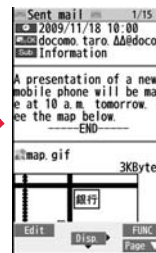
• For a Decome-Anime message, the Decome-Anime Playback display appears. Press **(Detail)** to show the detailed Sent Mail display. See page 155 for how the Decome-Anime messages are played back.

• Use **( )** to check other mail messages. When you press **( )** to show the Decome-Anime message from the detailed Sent Mail display, the Decome-Anime Playback display does not appear.

• When the mail text is long, use **( )** to scroll the display to check it. Further, you can press **(MENU) (Page ▲) ( ) (Page ▼)** or **(▲) (▼)** to scroll page by page. You cannot scroll the Decome-Anime messages.



Outbox list



Detailed Sent Mail display

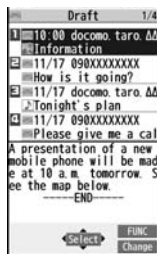
### Information

- The attached melody, effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text, and effect tone of Decome-Anime text sound following the setting of “Auto-start attachment”. However, when a mail message with an attached melody includes the effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text or effect tone of Decome-Anime text, the melody is preferentially played back. The effect tone does not sound.
- The melody and effect tone do not sound during Play Background.

## Display Mail from Draft


You can edit and send i-mode mail messages and SMS messages in the Draft. You can save up to 20 i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

### 1 Draft



Draft list

### 2 Select a mail message.

When you select an i-mode mail message, go to step 2 on page 146. When you select a Decome-Anime message, press  (Edit) and go to step 2 on page 152. When you select an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 189.


#### Information

- When you select the i-appli mail folder, the mail-linked i-appli that supports the folder starts.

## How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display

### Mail menu






Inbox, Outbox, and Draft might have the following marks:

	Unread mail messages or messages are stored in the Inbox.
	Failed-to-send mail messages are stored in the Outbox. Draft mail messages are stored in the Draft.
	"Mail security" is activated. (displayed also for chat mail)

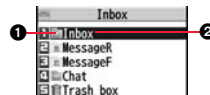
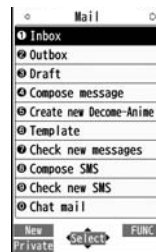
### Inbox Folder list

#### 1 Folder status

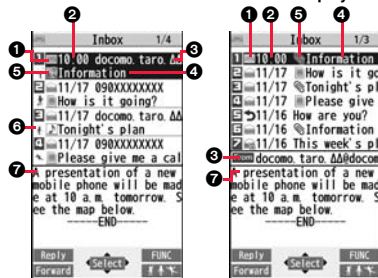
"NEW" appears when unread messages are found, and "E" appears when Mail Security is activated.

	Ordinary folder
	i-appli mail folder
	Message R folder
	Message F folder
	Trash box folder

#### 2 Folder name

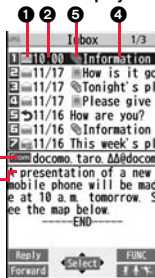


## ■Inbox list and detailed Received Mail display



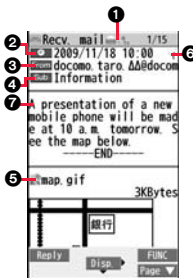
Inbox list

For "Date+sender/  
receiver subject"



Inbox list

For "Date+subject"



Detailed Received  
Mail display

### 1 Mail status and type

"🔒" appears when protection is set.

	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Forwarded mail
	Replied mail
	Type of the received mail (Detailed display only)

### 2 Received date and time

The Inbox list shows the time for the mail received today, and shows the date for the mail received until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was received. The Japanese date and time the mail was received from the Center is displayed.

### 3 Phone number or mail address of the sender or of another recipient of simultaneous mail

	Sender's mail address (Detailed display only)
	Sender's mail address that cannot be replied to (Detailed display only)
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail (Detailed display only)
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail that cannot be replied to (Detailed display only)

### 4 Subject

The number of characters you can display on the list varies depending on the setting of "Mail list display", and "Mail" of "Font size setting". When a file is attached, it is decreased by 1 full-pitch/2 half-pitch character/s as the icon is added at the top. For SMS messages or Area Mail messages, the beginning of the text is displayed. ("SMS" or "Area Mail" is displayed on the detailed display.)

	(blue) SMS messages in the FOMA terminal
	SMS messages on the UIM

	Area Mail
--	-----------

### 5 Attached or pasted data

The detailed display shows the data volume as well.

<For Inbox list (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed Received Mail display>

"🗑️" is added to each icon when you execute "Delete att. file" (Detailed display only).

	Melody file
	Image file
	Inserted image file (List only)
	i-motion file
	Movie file
	ToruCa file
	PDF file
	Document file
	Phonebook entry file
	Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Bookmark file
	Other files

	Attached file before obtaining (Detailed display only)
	Attached file suspended to be obtained (Detailed display only)
	Attached file failed to be obtained (Detailed display only)
	i-appli start information (List only)
	i-appli mail (List only)
	Multiple files (List only)
	Multiple pasted files
	File with the UIM security

<For Inbox list (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file		File with the UIM security
	i-oppli mail		

### 6 Feel \* Mail icon

When you press from the Inbox list on the vertical display, the Feel\* Mail image is played back. See page 180 for Feel\* Mail.

### 7 Text of mail

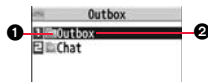
### Outbox Folder list

#### 1 Folder status

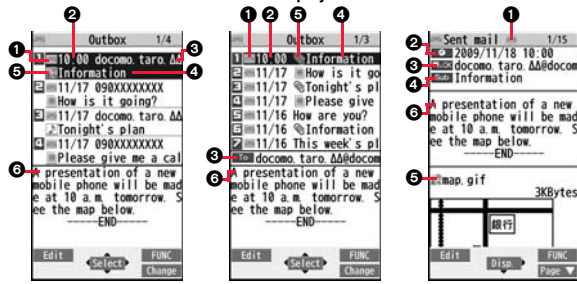
"" appears when Mail Security is activated.

	Ordinary folder
	i-oppli mail folder

#### 2 Folder name



### Outbox list and detailed Sent Mail display



Outbox list

For "Date+sender/  
receiver subject"

Outbox list

For "Date+subject"

Detailed Sent Mail display

### 1 Mail status

"" appears when protection is set.

	(pink) Mail successfully sent
	Mail failed to be sent
	Simultaneous mail successfully sent to all addresses
	(gray) Simultaneous mail sent to some addresses
	(pink) Simultaneous mail failed to be sent to all addresses

### 2 Sent date and time

The Outbox list shows the time for the mail sent today, and shows the date for the mail sent until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was sent.

"" appears when the date/time is corrected.

### 3 Recipient's phone number or mail address

	Mail address successfully sent (Detailed display only)
	Mail address failed to be sent (Detailed display only)



#### 4 Subject

The number of characters you can display on the list varies depending on the setting of "Mail list display", and "Mail" of "Font size setting". When a file is attached, it is decreased by 1 full-pitch/2 half-pitch character/s as the icon is added at the top. For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed. ("SMS" is displayed on the detailed display.)

	SMS messages in the FOMA terminal
	SMS messages on the UIM

	SMS report received [List (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed display only]
--	---

#### 5 Attached data

The detailed display shows the data volume as well.

<For Outbox list (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed Sent Mail display>  
 "🗑️" is added to each icon when you execute "Delete att. file" (Detailed display only).

	Melody file
	Image file
	Inserted image file (List only)
	i-motion file
	Movie file
	ToruCa file
	PDF file
	Document file

	Phonebook entry file
	Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Bookmark file
	Other files
	i-oppli mail (List only)
	Multiple files (List only)
	File with the UIM security

<For Outbox list (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file
	i-oppli mail

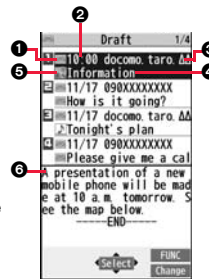
	File with the UIM security
--	----------------------------

#### 6 Text of mail

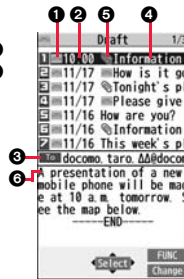
#### ■ Draft list

##### 1 Mail status

	Ordinary mail
	Simultaneous mail



For "Date+sender/receiver subject"



For "Date+subject"

##### 2 Saved date and time

The Draft list shows the time for the mail saved today, and shows the date for the mail saved until yesterday. "🕒" appears when the date/time is corrected.

##### 3 Recipient's phone number or mail address

##### 4 Subject

The number of characters you can display on the list varies depending on the setting of "Mail list display", and "Mail" of "Font size setting". When a file is attached, it is decreased by 1 full-pitch/2 half-pitch character/s as the icon is added at the top. For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed.

	SMS messages
--	--------------



##### 5 Attached data

<For Date+sender/receiver subject>

	Melody file
	Image file
	Inserted image file
	i-motion file
	Movie file
	ToruCa file
	PDF file
	Document file




	Phonebook entry file
	Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Bookmark file
	Other files
	Multiple files (List only)
	File with the UIM security

<For (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file
	File with the UIM security

## 6 Text of mail



### Information

- See "Mail list display" on page 178 to change a method to display the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list.
- When "Name in phonebook" of "Mail list display" is checked, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed as sender or recipient. However, when the sender's mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the name is not displayed even when "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" is stored in the mail address field in a Phonebook entry. Store the phone number part only to display the name. When a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches a Phonebook entry stored as secret data, the name is not displayed. It is displayed in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.  
Even when a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches a Phonebook entry not stored as secret data, the name is not displayed in Secret Data Only. Switch to Secret Mode or release Secret Data Only to display the name.
- When "Message" of "Mail list display" is not checked, the text does not appear on the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, "" is displayed at the end of the subject or sender's/receiver's address on the list for received mail messages to Address B/Number B, or sent/draft mail messages from Address B.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, "" instead of "" is displayed at the upper left of the detailed display for the mail messages received to/sent from Address B of 2in1.

# Managing Mail Messages

## Function Menu of the Inbox Folder List/Outbox Folder List

### Operate folder

<b>Add folder</b>	You can add a new folder. You can add up to 22 folders to each of "Inbox" and "Outbox". ▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.</li></ul>
<b>Edit folder name</b>	You can edit the names of the added folders only. ▶ <b>Edit the folder name.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.</li></ul>
<b>Sort folder</b>	You can sort folders. You can sort the added folders, Message R/F folder, and the i-oppli mail folders. ▶ <b>Use  to sort the order</b> ▶  <b>(Select)</b>
<b>Delete folder</b>	All the mail messages including secret mail in the folder will be deleted as well. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Open folder

You can display the mail messages in the i-oppli mail folder without running mail-linked i-oppli.



### Read all

[Inbox Folder only]

You can change unread mail in the folder to already-read mail.  
▶ **YES**

### Sort

<b>Re-sort in this</b>	You can re-sort mail messages in the folder following the sorting conditions specified by "Auto-sort". ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When the folder is applied with Mail security (see page 169), you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.</li></ul>
------------------------	---

<b>Re-sort in all</b>	You can re-sort mail messages in all Inbox/Outbox folders following the sorting conditions specified by "Auto-sort". ▶ <b>YES</b> ● When the folder applied with Mail security (see page 169) is found, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
<b>Auto-sort</b>	See page 175.
<b>Mail security</b>	You can set the folder to open only when you enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b> ● To release it, perform the same operation.
<b>lr/  transmission</b>	
<b>Send all lr data</b>	See page 384.
<b>All  transmission</b>	See page 385.
<b>No. of messages</b>	You can display the number of stored received mail messages, Messages R/F, and sent mail messages.
<b>Delete</b>	
<b>DEL all read mails</b> [Inbox Folder only]	You can delete all the read mail messages including secret mail in all Inbox folders. All the read SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>DEL all recv. mails</b> [Inbox Folder only]	You can delete all the mail messages including secret mail in all Inbox folders. All the received SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>DEL all sent mails</b> [Outbox Folder only]	You can delete all the mail messages including secret mail in all Outbox folders. All sent SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

## Information

### <Delete folder>

- You cannot delete an i-oppli mail folder if corresponding mail-linked i-oppli exists. If the software program does not exist, you can delete the i-oppli mail folder, but this will delete both folders created in the Outbox Folder list and Inbox Folder list.

### <Re-sort in this> <Re-sort in all>

- You cannot re-sort the mail messages in the "Chat" folder and "Trash box" folder.
- Mail messages which do not apply to the sorting conditions are sorted into the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

### <Mail security>

- You can neither delete the Mail-Security-activated folder nor edit its name.

## Function Menu of the Inbox List/Outbox List/Draft List


### Reply/forward

<b>Rep.w/ i-mode mail</b> [Inbox only]	See page 160.
<b>Rep. w/ Deco-Anime</b> [Inbox only]	See page 160.
<b>Reply with quote</b> [Inbox only]	See page 160.
<b>Forward</b> [Inbox only]	See page 160.

### Edit

[Outbox only]

You can re-edit the sent mail message and send it again. When you have selected an i-mode mail message, go to step 2 on page 146. When you have selected a Decome-Anime message, go to step 2 on page 152. When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 189.

- You can re-edit also by pressing  (Edit).

Protect	
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can protect the mail message so that it is not overwritten and deleted. You can protect all the received and sent messages. (2,500 received messages, 1,000 sent messages)</p> <p>The protected one is indicated by "🔒".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release protection, perform the same operation.</li> <li>• You can switch between protected and unprotected also by pressing (1) from the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display.</li> </ul>
<b>ProtectSLCT. ON/OFF</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>▶ <b>Put/Remove a check mark for mail messages to be protected/unprotected</b> ▶ (Finish)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A check mark is placed to the mail already protected.</li> </ul>
Move/copy	
<b>Move</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail messages to be moved</b></p> <p>▶ (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Move to trash</b> [Inbox only]	<p>You can move mail messages to the "Trash box" folder. The mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted).</p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail messages to be moved to the trash box</b> ▶ (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>UIM operation</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can copy or move the mail message to the UIM or FOMA terminal. (See page 416)</p>
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 369.
<b>Store in Center</b>	See page 139.
Search/sort	
<b>Search mail</b>	

<b>Search sender/ Search receiver</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a mail address or phone number of a sender or recipient.</p> <p>"Search sender" for received mail and "Search receiver" for sent mail are displayed respectively.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Phonebook</b> . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</p> <p><b>Received address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press (Select).</p> <p><b>Sent address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press (Select).</p> <p><b>Enter address</b> . . . . . Enter the mail address or phone number.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Search subject</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a subject.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a subject.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Search subject+msg</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a subject or text.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a part of a subject or text.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Sort</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can change the order of displayed mail messages.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an order.</b></p>
<b>Filter</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can display the mail messages only that satisfy the condition.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a type.</b></p>
<b>Display all</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can re-display all mail messages in "By date ↑" order after using Search Mail, or the Sort or Filter function.</p>

<b>Mail history</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can display the history of sent/received mail from the sender or to the recipient being selected or displayed. Up to 1,000 histories are displayed in the chronological order from the most recent one.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a sender's or destination address.</b></p> <p>The target sent/received mail histories are displayed.</p> <p>◀ . . . . Sent mail ▶ . . . . Received mail</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a history to show the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display. Press (CLR) to return to the former display.</li> <li>• You can display also by pressing (7) on the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display.</li> </ul>
---------------------------------------	--

<b>Color label</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can color the characters on the Inbox list and Outbox list for classifying mail. Select "Default" to set ordinary font color.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a color.</b></p>
--------------------------------------	--

<b>List setting</b>	<p>You can select the item to be displayed on the list. You can also switch between the name stored in the Phonebook and the mail address/phone number for the display in the sender's/destination address field.</p> <p>You can set to list the mail messages by subject depending on the setting of "Mail list display".</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item to be displayed.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can switch each time you press (Change) from the Outbox list and Draft list.</li> </ul>
---------------------	---

<b>Ir/ transmission</b>	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	See page 383.
<b>Send all Ir data</b> [Draft only]	See page 384.
<b> transmission</b>	See page 385.
<b>All transmission</b> [Draft only]	See page 385.

<b>No. of messages</b>	You can display the number of stored received mail messages, sent mail messages and draft mail messages.
------------------------	--

<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Put a check mark for mail messages to be deleted ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES
<b>Delete read mails</b> [Inbox only]	You can delete all the read mail messages in the folder. ▶ YES
<b>Delete all SMS-R</b> [Inbox only]	You can delete all the SMS reports. While SMS reports are displayed by the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed SMS reports are deleted. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ YES
<b>DEL all frm folder</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	You can delete all mail messages in the folder. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b> [Draft only]	You can delete all the draft mail messages. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ YES

<b>Information</b>	
<Edit>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To use "Mail group" for destination addresses, delete all the entered addresses, press (Finish) to complete the deletion, and then re-select the address field.</li> </ul>	
<Protect>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot protect mail messages in the "Trash box" folder.</li> <li>• You cannot compose an i-mode mail message when sent mail messages are saved to the maximum number/size of storage and all of them are protected.</li> </ul>	
<Move to trash>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you move unread mail to the Trash box, it changes to read mail.</li> </ul>	
<Search subject> <Search subject+msg>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even if you set "No title", you cannot search for the i-mode mail whose subject is not entered and displayed as "No title".</li> </ul>	

**Information**

## &lt;Color label&gt;

- Color Label applied to the mail messages is released when they are copied to the microSD card, copied/moved to the UIM, copied/moved from the UIM or sent via infrared rays or iC transmission.
- Color Label applied to the SMS messages on the UIM is released when the UIM is dismounted and then mounted.





**Function Menu of the Detailed Received Mail Display/  
Detailed Sent Mail Display****Reply/forward**

<b>Rep.w/ i-mode mail</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 160.
<b>Rep. w/ Deco-Anime</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 160.
<b>Reply with quote</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 160.
<b>Forward</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 160.
<b>Edit</b> [Sent Mail only]	See page 169.
<b>Resend</b> [Sent Mail only]	You can re-send the sent mail message. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	See page 170.
<b>Move/copy</b>	
<b>Copy</b>	▶ <b>Select an item to be copied.</b> • See page 434 for how to copy. • When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be copied.

<b>Read map</b>	You can display a map by selecting a postal address or others in the mail text. ▶ <b>Select a start point</b> ▶ <b>Select an end point.</b> GPS compatible i-oppli program starts via the selected character string. (See page 212)
<b>Move</b>	▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b>
<b>Move to trash</b> [Received Mail only]	You can move the mail to the "Trash box" folder. The mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted). ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>UIM operation</b>	You can copy or move the mail to the UIM or FOMA terminal. (See page 416)
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 369.
<b>Store in Center</b>	See page 139.

**Operate file**

<b>Save attached file</b>	See page 162.
<b>Save insert image</b>	See page 155.
<b>Save D-pictograms</b> [Received Mail only]	You can save Deco-mail pictograms in the mail text at once. You can save up to 20 of them. ▶ <b>YES</b> • See page 210 when the Deco-mail pictograms are stored to the maximum. • See page 340 for how to check the stored Deco-mail pictograms.
<b>Save as template</b>	You can save the sent/received Deco-mail message as a template. ▶ <b>YES</b> • See page 210 when the templates are stored to the maximum. • See page 154 for how to check the stored template.

<b>Property</b>	You can display the file name and file size of the image inserted into the text. ▶ <b>Select an image.</b>
<b>Delete att. file</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Store</b>	
<b>Store address</b>	See page 94.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94.
<b>Auto-sort</b>	You can store a sender or subject as a sort condition. (See page 175)
<b>Set desktop/  key</b>	
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 32.
<b> long press set.</b>	See page 410.
<b>Mail history</b>	See page 171.
<b>Color label</b>	See page 171.
<b>Display</b>	
<b>Name/address</b>	You can display the sender's/destination address by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address/ phone number. ● You can switch also by pressing <b>(S)</b> .
<b>Scroll</b>	See page 178.
<b>Font size set.</b>	See "Mail" on page 121.
<b>Display SMS report</b> [Sent Mail only]	You can check the result of the SMS message you sent, or the date and time it arrived at the destination. To receive the SMS report, set "SMS report request" to "ON".
<b>Ir/  transmission</b>	
<b>Send Ir data</b>	See page 383.
<b> transmission</b>	See page 385.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b> ● You can delete the mail message also by pressing <b>(O)</b> .

## Information

### <Resend>

- If you re-send a failed-to-send mail message, it is saved as the sent mail message. If you re-send the failed-to-send simultaneous message to all addresses, it is saved as the sent mail message.

### <Save as template>

- You cannot execute this function while a mail message is shown in the multiwindow or when you open the FOMA terminal with a new mail message shown in the Private window.

## <Sent Address> <Received Address>

# Displaying Sent/Received Mail Record





Sent and received i-mode mail messages and SMS messages are stored in Sent Address and Received Address, up to 30 messages each. You can check the list for the mail addresses and phone numbers. When you exchange mail messages with the same mail address or phone number, the older one is deleted.


- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 records for Address A/Number A and Address B/ Number B are stored in Received Address in total.

## 1

### When Using Sent Address

Press and hold **(O)** for at least one second.

-  MAIL : i-mode mail successfully sent
-  SMS : SMS message successfully sent
-  MAIL : i-mode mail failed to be sent
-  SMS : SMS message failed to be sent

 : Time-difference corrected time

- Press **MENU** (**Change**) from the Sent Address list to display Redial. When the Sent Address list is displayed from Dialed Calls, you can press **MENU** (**Change**) to display Dialed Calls.
- You cannot display the Sent Address list even by pressing and holding **(O)** for at least one second from the horizontal Stand-by display.

Sent address 1/2	
11/18 10:00	MAIL
Docomo taro: Abdocomo	
11/17 23:00	MAIL
090XXXXXXXX	
11/17 19:00	MAIL
Docomo Taro	


Sent Address list


## When Using Received Address




Press and hold  for at least one second.

 : i-mode mail

 : SMS message

 : Time-difference corrected time







 : i-mode mail message/SMS received to Address B/  
Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

- Press  () from the Received Address list to display Received Calls.
- You cannot display the Received Address list even by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the horizontal Stand-by display.



## 2 Select a record to be displayed.

The detailed display of the Address list is displayed.

- With an SMS message for which the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- To send i-mode mail to the displayed address, press  () and go to step 3 on page 146. To send an SMS message to the displayed phone number, press  () and go to step 3 on page 189.
- To store in the Phonebook, press  (). Go to step 2 on page 94.

## Function Menu while Sent/Received Address is Displayed

<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message. The mail address is entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 146.
<b>Compose SMS</b>	You can compose an SMS message. The phone number is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 on page 189.

## Dialing

When the mail address is stored in a Phonebook entry, you can make a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call to the phone number stored in the Phonebook.

### ▶ Select a dialing type.

- When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to the other party during a videophone call. To cancel the setting, select "Release".
- When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, you can dial the first phone number.



### ▶ Dial

- The set item is indicated by "★".
- To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist", select an international call access code, and follow the procedure above after selecting "Dialing" from the Function menu. (See page 61)
- To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 of "Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call" on page 59)

## Feel \* Mail

[Received Address only]

The Feel \* Mail image is played back. See page 180 for Feel \* Mail.

- You can play back the Feel \* mail image also by pressing  ().

## Change font size

You can switch the font sizes for Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, and Received Address. (See "Dialed/recv. calls" on page 122)

## Redial/Dialed calls

[Sent Address only]

You can display the Redial list or the Dialed Call list.


## Received calls

[Received Address only]

You can display the Received Call list. All received calls (all calls) are displayed.

## Set desktop/ key

**Add desktop icon** See page 32.

 **long press set.** See page 410.

## Delete



Delete this	▶ YES
Delete selected	▶ Put a check mark for records to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

<Auto-sort>

## Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder

You can automatically save the mail messages that satisfy the set conditions to the specified folder. This function applies to only the added folders and i-appli mail folders.

### 1 Inbox Folder list/Outbox Folder list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Sort ▶ Auto-sort

Follow the operation of the Function menu list on page 176 to set "Auto-sort". If you select a folder for which Auto-sort conditions have been set, the Auto-sort Setting display appears.

### Auto-sort Storing

You can specify a sort condition and folder from the detailed Sent/Received Mail display.

### 1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Store ▶ Auto-sort ▶ Do the following operations.

<b>Address sort</b>	You can set the displayed sender's/recipient's address for a sorting condition. ▶ Select a folder. • When multiple addresses are found, select an address.
<b>Subject sort</b>	You can edit the displayed subject and set it for a sorting condition. ▶ Edit the subject ▶ Select a folder.

### To change the condition

The confirmation display appears asking whether to change the condition or to overwrite it. Select "YES" to release the set condition and set the new one.

### When the same condition is set for another folder

The confirmation display appears asking whether to change the condition. Select "YES" to release the condition set for another folder and to set it for the selected folder.

- You cannot change the setting for a Mail-Security-activated folder.

### When storing another address for the folder set for "Address sort"



The confirmation display appears asking whether to add the address.




### Information

- You can store a total of 700 addresses in all folders.
- When multiple conditions match, sorting is done in the priority below.
  - ① i-appli mail sort
  - ② Subject sort
  - ③ Reply impossible/Send impossible
  - ④ Address sort (Look-up address/Enter address)
  - ⑤ Address sort (Look-up mail group)
  - ⑥ Address sort (Look-up group)
  - ⑦ Sort all
- Mail messages sent simultaneously to multiple members cannot be sorted by "Address sort" or "Send impossible".
- Area Mail messages are not sorted by "Address sort".

## Function Menu of the Auto-sort Setting Display

### Address sort

<b>Look-up address</b>	You can look up a mail address or phone number in the Phonebook or Received/Sent Address and set it to the folder for sorting. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. <b>Received address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ). <b>Sent address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ).
<b>Look-up group</b>	You can set a group to be sorted into the folder. ▶ <b>Select a group.</b>
<b>Look-up mail group</b>	You can set a mail group to be sorted into the folder. ▶ <b>Select a mail group.</b>
<b>Enter address</b>	You can directly enter a mail address or phone number to be sorted into the folder. ▶ <b>Enter a mail address or phone number.</b> ● You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. ● When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", enter the phone number only. You can sort SMS messages as well if you enter the phone number only.
<b>Subject sort</b>	You can enter the subject of i-mode mail messages to be sorted into the folder. One subject can be set per folder. ▶ <b>Enter a subject.</b> ● You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.
<b>Reply impossible</b>	You can set reply-disabled mail messages to be sorted. You can set for only one folder.
<b>Send impossible</b>	You can set failed-to-send mail messages to be sorted. You can set for only one folder.
<b>Sort all</b>	You can set all mail messages to be sorted.

 <b>i-appli mail sort</b>	You can set to sort all mail messages into the i-appli mail folder. You can set this for only one i-appli mail folder each in the Inbox and Outbox. When "i-appli mail sort" is set, other sort settings are disabled. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Edit addr/subj</b>	You can edit and store the mail address, phone number, and subject set for the folder. ▶ <b>Edit the mail address, phone number or subject.</b>
<b>List setting</b>	You can switch whether to display the destinations by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address or phone number. ▶ <b>Name or Address</b> ● You can switch also by pressing  ( <b>Change</b> ).
<b>Release</b>	
<b>Release this</b>	You can release the sort condition. (The item is deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Release selected</b>	You can select mail addresses or phone numbers, and release the sort condition for them. (The items are deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.) ▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail addresses or phone numbers to be released</b> ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> ) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Release all</b>	You can release all sort conditions. (The items are deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.) ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Information

#### <Look-up group>

- On the Auto-sort Setting display, "GR" is added to the top of the name.
- You cannot set groups on the UIM.
- The secret mail messages received in ordinary mode (not in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only") are not sorted into the folder.

#### <Look-up mail group>

- On the Auto-sort Setting display, " " is added to the top of the mail group name.

## Information

### <Subject sort>

- When the subject matches sort conditions for multiple folders, it is sorted to the folder nearest to the "Inbox" folder or "Outbox" folder.
- Even if you set "No title", the i-mode mail titled with "No title" because of no entry cannot be sorted.
- SMS messages cannot be sorted by subject.

### <Sort all>

- You cannot sort SMS reports or SMS messages that have been directly received on the UIM.

## While you are using 2in1

You can set sort conditions with a combination of ordinary sort conditions and sort conditions by Address A/Address B of 2in1 (2in1 sort setting). You can set/check the 2in1 sort in Dual Mode. The sort conditions you set are valid in all modes of 2in1. When you newly specify sort conditions and select an item from the Function menu list on page 176, the display for specifying Address A/Address B appears. You can set the 2in1 sort also from the Auto-sort Setting display.

Default . . . . . Does not specify sorts by Address A/Address B.

Address A . . . Specifies sorts by messages received to/sent from Address A.

Address B . . . Specifies sorts by messages received to/sent from Address B.

- You can set only one type of the 2in1 sort to a folder.
- You can set the same sort conditions to "Address A" and "Address B". However, the sort conditions you have set to Address B are automatically cancelled when you deactivate "2in1 setting".
- The 2in1 sort setting is set to "Default" when you newly specify a sort condition in A Mode/B Mode of 2in1.
- You can show only the sort conditions of "Address A" and "Default" in A Mode, and those of "Address B" and "Default" in B Mode of 2in1. Even if you edit the sort conditions, the 2in1 sort setting is not changed.
- When you execute "Auto-sort" from the detailed mail display, you cannot select a folder to which you have set a 2in1 mail address which differs from that of the displayed mail message, as a sorting destination.
- The 2in1 sort setting is set to "Default" when you newly specify a sort condition by "Auto-sort" from the detailed mail display.

## <Mail Group>

MENU 2 6

# Creating Mail Group




You can store mail addresses by group. You can send mail to regular destinations.

You can store up to five addresses per group, and up to 20 groups.

- 1  Phonebook  
 Phonebook settings  Mail group  
 Select a Mail Group to be stored.



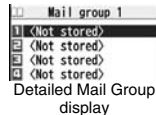
Mail Group list

- When mail addresses are stored in a Mail group,  appears at the lower left of the display. Press  () to compose i-mode mail to a selected Mail group set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 146.

- 2 Highlight <Not stored> and press



- If you select a stored mail address, the Mail Group Address Confirmation display appears.




Detailed Mail Group display


- 3 Enter a mail address.

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
- When you store multiple mail addresses, repeat step 2 and step 3.




## Function Menu of the Mail Group List

**Compose message** You can compose an i-mode mail message to the Mail group. Go to step 3 on page 146.

**Edit group name**  Enter a name of the Mail group.  
• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.

**Reset group name** You can reset the name of Mail group to the default.  
 YES



## Function Menu of the Detailed Mail Group Display/Mail Group Address Confirmation Display






<b>Edit address</b>	Go to step 3 on page 177. ● You can edit the address also by pressing  ( <b>Edit</b> ).
<b>Look-up address</b>	You can call up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. <b>Sent address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ). <b>Received address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ).
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>


&lt;Mail Settings&gt;

## Setting Mail and Messages R/F

1  ▶ **Mail settings** ▶ **Do the following operations.**

<b>Scroll</b>	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled at a time for when you press  from the detailed mail display, detailed Message R/F display, Message Composition display and preview display. ▶ <b>Select the number of lines.</b>
<b>Font size setting</b>	See "Mail" on page 121.
<b>Mail list display</b>	You can set items to be displayed on the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list by using radio buttons or check boxes. ▶ <b>Select a display format</b> ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> )
<b>Message display</b>	You can set whether to display received mail in standard display (from the top) or from the text. ▶ <b>Standard or From message</b>

<b>Mail security</b>	See page 136.
<b>Secret mail display</b>	See page 136.
<b>Auto color label</b>	You can specify the text color of the sender, received date/time and others on the Inbox list by mail address. You can store up to 10 items. ▶ <b>&lt;Not stored&gt;</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. <b>Sent address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ). <b>Received address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ). <b>Enter address</b> . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number. ● To change the set color, press  ( <b>FUNC</b> ) and select "Select color". ● To delete the set item, press  ( <b>FUNC</b> ) and select "Delete" → "Delete this" or "Delete all" and select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶ <b>Select a color.</b>
<b>Pred. conv. at reply</b>	You can set whether to preferentially display the words contained in the subject and text of the received mail message as conversion candidates when you reply to, reply with quote to, or forward it. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Header/signature</b>	See page 179.
<b>Set check new messages</b>	You can select items to be checked from among i-mode mail, Message R and Message F, for when you perform "Check new messages". ▶ <b>Put a check mark for the items to be checked</b> ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> )
<b>Auto-display</b>	See page 181.

<b>Receiving display</b>	You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays, even during operation of another function. ▶ <b>Alarm preferred or Operation preferred</b> <b>Alarm preferred</b> ... Prioritizes the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays when you have new mail. <b>Operation preferred</b> ... Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail.
<b>Receive option setting</b>	See page 159.
<b>Attachment preference</b>	You can set whether to receive the attached file with an i-mode mail message. The attached files for which you remove a check mark are held at the i-mode Center. (Even when you put a check mark, if attached files exceed 100 Kbytes, all or part of attached files are held at the i-mode Center.) ▶ <b>Put a check mark for items to be received</b>  (Finish) • Put a check mark for "Tool data" to receive Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, and bookmarks. • Put a check mark for "Other" to receive movie files, document files, and files unsupported by the FOMA terminal.
<b>Auto-start attachment</b>	You can set whether to play back the attached or pasted melodies or sound effect automatically for when you display the text of mail, or message R/F. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Feel * Mail</b>	See page 180.
<b>Chat setting</b>	See page 188.
<b>Check settings</b>	You can check each of "Mail settings".

### Information

#### <Message display>

- Even if "From message" is set, the message might not be displayed from the text depending on the number of characters in the text.

#### <Auto color label>

- Even when you set this function, the text color of the mail message already received does not change.

### Information

#### <Set check new messages>

- If you do not want to receive Messages R and Messages F by "Check new messages", change these settings to "".

#### <Auto-start attachment>

- You cannot play back attached or pasted melodies or sound effect during Play Background regardless of the setting of "Auto-start attachment".


## Header/Signature

You can store a header, signature and quotation mark. Also, you can set whether to automatically paste the header or signature.

### 1 ▶ Mail settings ▶ Header/signature ▶ Do the following operations.


#### Header

The header is the sentence such as greeting at the beginning of the text.

- ▶ **Select the header field** ▶ **Enter a header**  (Finish)
- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters.
- If you do not want the header to be pasted automatically, select "Insert" to change "" to "". See page 148 for adding a header by mail message.

#### Signature

The signature is your name and other information, placed at the end of the text.

- ▶ **Select the signature field** ▶ **Enter a signature**  
 (Finish)
- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters.
- If you do not want the signature to be pasted automatically, select "Insert" to change "" to "". See page 148 for adding a signature by mail message.
- You can set respective signatures for Address A and Address B of 2in1. In Dual Mode of 2in1, select a signature to be set from "Address A" or "Address B".
- If you put a check mark for "Insert", the signature for Address A or Address B is automatically pasted according to the mode of 2in1. In Dual Mode, the corresponding signature is automatically pasted when sender's address is set. Even if you switch sender's addresses, the pasted signature is not automatically switched.



- Quotation marks** The quotation mark is the symbol indicating a quotation from received mail for when you reply to mail.
- ▶ **Enter a quotation mark.**
  - You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.

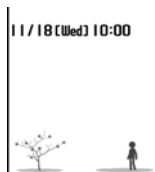
### Information

- You can set decorations in a header and signature.
- Even if you have put a check mark for "Insert", the header and signature cannot be pasted when you compose i-mode mail from a template or i-oppli.
- You cannot paste the header, signature, and quotation marks to Decome-Anime messages and SMS messages.

### Feel \* Mail

Feel \* Mail reproduces the atmosphere of a mail message by actions of 45 types of animated characters. Once you activate Feel \* Mail, a Feel \* Mail image is played back after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message.

- To end the playback, press  or .



- 1**  ▶ **Mail settings** ▶ **Feel \* Mail**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

- Disp. /play new one** A Feel \* Mail image is played back after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message.
- ▶ **ON or OFF**
  - When this function is set to "OFF", a Feel \* Mail icon does not appear on the Received Address list/detailed Received Address display, the Inbox list, and the detailed Received Mail display even while "Disp. /play in history" is set to "ON".



- Disp. /play in history** A Feel \* Mail icon appears on the Received Address list/detailed Received Address display, the Inbox list, or the detailed Received Mail display.
- ▶ **ON or OFF**

### <Receive Message R/F>



## Receiving Messages R/F Automatically

Message services automatically deliver information you want to your FOMA terminal.







When the FOMA terminal is in the service area, Messages R/F automatically arrive from the i-mode Center.

When a Message R/F arrives, "  (yellow)" or "  (yellow)" appears at the top of the display.

You can save up to 100 each of received Messages R/F.

- 1** When a Message R/F arrives, "  (yellow)" or "  (yellow)" blinks and the message telling its arrival appears.

After the message is received, the number of received mail messages and Messages R/F is displayed.







- You can display the Message R/F list by selecting "MessageR" or "MessageF".
- If "Auto-display" is set to other than "OFF", the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed. They are displayed for about 15 seconds.
- If no keys are pressed for the specified duration, "  " or "  " (see page 30) appears on the desktop and the former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)
- Press , highlight "  " or "  ", and press  to display the Message R/F list.
- See page 34 for when the FOMA terminal is closed.



### Information

- Received Messages R/F are not automatically displayed while a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, while an i-oppli program is running, during Public mode (Drive mode), during Lock All, or during Personal Data Lock.

## Information

- When the Messages R/F exceed the maximum number/size of storage, they are deleted from the oldest one. However, unread or protected Messages R/F are not deleted.
- When the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more Messages R/F, “ (dark blue)” or “ (dark blue)” is displayed. Delete unnecessary Messages R/F, read unread Messages R/F or release protection.
- When the icon “ (yellow)” or “ (yellow)” is displayed, the i-mode Center holds Messages R/F. When the icon “ (dark blue)” or “ (dark blue)” is displayed, the i-mode Center can hold no more Messages R/F. Perform “Check new messages” to receive them.
- Even after Messages R/F are displayed automatically, they are still displayed as unread ones in the Message R/F list. However, if you scroll through the messages during automatic display, they will be indicated as read ones.
- Messages R/F received in the following cases are held at the i-mode Center:
  - When the power is off
    - During a videophone call
  - During Self Mode
    - When you are out of the service area
  - During infrared communication
    - While connecting to the FirstPass Center
  - During PushTalk communication
    - During Omakase Lock
  - During iC communication
    - During copy to microSD
  - While connecting to the Data Storage Center
  - When the space for Messages R/F is full with protected or unread messages

## Auto-display

You can set how to automatically display Messages R/F received during standby or a voice call.

- 1  Mail settings ▶ Auto-display  
▶ Select an option for automatic display.









## Information

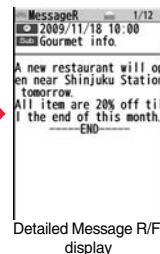
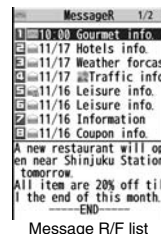
- When you receive Messages R/F during a voice call, the message is displayed automatically after the call ends.
- The Messages R/F are not displayed automatically when “Mail security” is set for “Inbox”, or when “Mail security” is set for “MessageR” folder or “MessageF” folder.

## <Display Message R/F>

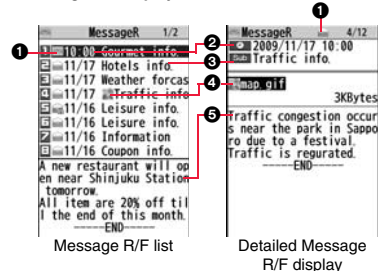
# Reading Received Messages R/F

- 1  Inbox ▶ MessageR or MessageF  
▶ Select a Message R/F to be displayed.

- When you select an unread Message R/F, “ (pink)” changes to “”.
- Use  to check other Messages R/F.
- When the text of Message R/F is long, use  to scroll the display to check it. Also, you can press  (Page ▲) /  (Page ▼) or  /  to scroll page by page.





## ■ Message R/F list and detailed Message R/F display



## ① Status of Message R/F

“” appears when protection is set.







 (pink)	Unread Message R/F
	Read Message R/F

**2 Received date and time**

The list shows the time for the Message R/F received today, and shows the date for the Message R/F received until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the Message R/F was received.

**3 Subject****4 The data attached or pasted**

The detailed display shows the data volume.


	Valid melody file
	Valid image file
	Valid ToruCa file
	Multiple attached files
	Multiple pasted files
	File with the UIM security

**5 Text of message**

The phone number stored in the Phonebook is displayed by the name stored in the Phonebook.


## Function Menu of the Message R/F List

**Protect**

<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	You can protect a Message R/F not to be overwritten or deleted. You can protect up to 50 messages (Message R and Message F each). Protected messages are indicated by "  ". ● To release protection, perform the same operation.
<b>Unprotect all</b>	▶ YES

**Search/sort**

<b>Sort</b>	You can rearrange the displaying order. ▶ <b>Select a displaying order.</b>
<b>Filter</b>	You can display only Messages R/F that satisfy the condition. ▶ <b>Select a displaying type.</b>

<b>Display all</b>	After you execute "Sort" or "Filter", you can reset it and list all Messages R/F by "By date ↑".
<b>No. of messages</b>	You can display the total number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA terminal, as well as the number of unread messages and protected messages.
<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for Messages R/F to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES
<b>Delete read mails</b>	You can delete all read Messages R/F. ▶ YES
<b>DEL all frm folder</b>	You can delete all Messages R/F. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ YES

**Information****<Search/sort>**

- To return to the former status, execute "Display all".
- If you close the list and re-open it, you can return to the list of all items.

## Function Menu of the Detailed Message R/F Display

<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	See page 182.
<b>Operate file</b>	
<b>Save attached file</b>	You can save attached or pasted files. (See page 162)
<b>Save insert image</b>	You can save the attached image and set it as the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display. (See page 155)
<b>Save BG image</b>	▶ YES ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 3 on page 208.
<b>Save D-pictograms</b>	You can save the all Deco-mail pictograms inserted into the text. (See page 172)



Add to phonebook See page 94.

Delete ► YES

## Early Warning “Area Mail”

This service enables you to receive reports such as emergency earthquake alerts distributed from the Japan Meteorological Agency.




- You can receive Area Mail messages without i-mode contract.
  - You cannot receive Area Mail messages in the following cases※1:
    - During Omakase Lock
    - During Self Mode
    - During international roaming
    - During a voice call
    - During a videophone call
    - While copying data files between FOMA terminal and the microSD card
    - During infrared communication
    - During iC communication
    - When you are out of the service area
    - When the power is off
  - You might not be able to receive Area Mail messages in the following cases※1※2:
    - During i-mode communication
    - During data communication
    - During PushTalk communication
    - While accessing the Data Storage Center
    - While updating software program
    - While updating the pattern data
- ※1 You cannot receive the message once you failed to receive it.  
※2 Even when you could receive it, the contents are not automatically displayed.
- The contents are not automatically displayed when you receive them in the following cases:
    - During Public mode (Drive mode)  
(When “Manner/Public mode set” is set to “Follow each mode set.”.)
    - While operating the microSD card
    - During streaming playback of i-motion file or movie file

## Receiving Early Warning “Area Mail”

When an Area Mail message arrives, the ring tone for Area Mail sounds. “Ring volume”, “Ring time”, and “Vibrator” follows the settings of “Mail”. When an emergency earthquake alert arrives, a dedicated buzzer (alert) sounds, and the vibrator works to notify you. Further, the contents are automatically displayed. “Ring volume” is fixed to “Level 4”, and “Vibrator” is fixed to “Melody linkage”, so you cannot change their settings. You can use “Area mail settings” to set “Beep time”. Up to 30 Area Mail messages are saved separately from i-mode mail messages and SMS messages in the Inbox.

- Just after purchase, the buzzer sounds and the vibrator works regardless of the setting of Manner Mode or Public mode (Drive mode) because “Manner/Public mode set” is set to “Ring”.

**1** When an Area Mail message arrives, “

- If you press any key, the former display returns.
- The contents of some Area Mail messages might be automatically displayed when you receive them. To clear it, press , , or .
- See page 162 for displaying Area Mail messages.

### Information

- When a new Area Mail message comes in with 30 Area Mail messages saved, they are deleted from the read oldest one. When all 30 messages are not read, they are deleted from the oldest one.
- Whether the details of a received Area Mail message are displayed or not depends on the setting by the Area Mail message provider.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, you may not be able to receive Area Mail messages.

## &lt;Early Warning "Area Mail" Settings&gt;

## Setting Early Warning "Area Mail"

1  ▶ Area mail settings ▶ Do the following operations.

<b>Receive setting</b>	You can set whether to use Area Mail. ▶ <b>Yes or No</b>
<b>Beep time</b>	You can set the duration the beep sounds. ▶ <b>Enter a beep time (seconds).</b> ● Enter it in two digit, from "01" through "30".
<b>Manner/Public mode set</b>	You can set an operation for when an Area Mail message is received in Manner Mode or Public mode (Drive mode). ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Ring . . .</b> The buzzer or ring tone sounds, and the vibrator works regardless of the setting of Manner Mode or Public mode (Drive mode). <b>Follow each mode set.</b> . . . . . Follows the setting of Manner Mode or Public mode (Drive mode).
<b>Check ring tone</b>	You can check how the buzzer, ring tone, vibrator, and Call/Charging indicator work for when "Quake Early Warning" or "Disaster/Evacuation" is received. ▶ <b>Quake Early Warning or Disaster/Evacuation</b>
<b>Other menu</b>	

**Receive entry**


You can register Message IDs for receiving information other than Quake Early Warning and Disaster/Evacuation. You can register up to 20 IDs.

● You do not need to operate "Receive entry" for receiving only Quake Early Warning and Disaster/Evacuation.

▶ **<New> ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code**

▶ **Enter a registration name ▶ Enter a Message ID.**

● To edit a registered Message ID, highlight it, press

 **Edit** ), and then enter your Terminal Security Code.

● You can enter up to 15 full-pitch/30 half-pitch characters for an arbitrary registration name. For a Message ID, enter 4 half-pitch characters specified by the service provider.

● You can edit it also by selecting "Edit" from the Function menu. Select "Delete this" or "Delete all" and enter your Terminal Security Code. Then you can delete one or all Message IDs.

You cannot edit/delete "Quake Early Warning" and "Disaster/Evacuation".

**Information****<Receive entry>**

● The buzzer does not sound when you receive a quake early warning when "Follow each mode set." is set with the manner setting by "Manner mode" or "Super silent". However, the buzzer sounds with "Original" set to sound any of the following tones.

When every setting is set to mute, the buzzer does not sound:

- Phone volume      · Mail volume      · Alarm volume
- Memo tone          · Keypad sound

● Even when "Follow each mode set." is set and "Vibrator" of "Original" is set to "OFF", the vibrator works if you receive a quake early warning.

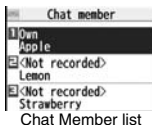
## Using Chat Mail

You can send or receive chat mail messages to and from multiple persons on a single display. To use Chat Mail, you need to store chat members. You can easily store them by creating chat groups.

### Store Chat Members

You can store up to six chat members including the user (yourself).

- 1 Chat mail ( FUNC )
- ▶ Chat member <Not recorded>**
- ▶ Enter a mail address.**



- To edit a stored member, select the member.
- When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.
- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

#### Information

- If you edit the mail address of the stored member, the member's name and image are changed.

### Function Menu of the Chat Member List

- Edit** You can edit the mail address.  
Go to step 1 on page 185.

#### Refer address

- You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Received Address, or Sent Address to enter it.
- ▶ Select an item.**
- Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.
- Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press (Select).
- Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press (Select).


#### Change member

##### Chat group

- You can store the members stored in a chat group as chat members.
- ▶ Group list or Member list**
- Group list** . . . . . You can select members by chat group.
- Member list** . . . . . You can select members from all the members stored in chat groups.
- If you select "Group list", select a chat group. The members from the selected group are stored.
  - If you select "Member list", check the members you want to store and press (Finish).
  - If you have already stored chat members, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all the chat members.

##### Mail group

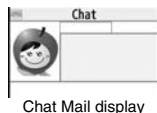
- You can store the mail addresses stored in Mail group as chat members.
- ▶ Select a Mail group.**
- If you have already stored chat members, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all the chat members.

<b>Display setting</b>	You can check the chat member's name, image, background color, and mail address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can press  to switch members.</li> <li>The mail address of the user (yourself) is not displayed.</li> </ul>
------------------------	--

<b>Delete</b>	
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ YES

## Exchange Chat Mail Messages

### 1 Chat mail



Chat Mail display

### 2 (Select) Enter characters.

- You can enter up to 250 full-pitch/500 half-pitch characters.



### 3 Press (Send).

- The chat mail message is sent.
- The sent chat mail message is displayed at the top of the Chat Mail display.



### 4 The display for receiving chat mail appears and a chat mail message is received.


- The received chat mail message is displayed at the top of the Chat Mail display.
- Repeat step 2 through step 4 to send and receive chat mail messages.



## 5 YES OR NO

- YES** . . . . You can delete read and sent chat mail message from the "Chat" folder.
- NO** . . . . You do not delete read and sent chat mail message from the "Chat" folder.

Chat Mail ends.

- You can end Chat Mail also by pressing .
- When no sent and received chat mail messages are found, the confirmation display does not appear.

### ■ Chat Mail display

#### 1 Image

The image you have stored in Chat Group is displayed.



#### 2 Member name

The chat member's name store in the chat group is displayed. Also, the name is displayed with a specified background color.

- When the name is not stored in the chat group, up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the mail address are displayed. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch/eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name are displayed.

#### 3 Broadcast mark


Displayed when the chat mail message set with multiple addresses is received.

-  (blue): All addresses are stored in Chat Member.
-  (dark blue): Addresses that are not stored in Chat Member are found.

#### 4 Sent/Received date and time

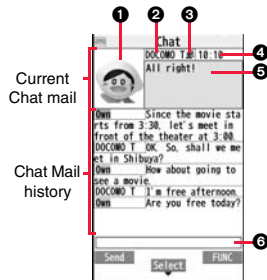
The date and time the chat mail message was sent/received are displayed. The time is displayed for the chat mail messages sent/received today and the date for the chat mail messages sent/received until yesterday.

#### 5 Text

The text of chat mail message is displayed. The number of characters of the text to be displayed is up to 250 full-pitch/500 half-pitch characters. If the text exceeds four lines,  is displayed and you can switch the pages by pressing



- You cannot switch the page of the text on the Chat Mail history.
- The text of the chat mail message successfully sent is displayed in black. The text of the chat mail message failed to be sent is displayed in gray.




## Input box

Entered characters (characters to send) are displayed from the beginning by a factor of one line.

### Information

- The communication fee for when you send chat mail messages to multiple chat members is the same as for sending a chat mail message to one member. (However, the information volume for the added address increases the communication fee.)
- When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you cannot exchange chat mail messages.
- When the Inbox is full of unread or protected mail messages, you cannot exchange chat mail messages. Delete unnecessary mail messages or read unread mail messages, or release the protection and then operate.
- Attached files or pasted data are not displayed.
- Sent/Received chat mail messages are saved to the "Chat" folder.
- The subject of a sent chat mail message is "チャットメール (chat mail)" (half-pitch characters).
- Even when the chat mail text on the Chat Mail display contains the phone number, mail address, or URL, the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions are not available. However, those functions will be available when Chat Mail is finished and chat mail message is brought up from the "Inbox" or "Outbox".
- During playing back a music file by MUSIC Player, a tone for the chat mail message does not sound.
- In B mode of 2in1, you cannot use Chat Mail.

## If You Receive Chat Mail during Standby

When a chat mail message arrives during standby, " " appears on the desktop.

Press , highlight " ", and press  (Select); then Chat Mail starts up.

### Information

- Messages are recognized as chat mail messages in the following cases:
  - When the sender's address or destination address is stored in Chat Member or in a chat group
  - When the subject contains "チャットメール (chat mail)" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters)
- Even when you receive a chat mail message from a member of a chat group other than Chat Member while Chat Mail is running, " " appears.

## If you start Chat Mail from the desktop or Chat Group

If you start Chat Mail from a mail address or from a chat group that is not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete stored member and start Chat Mail.

Select "YES"; then the current chat members are deleted and the sender's mail address or chat group members are stored in Chat Member.



### If you start Chat Mail from the desktop

The sender's mail address is stored in Chat Member. When the sender's mail address has been stored in a chat group, the members in that chat group are stored in Chat Member. However, the mail address selected as the destination is only the mail address of the sender.

### If you start Chat Mail from Chat Group

The chat group members are stored in Chat Member. All members of the group are selected as the destination.

## Function Menu of the Chat Mail Display

<b>Send</b>	You can send the chat mail message.
<b>Select receiver</b>	From among chat members, you can select destination addresses to send the chat mail messages to. ▶ Put a check mark for destination addresses to send the messages to  (Finish)
<b>Chat member</b>	You can store chat members. (See page 185)
<b>Broadcast address</b>	You can check the destination addresses you have simultaneously sent a chat mail message to. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When there are destination addresses that are not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them in Chat Member. If you store them in Chat Member, select "YES" and put a check mark for the destination addresses to be stored and press  (Finish).</li></ul>
<b>Reload</b>	You can receive chat mail messages that you could not automatically receive. If you receive a new chat mail message, the Chat Mail display is updated.
<b>View first line</b>	You can display the latest chat mail message.
<b>View last line</b>	You can display the oldest chat mail message.

- Delete read mails** You can delete all the received read chat mail messages and sent chat mail messages including secret mail and chat mail messages failed to send.
- ▶ YES

### Information

#### <Broadcast address>

- You can store up to six members (including yourself) in Chat Member.

## Chat Setting

- 1**  ▶ Mail settings ▶ Chat setting  
▶ Do the following operations.

- Sound setting** You can set a tone for when you send/receive a chat mail message on the Chat Mail display.
- ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a tone.
- The tone does not sound when a chat mail message comes in from a member not stored in Chat Member.
- Chat image** You can set whether to display images on the Chat Mail display.
- ▶ ON or OFF
- User setting** You can set the name and image of the user (yourself).
- ▶ Select the name field ▶ Enter a user name.
- You can enter up to four full-pitch/eight half-pitch characters.
  - If you do not change the user name, go to the next step.
- ▶ Select the image field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image.

## <Chat Group>

MENU 2 6

# Creating Chat Group


You can store the mail addresses you want to exchange chat mail per group.

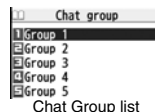
By storing multiple members in a group, you can set them as chat members at a time.


You can store up to five mail addresses per group. You can create up to five groups.

- 1**  ▶ Phonebook  
▶ Phonebook settings ▶ Chat group  
▶ Select a chat group to be stored.

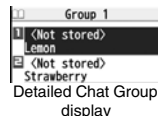
- When the selected chat group has any member, "CHAT" appears at the lower left of the display.

If you press  (CHAT), Chat group members are stored in Chat Member and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 186.



- 2** Highlight <Not stored> and press  (Edit).

- If you select a stored mail address, the Chat Group Address Confirmation display appears.







- 3** Enter a mail address.

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
- When the entered mail address is stored in the Phonebook, and the image is stored in the Phonebook, the image is also set.
- When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.
- When you store multiple mail addresses, repeat step 2 and step 3.

## Function Menu of the Chat Group List

- Activate chat** The members in the chat group are stored as chat members and Chat Mail starts.
- Go to step 2 on page 186.

<b>Edit group name</b>	<p>▶ Enter a chat group name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Reset group name</b>	<p>You can reset the name of the chat group to the default.</p> <p>▶ YES</p>
<b>Function Menu of the Detailed Chat Group Display/Chat Group Address Confirmation Display</b>	
<b>Edit</b>	<p>You can edit the mail address.</p> <p>Go to step 3 on page 188.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can edit also by pressing  <b>Edit</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Refer address</b>	<p>You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Phonebook</b> . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</p> <p><b>Sent address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  <b>Select</b>.</p> <p><b>Received address</b> . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  <b>Select</b>.</p>
<b>Change member</b>	<p>You can store members from a Mail group in the chat group.</p> <p>▶ <b>Mail group</b> ▶ <b>Select a Mail group.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you have already stored members in the chat group, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all the members.</li> </ul>
<b>Member setting</b>	<p>You can set the member's name and image. You can switch members by pressing .</p> <p>▶ <b>Select the member name field</b> ▶ <b>Enter a member's name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to four full-pitch/eight half-pitch characters.</li> <li>• Not to change the member's name, go to the next step.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select the picture field</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b></p>
<b>Delete</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

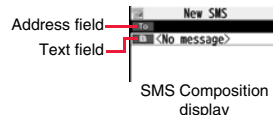
## <Compose SMS>

# Composing and Sending SMS



You can compose and send SMS messages. You can save up to 1,000 sent SMS messages including I-mode mail messages to the Outbox.

- You can send and receive SMS messages to and from subscribers of overseas carriers other than DOCOMO. For the countries and overseas carriers available for the service, refer to the DOCOMO Global Service website.
- You can move/copy the sent SMS messages to the UIM. (See page 415)


## 1 Compose SMS



## 2 Select the address field ▶ Select an item.

- Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number.
- Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number and press .
- Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number and press .
- Enter address** . . . . . Enter a phone number.

Only one address can be specified.

- You can enter up to 21 digits (including "+").
- When the address is that of overseas carriers other than DOCOMO, enter "+" (press and hold  for at least one second), "country/area code", and "destination mobile phone number" in that order. When the mobile phone number begins with "0", enter the phone number except for the "0". Also, you can enter "010", "country/area code", and "destination mobile phone number" in that order to send SMS messages. (When you reply to SMS messages received from overseas, enter "010".)

## 3 Select the text field ▶ Enter text.

- The number of characters you can enter differs depending on the "SMS input character".


## 4 Press **Send**.

The animation display during transmission appears and mail is sent.

### Information

- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be sent successfully to the destination.
- When the sent mail messages exceed the maximum number/size of storage, they are deleted from the oldest one. However, protected sent mail messages are not deleted.
- You cannot compose an SMS message when sent mail messages in the Outbox are saved to the maximum number/size of storage and all of them are protected, when 20 draft mail messages are saved, or when the Draft is full.  
Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
- Even if "Activate/Deactivate" of "Caller ID notification" is set to "Deactivate", the caller ID is notified to the other party you send an SMS message to. If you attempt to send an SMS message to the phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
- If you set "SMS report request" to "ON", you cannot send SMS messages to the i-mode phone of the mova service.
- "+" is valid only at the beginning of the address.
- You cannot send the message to addresses that include any characters other than numbers, "#", "\*", and "+".
- You cannot start a new line while editing the text.
- The special symbols (see page 501) are replaced by half-pitch spaces.
- Each space is counted as a character.
- You cannot reply to the SMS message whose sender is User unset/PublicPhone/Unavailable.
- In B Mode of 2in1, you cannot compose SMS messages.

### Function Menu of the SMS Composition Display

<b>Send</b>	You can send the SMS message. Go to step 5 on page 190.
<b>Preview</b>	Before sending, you can check the address and the text contents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  (Send) to send the SMS message.</li> </ul>

<b>Save</b>	You can save the SMS message you are composing or editing to the Draft. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save the message when the address field and text field are blank.</li> </ul>
<b>SMS report req.</b>	See page 191.
<b>SMS valid. per.</b>	See page 191.
<b>SMS input char.</b>	See page 192.

<Receive SMS>





## Receiving SMS Automatically

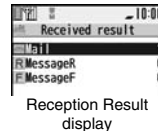
You can save up to 2,500 received SMS messages including i-mode mail messages.

- You can move/copy the received SMS messages to the UIM. (See page 415)



### 1 When an SMS message arrives, " (pink) " lights and the message telling its arrival appears.

When receiving ends, the display shows the number of received SMS messages.

- You can display the Inbox list by selecting "Mail".
- If no keys are pressed for about 15 seconds, "  " (see page 30) appears on the desktop and the former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)  
Press , highlight "  ", and press  (Select) to display the Inbox list.
- See page 34 for when the FOMA terminal is closed.




### Information

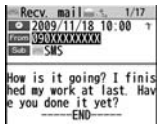
- When the unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum number/size of storage, no new messages can be received and "  (dark blue) " is displayed. To receive SMS messages, delete mail in the Inbox or read unread mail or release protection until "  (dark blue) " clears, and then perform "Check new SMS".
- When you receive concatenated SMS messages, they are displayed on the Inbox list in order of arrival at the FOMA terminal.




## Display Newly Received SMS Messages

### 1 Reception Result display ▶ Mail ▶ Select an SMS message to be displayed.

- Press and hold  for at least one second from the detailed SMS display to change the size of characters. (See "Mail" on page 121)



#### Information

- Depending on the characters entered in the received SMS message, spaces might be displayed.
- While the sender's address (phone number) is highlighted in the displayed SMS message, you can press  (Select) to make a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call to the displayed number (the Phone To/AV Phone To function). Further, if the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the stored "name" is highlighted. In this case, you can dial the phone number in the same way.
- A Short Mail message is received as an SMS message on the FOMA terminal. When the sender does not notify you of the phone number, the reason is displayed in the sender's field.

<Check New SMS>

## Checking New SMS

When SMS messages arrive at the SMS Center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but will be held at the SMS Center if your FOMA terminal cannot receive messages such as when it is off or out of the service area.

You can receive the messages by "Check new SMS".

### 1 ▶ Check new SMS



### 2 Return

If the Center holds SMS messages, the FOMA terminal automatically receives them.

#### Information

- Some SMS messages are not delivered immediately after checking.

#### Information

- When  (dark blue)" or  (dark blue)", etc. are displayed, you cannot receive any more SMS messages. Delete unnecessary mail, read unread mail, or release protection. (Read and unprotected messages are automatically deleted from the oldest one.)
- You cannot use this function to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Use "Check new messages" to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F.

## <SMS Settings> Setting SMS

### SMS Report Request

You can set whether to request an SMS report for when sending an SMS message.

The SMS report lets you know that your SMS message was delivered to the destination.

You can check received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder.

### 1 ▶ SMS settings ▶ SMS report request ▶ ON or OFF

- When you operate from the Function menu of the SMS Composition display, the setting is effective only for the SMS message you are composing.

### SMS Validity Period

You can set the period that the SMS Center holds an SMS message sent but unsuccessfully delivered due to the out-of-service area, etc.

### 1 ▶ SMS settings ▶ SMS validity period ▶ Select a holding period.

- If you select "None", the stored SMS message is re-sent after a certain period of time and deleted from the SMS Center.
- When you operate from the Function menu of the SMS Composition display, the setting is effective only for the SMS message you are composing.

## SMS Input Character

You can set the characters you can enter into the text of SMS messages. You can set to enter only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and half-pitch symbols.

### 1 SMS settings ▶ SMS input character ▶ Select an item.

**Japanese (70char.)** . . . You can enter full-pitch and half-pitch characters. You cannot enter pictograms except “❤” and “📎” (see page 497). You can enter up to 70 characters for the text.

**English (160char.)** . . . You can enter only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and half-pitch symbols. You can enter up to 160 characters for the text.

- When you operate from the Function menu of the SMS Composition display, the setting is effective only for the SMS message you are composing.

## SMS Center Setting

※ Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the address and “Type of number” for the SMS Center. This setting is for getting any service other than SMS Service you currently use.

### 1 SMS settings ▶ SMS center setting ▶ User setting ▶ Enter an address ▶ International or Unknown

- You can enter up to 20 half-pitch characters for the address. However, if “#” or “\*” is included, you cannot set it for “International”.
- You can reset User Setting to “DOCOMO” by Reset ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES.

# i-mode/Full Browser

i-mode .....	194
Accessing Sites .....	< Menu> 194
Using My Menu .....	<My Menu> 195
Changing i-mode Password .....	<Change i-mode Password> 196
<b>Full Browser</b>	
Displaying Websites Designed for PC .....	<Full Browser> 196
<b>Displaying a Site</b>	
Viewing and Operating Sites .....	197
Displaying Site Viewed in the Past .....	<Last URL> 203
Displaying Internet Websites .....	<Enter URL> 203
Saving Websites or Sites for Quick Access .....	<Bookmark> 204
Saving Site Contents .....	<Screen Memo> 205
<b>Downloading Images, Melodies, etc. from Sites</b>	
Saving Images from Sites .....	<Save Image> 208
Downloading Data from Sites .....	<Download> 208
Flash Function .....	210
<b>Uploading Images, Moving Pictures, etc. to Sites</b>	
Uploading Files to Sites .....	211
<b>Useful Functions of i-mode</b>	
Operations from Highlighted Information .....	211
<b>Setting i-mode</b>	
Setting i-mode .....	<i-mode Settings> 213
<b>Using Certificates</b>	
Operating SSL/TLS Certificates .....	<SSL/TLS Certificate Setting> 217
Setting FirstPass .....	<Operate Your Certificate> 217
Changing Hosts for Certificate Issue .....	<Center Host Setting> 219



## To return to a non-SSL/TLS site

The confirmation display appears asking whether to close the SSL/TLS page. Select "YES" to display an ordinary site; "No" goes off.

### Information

- When you try to use i-mode in Horizontal Open Style for the first time, a confirmation display appears asking you to pay attention to the layout.
- Depending on the site, you may need to apply for the service in writing separately, or to pay information fees to use it.
- The maximum display size of the images on the site is 480 x 1324 dots. If an image is larger than 480 x 1324 dots, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- Depending on the site, "No" might be displayed when the image is not correctly displayed.
- Depending on the site or data, you might not be able to download or save melodies, PDF files, software programs, and others.
- With some Internet websites (sites) supporting i-mode, the color setting might make the text difficult or impossible to see.
- When the file size of the page you have received exceeds the maximum obtainable size of a page, receiving is suspended. The data obtained so far might be displayable by selecting "OK". When you have accessed a page by i-mode, you might be able to display the page in Full Browser by selecting "Switch to FB".
- When you are asked from the site to send information about music you have played back on the FOMA terminal, the confirmation display appears for about sending your music information. Select "YES" to send the information (title names, artist names, and played dates) of the music played back on the FOMA terminal. The sent music information is used for the IP (information provider) to provide customized information to you.
- When SSL/TLS communications automatically start, a confirmation display appears asking whether to do communications. Select "YES" to communicate. Select "YES (default)" not to show the same confirmation display afterward.

## Change to Menu in English

Menu is available in English.

### 1 English Menu

English Menu is displayed.



### Information

- English Menu differs from Japanese Menu.
- Some items in Japanese Menu are not available for English Menu.
- Generally, "What's New" site is updated every other Monday.

<My Menu>

## Using My Menu

By registering your favorite sites in My Menu, you can access them easily from the next time.

You can register up to 45 sites.

### Register Sites in My Menu

#### 1 Call up a page to be registered ▶ Register My Menu

- The page configuration differs depending on the site.

#### 2 Select the i-mode password text box ▶ Enter your i-mode password ▶ 決定 (OK)

- The entered i-mode password is displayed as "\*".
- See page 124 for the i-mode password.

### Information

- Some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.
- When you subscribe to a pay site in the Menu list, it is automatically registered in My Menu.

## Access Sites from My Menu

- 1  **English** ▶ **My Menu** ▶ Select a site to be accessed.

### Information

- The Dual Network Service user might not be able to use the FOMA terminal to view My Menu registered by the mova terminal, and vice versa.

## <Change i-mode Password>

### Changing i-mode Password

The i-mode password (four digits) is required to apply for/cancel Message Services or i-mode pay services, and to configure i-mode mail settings.

Pay careful attention to keep your i-mode password secret.

- 1  **English** ▶ **Options** ▶ **Change i-mode Password**  
▶ Select the “Current Password” text box  
▶ Enter your i-mode password (four digits).

- When you enter your i-mode password for the first time, enter “0000” (four zeros) which is set at a time of your contract.
- The entered numeral is displayed as “\*”.

- 2 Select the “New Password” text box  
▶ Enter a new i-mode password (four digits).

- Enter your own i-mode password.

- 3 Select the “New Password (Confirmation)” text box  
▶ Enter your new i-mode password (four digits) ▶ Select

- Enter the same password that you entered in step 2.

### Information

- Note that if you do not remember the i-mode password, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license to the handling counter of a docomo shop.

## <Full Browser>

### Displaying Websites Designed for PC

You can browse Internet websites designed for PCs using the Full Browser function. You can display even the Internet websites that cannot be correctly displayed by i-mode. However, you cannot display or correctly display some Internet websites.

If you change the style while running Full Browser, the display automatically switches between the vertical display and the horizontal display. When you switch it manually, select “CHG wide scr. mode” from the Function menu.


- The data such as Home URL or Bookmarks registered via Full Browser cannot be used for i-mode. The contents set by Full Browser are invalid for i-mode.
- Note that you are charged a high communication fee for the massive data communication such as browsing Internet websites having many images or downloading data files. For details on the packet communication fee, refer to “Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

- 1  **i-mode** ▶ **Full Browser Home**

The Internet website set as Home URL is displayed.

- When “FB usage setting” is set to “NO”, the confirmation display appears asking whether to start Full Browser. Highlight “Yes” and select “OK” to switch settings of “FB usage setting”, then Full Browser starts up.

Further, you can access a site for signing up a flat-rate service via i-mode by selecting “To sign up a packet flat-rate service, click here”.

- To end Full Browser, press  with an Internet website displayed and select “YES”.

## Information

- You can display up to 1 Mbyte of data per page.
- It may take long to display some Internet websites.
- You cannot use the following functions in Full Browser:
  - Phone To function
  - i-appli To function
  - Media To function

## Switch Display Mode

Two modes, "Phone mode" and "PC layout mode", are available for the display of Full Browser.

- 1** **MENU** **▶ i-mode ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Full Browser set.**  
**▶ Display mode setting ▶ PC layout mode or Phone mode**

### PC layout mode

... Displays an Internet website in the same format as when it is displayed on your personal computer in 800 (width) x 1400 (height) dots. You can browse Internet websites by scrolling upward, downward, and sideways.

### Phone mode

... Displays an Internet website to fit in the display width of the FOMA terminal. You do not need to scroll sideways; you can browse Internet websites only by scrolling upward and downward.

- When you show an Internet website, you can switch the display modes each time you select "Change disp. mode" of "Settings" from the Function menu.

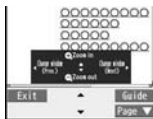
## Use Operation Mode

Press **Ⓜ** (**Opn**) from the display of Full Browser to switch to "Operation mode". The operation palette is displayed in Operation Mode, and you can enlarge/reduce the display size and switch the windows.

**Ⓜ**: Enlarges/reduces the display size.

**Ⓜ**: Switch the windows.

- When you press **Ⓜ** (**Guide**) in Operation Mode, the key operation guide is displayed.
- To scroll the display, press **Ⓜ** (**Page ▲**) or **Ⓜ** (**Page ▼**).



## Switch from i-mode to Full Browser

You can switch to Full Browser to show the Internet websites incorrectly displayed by i-mode.

- 1** While a page to be shown is displayed in Full Browser  
**▶** **Ⓜ** (**FUNC**) **▶ Full Browser ▶ Switch to FB ▶ YES**

## Information

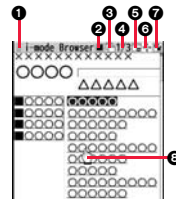
- With Full Browser, note that the billing system differs from that of i-mode.
- When you switch to Full Browser with multiple windows opened, the pages in other windows are closed and you cannot return to those pages by **Ⓜ** (**Back**).
- You cannot correctly display some Internet websites.

## Viewing and Operating Sites

Basic operating methods while a site is displayed are explained.

### About Site Viewing Display

- 1 **Ⓜ**: Accessing via i-mode
- 2 **Ⓜ**: Accessing via Full Browser
- 3 **Ⓜ**: Displaying a screen memo
- 4 **Ⓜ**: Displaying a captured image
- 5 **Ⓜ**: Displaying in the multiwindow
- 6 **Ⓜ**: Window number/Number of windows
- 7 **Ⓜ**: During communication in another window
- 8 **Ⓜ**: During communication in another frame
- 9 **Ⓜ**: PC layout mode
- 10 **Ⓜ**: Phone mode
- 11 **Ⓜ**: Displaying in an enlarged frame
- 12 **Ⓜ**: Normal pointer
- 13 **Ⓜ**: Selecting a link
- 14 **Ⓜ**: Obtaining or processing data
- 15 **Ⓜ**: Drag mode
- 16 **Ⓜ**: Dragging an object
- 17 **Ⓜ**: Selecting a text input field
- 18 **Ⓜ**: Selecting a Flash movie
- 19 **Ⓜ**: Selecting an operable Flash movie
- 20 **Ⓜ**: Selecting a text-enterable Flash movie



## Operations while a site is displayed

Operation	Key operation		
	i-mode	Full Browser	
		Phone mode	PC layout mode
Return to previous page	MENU (Back) ※		
Forward to next page	TV (Next) ※		
Scroll display	while a pointer is displayed.) while a pointer is displayed.) or  /	while a pointer is displayed.) 	
Move highlighted			—
Switch to Drag mode (Only while a pointer is displayed)	—		(for at least one second)
Scroll the displays page by page	/  or MENU (Page ) / TV (Page ) ※ • To move to the top/end of the page, press and hold the key for at least one second.	/  (For the horizontal display, the operations for  and  are reversed.) • To move to the top/end of the page, press and hold the key for at least one second.	
Reload	—		
Display Bookmark Folder list	—		

※ For i-mode, each time of pressing switches between the page move operation and display scroll operation.

### Information

- When you try to switch the key operation functions by pressing , a confirmation display appears asking whether to switch them. Select "YES" to switch. Select "YES (default)" not to show the same confirmation display afterward.

## Return to Obtained Previous Page/Go to Obtained Next Page

The FOMA terminal saves the files such as the displayed Internet websites to a temporal storage area called a cache. By pressing (Back) or (Next), you can show the page stored in the cache without communicating.

You can move even between i-mode and Full Browser.

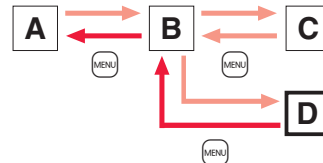
- The FOMA terminal starts communication when you show a page that exceeds the cache size of the FOMA terminal or that is configured (created) to always read its latest information.
- When i-mode or Full Browser ends, the cache is cleared.

- 1 Press (Back) to return to the previous page.  
Press (Next) to go to the next page.

### To turn pages

By pressing (Back) repeatedly, you can move back through the pages that you have displayed so far. However, if you display a different page ("D") from the previous page ("B"), you cannot return to "C" from "D" even when you press (Back) twice. Instead, the pages are displayed in the order of "D" → "B" → "A".

<When the page display sequence is "A" → "B" → "C" → "B" → "D">



— ...Page display sequence

— ...Sequence when you move back from the display "D"

### Information

- When you display a screen memo on the way, you cannot move to pages shown previous to the screen memo.



### Information

- When you display a page stored in cache, you cannot display text or settings you entered when connected before.
- When Flash movies are displayed, the site behavior might differ from the one for ordinary sites.

## Displaying Multiple Sites

You can open a new window and simultaneously open up to five sites. (Multiwindow)



- You can switch the simultaneously opened sites to show one by one.

### 1 While a site is displayed ( **FUNC** ) Window ▶ Open new window ▶ Select an item.

**Link** . . . . . Opens a new window to show a page of the highlighted link.

**Bookmark** . . . Opens a new window to show a site stored in Bookmark. (See page 204)

**Last URL** . . . . Opens a new window to show the page displayed last.

**iMenu**  **Search**  
. . . . . Shows "  Menu" via i-mode.

**Full Browser Home**  
. . . . . Shows an Internet website set as Home URL via Full Browser.

**URL enter history**  
. . . . . Opens a new window to show an Internet website by selecting from URL History or entering a URL. (See page 203)

- See page 201 for how to switch or close the window.



### Information

- Some sites have links configured to open in new windows. When you open such a link, the new window opens even if you do not perform above operations.


## Operate by the Pointer


When you set "Display pointer" of "Pointer/scroll" to "ON", a pointer appears on the display. Using this pointer, you can scroll displays, select a content, etc. You can set "Pointer/scroll" for i-mode and Full Browser separately.

## Operate by Switching to Drag Mode


You can switch to Drag mode by pressing and holding  for at least one second while a pointer is displayed. By switching to Drag mode, you can operate Drag-mode-compatible contents. In Drag mode, the pointer is displayed as ".


### 1 Press and hold for at least one second while a pointer is displayed

▶ Select the content to be operated and press .

The pointer switch to ".

### 2 Use to move the content

You can release the content and the pointer returns to ".

- Press and hold  for at least one second to release Drag mode.

### Information


- The feasible operation differs depending on the content.
- In Drag mode, you can operate the contents only. However, when you select an input box or you upload a file, Drag mode is released and then you can operate them.
- While accessing via i-mode or in Phone mode of Full Browser, you cannot perform drag operation.

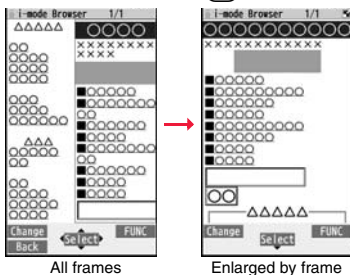
## Display a Site Supporting Frames

You can display sites composed of frames. You can select a frame, and enlarge each selected frame for displaying.


### 1 While a site with frames is displayed

▶ Use  to highlight a frame and press  (**Select**).

- To return to the display for all frames, press , or select "Others" from the Function menu and then select "All frames".



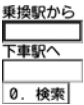






### Information

- When a site has many divided frames, you might not be able to open all frames. " X" is added to the frames that you could not open.

## Select/Enter Information on Sites

In sites, you may use the displayed radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, and pull down menus.

Name	Display example	Operation/Explanation
Radio button	<input type="radio"/> : Not selected <input checked="" type="radio"/> : Selected	Radio buttons are for selecting one from multiple choices.
Check box	<input type="checkbox"/> : Not selected <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Selected	Check boxes are for selecting one or more items from multiple choices.

Name	Display example	Operation/Explanation
Text box		You can enter characters. Highlight a text box and press  ( <b>Select</b> ) to show the Character Entry display.
Pull down menu		You can select an item from the option list. Highlight a pull-down menu and press  ( <b>Select</b> ) to show the option list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You might be able to select multiple items from pull-down menus. Each time you use  to highlight an item and press  (<b>Select</b>), you can select/release items repeatedly. After selecting items, press  (<b>Finish</b>).</li> </ul>

### Information

- Depending on the site, the display authenticating your user ID or password might appear.  
Enter your user ID and password, and then select "OK".

## Phone/Terminal and UIM ID

When you select an item, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to send the Phone/Terminal and UIM ID.

- The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" to be sent is used by the IP (Information Providers) for identifying the user, providing customized information, and judging if the contents the IP (Information Provider) offers are available on the user's mobile phone.
- The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" is sent to the IP (Information Provider) over the Internet, so could be deciphered by third parties. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IPs (Information Providers) or others, by this operation.

## Function Menu while Site is Displayed




### Bookmark

<b>Bookmark</b>	Go to step 1 of "Display Websites or Sites from a Bookmark" on page 204.
<b>Add bookmark</b>	See page 204.

### Screen memo

<b>Screen memo list</b>	Go to step 2 on page 206.
<b>Add screen memo</b>	See page 205.

### Last URL

 <b>Menu</b>  <b>Search</b>	You can return to "  Menu".
--	---




### Full Browser Home

You can open the Internet website set as Home URL via Full Browser.

### Full Browser

<b>Full Browser Home</b>	You can open the Internet website set as Home URL via Full Browser.
<b>Switch to FB</b>	See page 197.

### i-mode Browser

 <b>Menu</b>  <b>Search</b>	You can open "  Menu" by i-mode.
<b>i-mode BRWSR Switch</b>	You can switch to i-mode to show the site being displayed via Full Browser. ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Reload

The site contents will be updated with the latest information.

### Enter URL/info

<b>Enter URL</b>	You can enter a URL to display an Internet website. ▶ <b>Select the text box.</b> Go to step 2 on page 203. • The URL of the displayed site is entered beforehand.
------------------	---

<b>URL enter history</b>	See page 203.
--------------------------	---------------

<b>Display URL</b>	You can display the URL of the displayed site.
--------------------	--

### Window

<b>Open new window</b>	See page 199.
------------------------	---------------

<b>Change window</b>	You can switch the windows while the sites are displayed in the multiwindow. ▶ <b>Select a window.</b>
----------------------	---

<b>Close window</b>	You can close the windows while the sites are displayed in the multiwindow. ▶ <b>YES</b>
---------------------	---

<b>Save image</b>	See page 208.
-------------------	---------------

### Select text area

<b>Copy</b>	You can select characters displayed on the site and copy them. ▶ <b>Select a start point</b> ▶ <b>Select an end point.</b> • See page 434 for how to paste copied characters.
-------------	---

<b>Read map</b>	You can select characters displayed on the site and display the map. ▶ <b>Select a start point</b> ▶ <b>Select an end point.</b> Using the characters you selected, GPS compatible i-oppli program starts. (See page 212)
-----------------	---

### Settings

<b>Change disp. mode</b>	See page 197.
--------------------------	---------------

<b>CHG wide scr. mode/ RLS wide scr. mode</b>	You can switch vertical display and horizontal display.
---	---


<b>Full display set.</b>	See page 214.
--------------------------	---------------


<b>Zoom</b>	See page 214.
-------------	---------------

<b>Image display set.</b>	See page 213.
---------------------------	---------------

<b>Sound setting</b>	See page 213.
----------------------	---------------

<b>Script setting</b>	See page 213.
-----------------------	---------------

<b>Pointer/scroll</b>	
<b>Display pointer</b>	See page 213.
<b>Speed</b>	See page 213.
<b>Focus while scroll</b>	See page 214.
<b>Cookie</b>	
<b>Cookie setting</b>	You can set whether to validate cookies. Go to step 1 of "Cookie Setting" on page 216.
<b>Delete Cookies</b>	You can delete cookies. Go to step 1 of "Delete Cookies" on page 216.
<b>Referer setting</b>	You can set whether to send a referer. Go to step 1 of "Referer Setting" on page 216.
<b>FB Home setting</b>	You can store the displayed Internet website as Home URL. ▶ YES
<b>Others</b>	
<b>All frames</b>	You can return to the display for all frames from the display for the enlarged frame.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the URL/image of a displayed site/screen memo pasted or attached. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Attach URL</b> . . . . . Pastes a URL to the text of an i-mode mail message. <b>Attach image</b> . . . . . Select an image to attach it to an i-mode mail message. <b>Insert Deco-mail.</b> . . . . Select an image to paste it to a Deco-mail message. Go to step 2 on page 146. ● See page 149 for Deco-mail.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94.
<b>Set desktop/  key</b>	
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 32.

 <b>long press set.</b>	See page 410.
<b>Change CHR code</b>	When characters are not correctly displayed, you can convert them to the correct ones. ● This setting is valid only for the site and Internet website being displayed.
<b>Title</b>	You can display the title of the displayed site.
<b>Certificate</b>	You can check the subject name, author, validity period and serial number of the certificate used in SSL/TLS communication. Up to five certificates are displayed.
<b>Retry</b>	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning. ● When a part of the Flash movie is outside the display area, the Flash movie might not be played back.
<b>Key guide</b>	You can display the key operation guide for the Full Browser displays.

### Information

#### <Select text area>

- The maximum number of characters you can select is 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters. With "Read map", you might not be able to select a text area even within 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
- Depending on the site, you might not be able to copy.

#### <Compose message>

- You cannot paste the URL when it exceeds half-pitch 256 characters (half-pitch 512 characters for Full Browser).
- You may not be able to attach or paste some images to i-mode mail.

#### <Change CHR code>

- When characters are not correctly displayed, repeat the operation. However, the previous character is displayed if you repeat the operation four times.
- Even when you repeat this operation, the correct character might not appear.
- If you change the character code when the correct characters are displayed, wrong characters might appear instead.

#### <Title>

- Up to 128 half-pitch/64 full-pitch characters can be displayed for a title.

<Last URL>

## Displaying Site Viewed in the Past







### Display Last URL

Each time you display a site via i-mode or Full Browser, the URL of the page is stored as “Last URL”. You can store up to 50 URLs for i-mode and Full Browser in total.

By selecting “Last URL”, you can display the page list you viewed in the past.

#### 1 i-mode ▶ Last URL

##### ▶ Select the page to be displayed.

- As a browse type icon, “” is displayed for the URL accessed via i-mode and “” is displayed for the URL accessed via Full Browser.
- You can display the URL by pressing  (  ) and selecting “Display URL”.
- To delete the Last URL, press  (  ), select “Delete”, and then select “Delete”, “Delete selected”, or “Delete all”.

#### Information

- Depending on the page, you might not be able to store the page as “Last URL”.
- When the stored URLs exceed 50 items, the Last URLs are overwritten automatically, starting from the oldest one.
- When you display pages by the same URL, the URL for the page you displayed last is stored. When you display the pages by different browsers, each URL is stored separately.

<Enter URL>

## Displaying Internet Websites

#### 1 i-mode ▶ Enter URL ▶ <NEW>

#### 2 Enter a URL ▶ i-mode Browser or Full Browser

- You can enter up to 512 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols.
- For Full Browser, the confirmation display appears telling that the website might not be displayed.

#### Information

- For i-mode, Internet websites not supporting i-mode or some type of Internet websites to be connected might not be displayed correctly.



### Displaying Websites from URL History

Up to 50 entered URLs can be stored in URL History.

#### 1 i-mode ▶ Enter URL

##### ▶ Select a URL to be displayed

##### ▶ i-mode Browser or Full Browser



- As a browse type icon, “” is displayed for the URL accessed via i-mode and “” is displayed for the URL accessed via Full Browser.
- Excluding “http://” and “https://”, up to 20 half-pitch characters can be displayed.
- You can edit the URL by selecting the URL’s text box.




#### Information

- When the entered URLs exceed 50 items, the URL histories are overwritten automatically, starting from the oldest one.
- When you newly enter a URL to access a site, that URL is stored as a different history even if you access the same URL. However, if you switch browsers to access a site without editing the URL, the URL is stored with the browser type icon switched.

### Function Menu of the URL History List

- Compose message** You can compose an i-mode mail message with the highlighted URL pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 146.
- You can compose it also by pressing  (  ).

#### Set desktop/ key

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| <b>Add desktop icon</b>  | See page 32.  |
|  <b>long press set.</b> | See page 410. |

<b>FB Home setting</b>	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete</b>	
Delete (Delete this)	▶ <b>YES</b>
Delete selected	▶ Put a check mark for URL histories to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ <b>YES</b>

## &lt;Bookmark&gt;

## Saving Websites or Sites for Quick Access

## Add Bookmark

Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, you can display the page directly. You can register up to 600 bookmarks for i-mode and Full Browser in total.

- 1** From the page to be registered ▶ ( **FUNC** )  
▶ **Bookmark** ▶ **Add bookmark** ▶ **YES**  
▶ **Select a destination folder.**

## Information

- When the number of characters used for a URL exceeds 256 half-pitch characters (512 half-pitch characters for Full Browser), you cannot store it.
- When the title exceeds 12 full-pitch/24 half-pitch characters, the excess is deleted. If no title exists, the URL excluding "http://" or "https://" is registered.
- Even when the URLs are the same, you can bookmark them separately if the browser type is different.
- Some pages cannot be bookmarked.

## Display Websites or Sites from a Bookmark

- 1** ▶ **i-mode** ▶ **Bookmark** ▶ **Select a folder**  
▶ **Select a bookmark to be displayed.**

- " " is displayed for i-mode bookmarks and " " is displayed for Full Browser bookmarks, and the site is accessed via the browser corresponding to the selected bookmark.



## Function Menu of the Bookmark Folder List

## Operate folder

<b>Add folder</b>	You can add a new folder. You can add up to 39 folders in addition to "Bookmark" and "Screen memo" folders. ▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b> ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Edit folder name</b>	▶ <b>Edit the folder name.</b> ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Delete folder</b>	You can delete the folder and all bookmarks and screen memos in the folder. You cannot delete the "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

## Irr/ transmission

<b>Send all Irr data</b>	See page 384.
<b>All  transmission</b>	See page 385.

<b>No. of bookmarks</b>	You can check the number of bookmarks stored in all folders and the number of bookmarks each for i-mode and Full Browser.
-------------------------	---

<b>Delete all</b>	The folders are not deleted. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
-------------------	---

## Function Menu of the Bookmark List

<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the highlighted URL pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 146. ● You can compose it also by pressing (M) (Finish).
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can send an i-mode mail message with the bookmark attached. Go to step 2 on page 146.
<b>Move</b>	You can move bookmarks or screen memos to another folder. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b> ▶ <b>Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be moved</b> ▶ (M) (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title.</b> ● You can edit the title also by pressing (MENU) (Edit) from the list. ● You can enter up to 12 full-pitch/24 half-pitch characters for a bookmark. If you press (Set) with a blank, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered. ● You can enter up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters for a screen memo. If you press (Set) with a blank, the screen memo is registered as "No title".
<b>Copy</b>	
<b>Copy URL</b>	You can copy the URL of the bookmark. ▶ <b>Select a start point for copying</b> ▶ <b>Select an end point for copying.</b> ● See page 434 for how to paste copied characters.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 369.
<b>Set desktop/ key</b>	
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 32.
<b> long press set.</b>	See page 410.
<b>lr/ transmission</b>	

<b>Send lr data</b>	See page 383.
<b> transmission</b>	See page 385.
<b>No. of bookmarks</b>	You can display the number of bookmarks stored in the displayed folder.
<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete (Delete this)</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be deleted</b> ▶ (M) (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	You can delete all bookmarks or screen memos stored in the folder. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>FB Home setting</b>	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶ <b>YES</b>

## <Screen Memo>

### Saving Site Contents

#### Save as a Screen Memo

You can save a displayed page as a screen memo.  
You can save up to 300 screen memos each for i-mode and Full Browser, however, the number of screen memos you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

**1** From a page to be saved ▶ (M) (FUNC) ▶ **Screen memo**  
▶ **Add screen memo** ▶ **YES** ▶ **Select a destination folder.**

When you save a screen memo, the image for preview (captured image) is saved as well.


- When you select "YES (capture only)", you save captured image only.
- When screen memos are saved to the maximum and thus you can save captured images only, a confirmation display appears asking whether to save the captured images only. See page 210 for when captured images are also saved to the maximum.

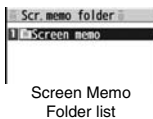
**Information**



- When the title exceeds 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters, the excess is deleted.
- If you save the data acquisition completion display, its data file is saved as well. (You cannot save the data acquisition completion display for Chaku-uta Full® music files, for i-motion files with playable deadline, or for the ToruCa files whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.) Some data acquisition completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos. The display other than the data acquisition completion display is saved with a URL of up to 2,048 half-pitch characters for that page.
- When you save SSL/TLS pages, their SSL/TLS certificates are saved as well.
- The contents entered in the text box and the contents selected with the pull-down menu, check box, or radio button are not saved to screen memos.
- You can save up to 500 Kbytes for i-mode and up to 1,024 Kbytes for Full Browser per page. However, you can save up to 1,024 Kbytes for the schedule acquisition completion display, up to 200 Kbytes for the Deco-mail Template acquisition completion display, up to 100 Kbytes for the Melody/Chara-den image/Decome-Anime template/ToruCa file (details) acquisition completion display, up to 20 Kbytes for the Download Dictionary acquisition completion display, and up to 1 Kbyte for the ToruCa acquisition completion display.
- Depending on the site, you might not be able to save a screen memo.

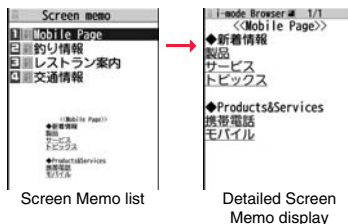
**Display a Screen Memo**

- 1  **i-mode** ▶ **Screen memo**  
▶ **i-mode Browser or Full Browser**

- Each time you press  from the Screen Memo Folder list, you can switch between the screen memo folder of i-mode and that of Full Browser.

**2 Select a folder ▶ Select a screen memo.**

- When “FB usage setting” of “Full Browser set.” of “i-mode settings” is set to “No” and you select a screen memo of Full Browser, the captured image is displayed.
- Press  or  from the detailed Screen Memo display to check other screen memos.
- When you select a link on a screen memo, the access automatically starts via i-mode or Full Browser respectively.


**Information**

- The page saved as a screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. This might differ from the latest information on the site.

**Function Menu of the Screen Memo Folder List****Operate folder**

Add folder	See page 204.
Edit folder name	See page 204.
Delete folder	See page 204.

**Security ON/OFF** You can set the folder to open only when you enter your Terminal Security Code.

- ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **YES**  
The folder changes to “”.
- To release it, perform the same operation.

**No. of memos** You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in all folders.

**Delete all** You can delete all screen memos. The folders will not be deleted.  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **YES**



## Function Menu of the Screen Memo List

<b>Move</b>	See page 205.
<b>Edit title</b>	See page 205.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	You can protect screen memos not to be deleted. You can protect up to 150 screen memos, however, the number of screen memos you can protect decreases depending on the data volume. Protected items are indicated by "🔒" or "🔓". ● To release protection, perform the same operation.
<b>No. of memos</b>	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in the displayed folder.
<b>Delete</b>	
Delete	See page 205.
Delete selected	See page 205.
Delete all	See page 205.

## Function Menu of the Detailed Screen Memo Display/while Captured Image is Displayed

<b>Edit title</b>	See page 205.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	See page 207.
<b>Display captured</b>	You can display the captured image.
<b>Reload</b>	You can access the site saved as the screen memo from the captured image.
<b>Display URL</b>	You can display the URL of the screen memo.
<b>Save image</b>	See page 208.
<b>Select text area</b>	
Copy	See page 201.
Read map	See page 201.
<b>Settings</b>	
Change disp. mode	See page 197.

<b>CHG wide scr. mode/ RLS wide scr. mode</b>	You can switch vertical display and horizontal display.
<b>Full display set.</b>	See page 214.
<b>Zoom</b>	See page 214.
<b>Sound setting</b>	See page 213.
<b>Pointer/scroll</b>	
Display pointer	See page 213.
Speed	See page 213.
Focus while scroll	See page 214.

### Others

<b>All frames</b>	See page 202.
<b>Compose message</b>	See page 202.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94.
<b>Certificate</b>	See page 202.
<b>Retry</b>	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning. ● When a part of the Flash movie is outside the display area, the Flash movie might not be played back.
<b>Compose message</b>	See page 202.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ YES

<Save Image>


## Saving Images from Sites

You can save the image displayed on a site or screen memo, and then set it for the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display.


You can save images in SWF format, BMP format, and PNG format, etc., besides JPEG format and GIF format. You can save images, frames and marks for Deco-mail as well.

You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 534)

### 1 From a site display/Detailed Screen Memo display

▶  ( FUNC ) ▶ Save image ▶ Select an item.

**Save one image** . . . . . You can save an image. Select an image to be saved.

**Save some images** . . . . . You can save multiple images. Select multiple images to be saved and press  ( Save ).

**Save all images** . . . . . You can save storable images at a time from among the ones displayed on a site.

**Save BG image** . . . . . You can save the image displayed as a background.

• You cannot save multiple images via Full Browser. Select an image to be saved.

### 2 YES ▶ Select a destination folder.

• For "Save some images" and "Save all images", select "Phone" or "microSD". When you select "Phone", Deco-mail pictograms are saved to the "Deco-mail pictograms" folder, frames and marks are saved to the "Frame/Stamp" folder, and others are saved to the "i-mode" folder. See page 379 for the storage location for when you select "microSD".

• See page 210 when images are stored to the maximum.

### 3 When the confirmation display appears asking whether to set it as a display, select "YES".

Go to "Set display" on page 341.

#### Information

- Up to 36 half-pitch characters are saved for a file name. When the file name is not specified, a part of the downloaded URL or "imageXXX" (XXX denotes numerals) is saved as the file name.

#### Information

- Even when an image is displayed on the site, it might not be displayed on the Picture viewer after saving it to the FOMA terminal.
- The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a Deco-mail pictogram:
  - GIF or JPEG image
  - Image of 20 x 20 dots
  - Image without file restrictions
  - Image of 6 Kbytes or less
- The transparent GIF (except animation GIF) image whose extension is "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp.
- You can save up to 500 Kbytes per image for i-mode, and up to 1 Mbyte per image for Full Browser.
- When you save multiple images or all images at one time, the background image cannot be saved.
- You might not be able to save some images. You can save images in BMP format and PNG format only to the microSD card.

<Download>

## Downloading Data from Sites

You can download data files from sites and save them to the FOMA terminal. You can save some files directly to the microSD card.

You can save melodies, PDF files, Chara-den images, Machi-chara images, Kisekae Tool files, ToruCa files, templates, dictionaries, schedule events and others.

■ The maximum downloadable size

Categories	Maximum size	Maximum number of storable
Melody	100 Kbytes	3,500 max. <sup>**1</sup>
PDF file	2 Mbytes	3,500 max. <sup>**1</sup>
Chara-den image	100 Kbytes	3
Machi-chara image	2 Mbytes	3,500 max. <sup>**1</sup>
Kisekae Tool file	2 Mbytes	3,500 max. <sup>**1</sup>
ToruCa file	100 Kbytes	495 max. <sup>**1</sup>
Template (Deco-mail)	200 Kbytes	100 max. <sup>**2</sup>
Template (Decome-Anime)	100 Kbytes	100 max. <sup>**2</sup>
Dictionary	20 Kbytes	10
Schedule event	1 Mbyte	2,500

<sup>\*\*1</sup> The memory space is shared with other data files, and the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 534)

<sup>\*\*2</sup> The number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

## 1 Call up a data downloadable site ▶ Select a data file.

Downloading of the data file starts. When downloading is completed, the data acquisition completion display appears.

- For a PDF file, the PDF file is displayed when downloading is completed.
- For the PDF file that cannot be displayed unless you download all pages, the confirmation display appears asking whether to download all pages. Select "YES" to select the destination folder.
- For the PDF file of which you have not downloaded all the pages, you can additionally download the remaining pages by "Download remain".
- See page 390 for how to save the displayed PDF file to the FOMA terminal. You can save the PDF file containing pages that have not been downloaded or the PDF file of which download was suspended midway as well.
- The password entry display might be displayed depending on the PDF file. Enter the password, and then select "OK".
- See page 387 for operations while PDF file is displayed.

## 2 Save ▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder.

Chara-den images, templates (Deco-mail), and schedule events are saved to the FOMA terminal.

Select "Phone" or "microSD" for Machi-chara images, Kisekai Tool files, and templates (Decome-Anime).

For dictionaries, select "<Not stored>".

- Select "Property" to display the information.
- See page 379 for the storage location for when you select "microSD".
- See page 210 when data files are stored to the maximum.
- See page 205 to save a screen memo.


## 3 Select "YES" to set the downloaded data file to each function.

- Select an incoming type when you set a melody as a ring tone.
- See page 149 or page 152 for using a template to create Deco-mail or Decome-Anime messages.

### Information

- Some downloaded melodies might not be played back successfully.

## When downloading a Kisekai Tool file or Machi-chara image is suspended

When you press  (Quit) to suspend downloading or when downloading is suspended by an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading.

Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the data acquisition completion display. You can save the downloaded part by selecting "Save pt." from the data acquisition completion display. When you select "Save pt.", you can save it only to "Phone". You can re-download the rest of the partially saved file from "Kisekai Tool" or "Machi-chara" in "Data box".

## Search by i-mode

You can look for your favorite files on the site and download them. The number of files you can save differs depending on the file you download. You cannot change the site.

## 1 Each selection display ▶ Search by i-mode ▶ YES ▶ Select a file.

- The way of downloading differs depending on the file.
- Select "To i-schedule list" on the i-schedule list.

### Information

- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.

## About "P-SQUARE"

You can download the pre-installed Chara-den images, Machi-chara images, Kisekai Tool files, templates, dictionaries, and Deco-mail pictograms from the "P-SQUARE" site (in Japanese only).

☰ Menu → メニューリスト (Menu List) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker) → P-SQUARE



QR code for accessing the site

## When the data files are stored to the maximum

If the maximum number of data files is stored or there is not enough memory when you try to save the data files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the unnecessary file and save new one.








● Perform this operation to save the following data:

- Images
- Chara-den images
- Machi-chara images
- Templates
- i-motion files
- Programs
- PDF files
- Screen memos
- Movie files
- Chaku-uta Full® music files
- i-oppli programs
- Kisekai Tool files
- Melodies
- ToruCa files
- Schedule events

1. YES ► Put a check mark for data files to be deleted ►  (Finish) ► YES

As the data files except Chara-den images, templates, screen memos, and schedule events are stored in the same storage area, you can select other files when deleting files. Select a folder and put a check mark for the files to be deleted. “\*” appears on the folder which contains the checked files.

“Finish” appears when you put it for the files whose amount of data is equal to memory shortage.

- You can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting “Select all in page/Release in page”.
- Each time you press  or  (Memory), or each time you press  (FUNC) and select “Change disp. mode”, you can switch display/nondisplay of the folder volume and data volume.
- When selecting a file in “MUSIC”, you can show the lower level folders by pressing  (Folder).
- Each time you press  (CLR), the upper level folder returns.
- When you select a Chaku-uta Full® music file or a movie file, you can check the contents by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting “Play”.
- For programs, you need to delete many files when deleting other files because the data volume per program is large.
- If the maximum number of programs are stored when you execute “Move program” or try to save an i-oppli program or ToruCa file, you need to delete at least one file which belongs to the same type.
- If there is a security-applied folder for screen memos, the confirmation display appears asking whether to enable you to select screen memos in that security-applied folder. When you select “YES”, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
- The file set for another function is indicated by “★”.
- See page 295 for deleting mail-linked i-oppli.
- If you operate this when moving an i-oppli program from the microSD card to the FOMA terminal, you cannot delete the i-oppli program with its data file on the IC card.

## Flash Function

**Flash is an animation technology that treats pictures and sound. Flash movies make the sites more attractive. You can download Flash movies to your FOMA terminal and play them back or set them for the Stand-by display.**

### ■ Flash Video

Flash® Video (FLV) denotes images that can be played back by Adobe Flash Player. They can be played back via i-mode, Full Browser, as screen memos, and from Data Box. They can be played back also by setting for the Stand-by display. However, only the embedded type of FLV files can be saved as screen memos or into Data Box and can be set for the Stand-by display.

- The playable FLV files are the following two types:

Categories	Description
<b>Progressive type playback</b>	With this type, the video files that are created separately from Flash movies are played back while being downloaded from a delivery server.
<b>Embedded type playback</b>	With this type, video files are embedded into Flash movies as one of source files.



- Depending on the site, you might not be able to play back the files.
- As the playback of up to 10 Mbytes of files is supported for progressive type FLV, you might receive a bulky size of files. Note that you are charged a high packet communication fee for receiving bulky files.
- You cannot save the progressive type FLV files in Data Box nor can save them as screen memos.

### ■ Specifications for FLV playback

Codec	Video	Sorenson Spark/On2VP6
	Audio	MP3
Bit rate	Video	400 kbps
	Audio	96 kbps
Video size	Files of QVGA (320×240) or smaller	
Frame rate	15 fps	

- Even when the file format is supported, you might not be able to obtain or playback some files.

## Information

- The maximum display size of a Flash movie on the site is 480 x 662 dots. If a Flash movie is larger than 480 x 662 dots, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- Some Flash movies refer to the phone information in your FOMA terminal. To permit the use of the information in your FOMA terminal, set "Phone info use setting" to "Valid". ("Valid" is set at purchase.)
- You might be able to operate a pointer for some Flash movies.
- The effect tone sounds for some Flash movies. To mute it, set "Sound setting" to "Level 0".
- The effect tone and vibrator for the Flash movie set for the Stand-by display do not work.
- The effect tone for Flash movies does not sound during Play Background.
- The FOMA terminal might vibrate for some Flash movies while they are being played back. The FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the setting of "Vibrator".
- When you play back a Flash movie after saving to Data Box, microSD card, or Screen Memo, it might look different depending on the storage location.
- When you display a Flash movie via Full Browser, you cannot save it.
- Some Flash movies might not work correctly.
- You cannot save the Flash movie if an error occurs during playback.
- You can operate some Flash movies by  or . Even when "・ ◁ ▷ ・" is not displayed, you can operate some Flash movies. When a Flash movie is displayed via Full Browser, you can operate it only while a pointer is displayed.
- When Flash movies are displayed, the behavior might differ from ordinary sites.

## Uploading Files to Sites

You can upload JPEG or GIF images and i-motion files stored in the FOMA terminal to a site.

- 1 Call up a file uploadable site ▶ 参照 (Reference)  
▶ Picture or  motion ▶ Select a file to be uploaded.

- Procedure for uploading files differs depending on the site.

## Information

- You can upload up to 2 Mbytes in total.
- You cannot upload files that are prohibited from output from the FOMA terminal to other devices.

## Operations from Highlighted Information

You can easily make a call, send mail, display Internet websites, start 1Seg, set TV Timer/Timer Recording using highlighted information (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, and so on) displayed on sites and in mail.

- The Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, i-appli To, Media To and Address Link functions might not be available depending on the mail sent from a personal computer or the site.
- You might be able to use the Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, or i-appli To function using highlighted information other than a phone number, mail address or URL.
- The information is not highlighted in the Decome-Anime.

## Phone To/AV Phone To Function

You can make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls by using phone numbers or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.

- The Phone To function to make a videophone call is called the AV Phone To function.

- 1 Select a phone number or similar information  
▶ Select a dialing type.

- When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to other party during a videophone call.
- Select "SMS" to compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 189.
- The choices for dialing types may not be displayed when the phone number is prefixed by "tel:" or "tel-av:". Go to step 2.

## 2 Dial

- To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 61)
- To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 of "Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call" on page 59)

### Information

- You cannot make a call in Horizontal Open Style.

### Mail To Function

You can send mail by using mail addresses or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.


#### 1 Select a mail address or similar information.

The destination mail address is already entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 146.

### Web To Function

You can access Internet websites, via i-mode or Full Browser, from URL or similar information displayed on sites or in mail.

#### 1 Select a URL or similar information ▶ i-mode Browser or Full Browser ▶ YES

- When the URL or similar one contains the information of i-mode or Full Browser, you are connected via the function which corresponds to the information.
- To cancel during connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press  (Cancel).

### i-appli To Function

You can start i-appli programs from URLs (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

#### 1 Select i-appli information ▶ YES

i-appli starts.

### Information

- Even if i-mode mail text contains a link to start an i-appli program, you cannot quote the link when forwarding or replying to. Also, you cannot quote it when using DOCOMO keitai datalink or infrared communication function.

### Media To Function

You can start 1Seg or set TV Timer/Timer Recording from the information (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

#### 1 Select 1Seg information ▶ YES

1Seg or TV Timer/Timer Recording starts.

- When the timer function starts, press  (Finish) to set TV Timer/Timer Recording.

To change contents you want to set, go to step 1 of "TV Timer List" on page 261 or step 1 on page 262.

### Information

- You may not be able to use the Media To function even if information is highlighted.

### Address Link Function

You can display a map from the postal address shown on a site or others or can use the location information on the GPS compatible i-appli program. You can send the location information by i-mode mail as well.

#### 1 Select the location information such as postal address ▶ Select an item.

**Read map** . . . . . Starts a GPS compatible i-appli program set by "Select map" of "GPS settings" and sends the location information.


**Map/GPS appli** . . . . . Selects and starts a GPS compatible i-appli program.

**Paste to mail** . . . . . Converts the location information into a URL and composes an i-mode mail message with the URL pasted to the text.


**Check loc. info** . . . . . Displays the details of the selected location information.

## Setting i-mode

You can configure settings for i-mode and Full Browser, and settings common between them. You can configure i-mode settings and Full Browser settings respectively, and the settings are not shared. However, only "Sound setting" is shared.

- Among items changeable from the Function menu while a site is displayed, you can change "i-mode Browser set." during i-mode access and "Full Browser set." during Full Browser access.
- Select each setting and press  (Help). Then the function explanatory display appears.

### i-mode Browser Settings

- 1  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶ **i-mode Browser set.**  
▶ Do the following operations.

<b>Font size setting</b>	See "i-mode" on page 121.
<b>Image display setting</b>	You can set whether to display images or Flash movies included on sites or in screen memos. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Sound setting</b>	You can set whether to make an effect tone sound for when you display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed. ▶ <b>Select a sound volume level.</b>
<b>Movie auto play set.</b>	See page 224.
<b>Movie in page DL set.</b>	You can set whether to obtain moving pictures when you display Flash Video on a site. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>ON</b> . . . . . The confirmation display does not appear. You obtain files automatically. <b>Confirm always</b> . . . . The confirmation display appears each time you display Flash Video. <b>OFF</b> . . . . . You do not obtain files.



<b>Script setting</b>	You can set whether to validate JavaScript. JavaScript is a simple program language that runs on Internet websites. It is widely used to create Internet websites with movements. When "Valid" is set, you can use the JavaScript function to browse Internet websites. ▶ <b>Valid or Invalid</b>
-----------------------	--

<b>Pointer/scroll</b>	
<b>Display pointer</b>	You can set whether to display the pointer. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Speed</b>	You can set scroll speed. ▶ <b>High speed, Medium speed, or Low speed</b>

<b>Phone info use setting</b>	To display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed, the information in the FOMA terminal may be used. You can set whether to validate the information to be used for that case. ▶ <b>Valid or Invalid</b>
-------------------------------	---

<b>Cookie setting</b>	See page 216.
<b>Delete Cookies</b>	See page 216.
<b>Referer setting</b>	See page 216.
<b>Window auto-open set.</b>	You can set whether to prevent a new window from opening automatically by JavaScript. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>

### Information

- <Image display setting>
- Even when "ON" is set, images might not be displayed correctly. In this case,  is displayed.
  - When "OFF" is set,  is displayed and the data file is not received.
  - If you change "Image display setting" of "i-mode Browser set.", "Image display setting" of "User settings" of "1Seg" is also changed.
- <Sound setting>
- Even when you set to sound the effect tone, it may not sound depending on Flash movies.

## Information

### <Script setting>

- Some Internet websites may not be displayed correctly unless "Valid" is set.
- Even when "Valid" is set, it might not work depending on JavaScript.

### <Display pointer>

- For Full Browser, when "OFF" is set, you cannot operate Flash movies.

### <Phone info use setting>

- The available information is as follows:
  - Date and time set by "Set time"
  - Reception level of radio waves
  - Battery level
  - Sound volume set by "Phone" of "Ring volume"
  - Language selected by "Select language"
  - Model name and serial number of FOMA terminal

## Full Browser settings

### 1 i-mode ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Full Browser set. ▶ Do the following operations.

**Display mode setting** See page 197.

**Full display setting** You can set whether to display the display of Full Browser in full display.  
▶ **ON or OFF**

**Zoom** You can set the display size of the Internet website. From the Function menu while a site is displayed, you can enlarge/reduce the display size by each page.  
▶ **Select a display size.**  
• In PC layout mode, you can select a display area by "Select disp. area" from the Function menu while a site is displayed.

**Image display setting** See page 213.

**Sound setting** See page 213.

**Movie auto play set.** See page 213.

**Movie in page DL set.** See page 213.

**Script setting** See page 213.

### Pointer/scroll

**Display pointer** See page 213.

**Speed** See page 213.

**Focus while scroll** You can set whether to highlight links while scrolling.  
▶ **ON or OFF**

**Phone info use setting** See page 213.

**Cookie setting** See page 216.

**Delete Cookies** See page 216.

**Referer setting** See page 216.

**Window auto-open set.** See page 213.

**Full Browser Home set.** You can set Home URL.  
▶ **Select the URL field** ▶ **Enter a URL** ▶ **OK**

**FB permission display** When you start Full Browser, you can set whether to show the confirmation display asking whether to access.

▶ **Select an item.**

**Display always** . . . The confirmation display appears asking whether to access each time you start Full Browser.

**Not display** . . . . . The confirmation display does not appear.  
• Even if "Display always" is set, the setting switches to "Not display" when you select "YES (default)" on the confirmation display.

**FB usage setting** You can set whether to use Full Browser.

**Yes** . . . . . Uses Full Browser.

**No** . . . . . Displays the cautions at the start of Full Browser. Check the cautions, highlight "Yes" and then select "OK", then the setting switches to "Yes", and Full Browser becomes available.




## Information

### <FB usage setting>

- If you replace the UIM with a new one when “Yes” is set, the setting switches to “No”.

## Common Settings

- 1**  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶ **Common settings**  
▶ Do the following operations.

**Certificate setting** See page 217.


### Secure Trans. serv.

**Operate your cert.** See page 218.

**Center host setting** See page 219.


**Access point setting** See page 215.

**i-mode arrival act** See page 88.

**i-mode button setting** You can set an operation for when you press .

#### ▶ Select an item.

#### Display iMenu/Search

... You can access “ Menu”.

#### Display i-mode menu

... You can display the i-mode menu.

## Information

### <i-mode button setting>

- Regardless of the setting, the i-mode menu appears overseas.

## Check Settings

- 1**  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶ **Check settings**  
▶ Select an item.

**i-mode Browser set.** ... You can check the setting contents of i-mode Browser settings.

**Full Browser set.** ... You can check the setting contents of Full Browser settings.

**Common settings** ... You can check the setting contents of Common settings.


## Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

 **8** **1**

※ Normally, you do not need to change this setting.


You can set the host (APN) to use for receiving services other than i-mode (DOCOMO).

If you change this setting, you will not be able to use i-mode.

- 1**  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶ **Common settings**  
▶ **Access point setting**

▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press  (**Edit**)

▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to the selected one.
- To delete the stored host, press , select “Delete”, enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select “YES”.

## 2 Do the following operations.

**Host name** ▶ Enter a host name.  
• You can enter up to 9 full-pitch/18 half-pitch characters.

**Host number** ▶ Enter a host number.  
• You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

**Host address** ▶ Enter a host address.  
• You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

**Host address 2** ▶ Enter a host address 2.  
• You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

## 3 Press (**Finish**).

## Setting Cookie


By using cookies, you can effectively access the Internet websites you have accessed once.

A cookie is the system to temporarily save personal information such as the date/time or number of times you accessed an Internet website. The information from the server is written into the FOMA terminal, temporarily saved, and used for content services.

- If a cookie is sent, the information such as the date/time or number of times you accessed an Internet website is sent to the website. Note that even if your information is detected by a third party by sending a cookie, we cannot be held responsible for that. However, you may not be able to correctly display or use some Internet websites or content services unless the cookie setting is valid.

### Cookie Setting

You can set whether to validate cookies. You can set it for i-mode and Full Browser respectively.

- 1  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings**  
▶ **i-mode Browser set. or Full Browser set.**  
▶ **Cookie setting** ▶ **Select an item.**

**Valid** . . . Always validates cookies. The confirmation display does not appear before a cookie is sent or received.

#### Confirm always (Sending)

. . . . . Validates cookie's sending/receiving. The confirmation display appears each time a cookie is sent.

#### Confirm always (Receiving)

. . . . . Validates cookie's sending/receiving. The confirmation display appears each time a cookie is received.

#### Confirm always (Sending/receiving)

. . . . . The confirmation display appears asking whether to permit a cookie to be sent or received each time a cookie is sent or received.


**Invalid** . . . Always invalidates cookies.

- When you replace your UIM with another one, "Invalid" is set. If you change the setting with another UIM inserted, the display for entering your Terminal Security Code might appear.

### Information

- When "Sending", "Receiving", or "Sending/receiving" is set, the confirmation display might consecutively appear asking whether to send/receive (update) cookies depending on the Internet website.

### Delete Cookies

- 1  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings**  
▶ **i-mode Browser set. or Full Browser set.**  
▶ **Delete Cookies** ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**  
▶ **YES**


## Setting Referrer

The referrer denotes the link source information. When a referrer is sent, the information about which page you have accessed from it is sent to the site.

Note that even if your information is detected by a third party by sending a referrer, we cannot be held responsible for that.

### Referrer Setting



You can set whether to send a referrer while an Internet website is open. You can set it for i-mode and Full Browser respectively.





- 1  **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings**  
▶ **i-mode Browser set. or Full Browser set.**  
▶ **Referrer setting** ▶ **Select an item.**

**Valid** . . . . . Sends a referrer.

**Invalid** . . . . . Does not send a referrer.

## Operating SSL/TLS Certificates

- 1  **i-mode** **>** **i-mode settings** **>** **Common settings**  
**>** **Certificate setting**  
**>** **Highlight a certificate and press**  **( FUNC )**  
**>** **Do the following operations.**

<b>Certificate info</b>	The subject name, author, validity period, and serial number of the certificate are displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can check the certificate also by pressing  <b>( Select )</b> instead of  <b>( FUNC )</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Valid/Invalid</b>	The selected item is invalidated; then "  " changes to "  ". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you select an invalid certificate, it will be validated.</li> <li>If you set a certificate to invalid, you cannot display the sites with that SSL/TLS certificate.</li> <li>You cannot set "DOCOMO Cert 2" to "Invalid".</li> </ul>

### Certificates used for SSL/TLS communication

Certificate . . . . .	Certificates issued by the authenticating company and stored in the FOMA terminal at purchase.
DOCOMO Certificate . . . . .	Certificates required for connecting to the FirstPass Center or FirstPass sites; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).
User Certificate . . . . .	Certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center by selecting "Operate your cert." from "Secure trans. serv." of "Common settings" of "i-mode settings"; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).

## Setting FirstPass

User certificates verify that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificates are stored on the UIM for the use on FirstPass sites.

When you cannot display a FirstPass site because the user certificate on the UIM has expired or the required user certificate is not stored on the UIM, you can request the issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available with the blue UIM.
- The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass Center site are subject to change.
- To show FirstPass sites, you can use Full Browser as well.
- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Messages R/F while connected to the FirstPass Center.
- Set the date and time using "Set time" beforehand to connect to the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available overseas.

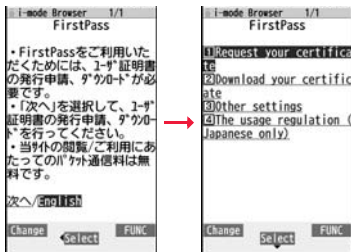
### Client Authentication

- With the FOMA terminal, server authentication and client authentication are performed for safer data exchange. The site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and verify each other for safer communication service. By getting client authentication, you can enjoy more secure communication services.
- Client authentication is available via the Internet communication from the FOMA terminal or via the Internet communication with the FOMA terminal connected to a personal computer. To use the personal computer for the client authentication, you need to install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the "FirstPassPCsoft" folder on the CD-ROM. Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to see "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe® Reader® from the provided CD-ROM to see it. For details such as how to use it, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

## Access FirstPass Center

You can perform user certificate operations on the site of the FirstPass Center site.

- 1 **MENU** ▶ **i-mode** ▶ **i-mode settings** ▶ **Common settings**  
▶ **Secure trans. serv.** ▶ **Operate your cert.** ▶ **English**



Site display for the FirstPass Center

### Information

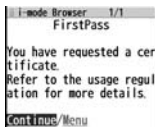
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the regulation.
- You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the FirstPass Center.

## Request Issue of User Certificate for Download

You need to request the issue of the user certificate before you download it. When requesting the issue of your user certificate is completed, download the user certificate. After the downloading is completed, it is saved on the UIM and the FirstPass sites will be displayable.

- 1 **Site display for the FirstPass Center**  
▶ **Request your certificate** ▶ **Continue**

- For an update, the message "Updating user certificate" is displayed.
- When you have already requested the issue of the user certificate, select "Download your certificate" from the site display for the FirstPass Center, go to step 3.



- 2 **Enter your PIN2 code.**

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 124 for PIN2 code.



- 3 **Download** ▶ **Continue**

- If you do not download the user certificate immediately, select "Menu". From the confirmation display asking whether to close the SSL/TLS page, select "YES" to return to the site display for the FirstPass Center.

### Information

- Before downloading a new or an updated certificate, be sure to request the user certificate to be issued. User certificates cannot be downloaded until the request for issue has been made.

## Access Sites with User Certificate

You can connect to FirstPass sites with your user certificate.

- 1 **Call up a FirstPass site** ▶ **Select an item** ▶ **YES**

- 2 **Enter your PIN2 code.**

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 124 for PIN2 code.

### Information

- If you try to connect to the FirstPass site without the user certificate or when its available period is expired, the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue connecting to the site. Select "NO" to return to the previous page. Download or update the user certificate from the FirstPass Center site and then access the site again.
- The packet communication fee for accessing the FirstPass site is included in Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full or Pake-hodai double.

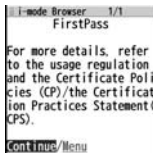
## Request Revocation of User Certificate

You can revoke the downloaded user certificate.

### 1 Site display of the FirstPass Center ▶ Other settings ▶ Revoke your certificate ▶ YES ▶ Enter your PIN2 code.

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 124 for PIN2 code.

### 2 Continue ▶ Continue ▶ Continue



#### Information

- To use FirstPass after revoking a certificate, you need to apply again for your user certificate to be issued and then download it.
- See page 217 for how to view the download user certificate.

## <Center Host Setting>

## Changing Hosts for Certificate Issue

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

### 1 (MENU) ▶ i-mode ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Common settings ▶ Secure trans. serv. ▶ Center host setting ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press (M) (Edit).

- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to that host.
- To delete the stored host, press (F) (FUNC), select "Delete", enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select "YES".

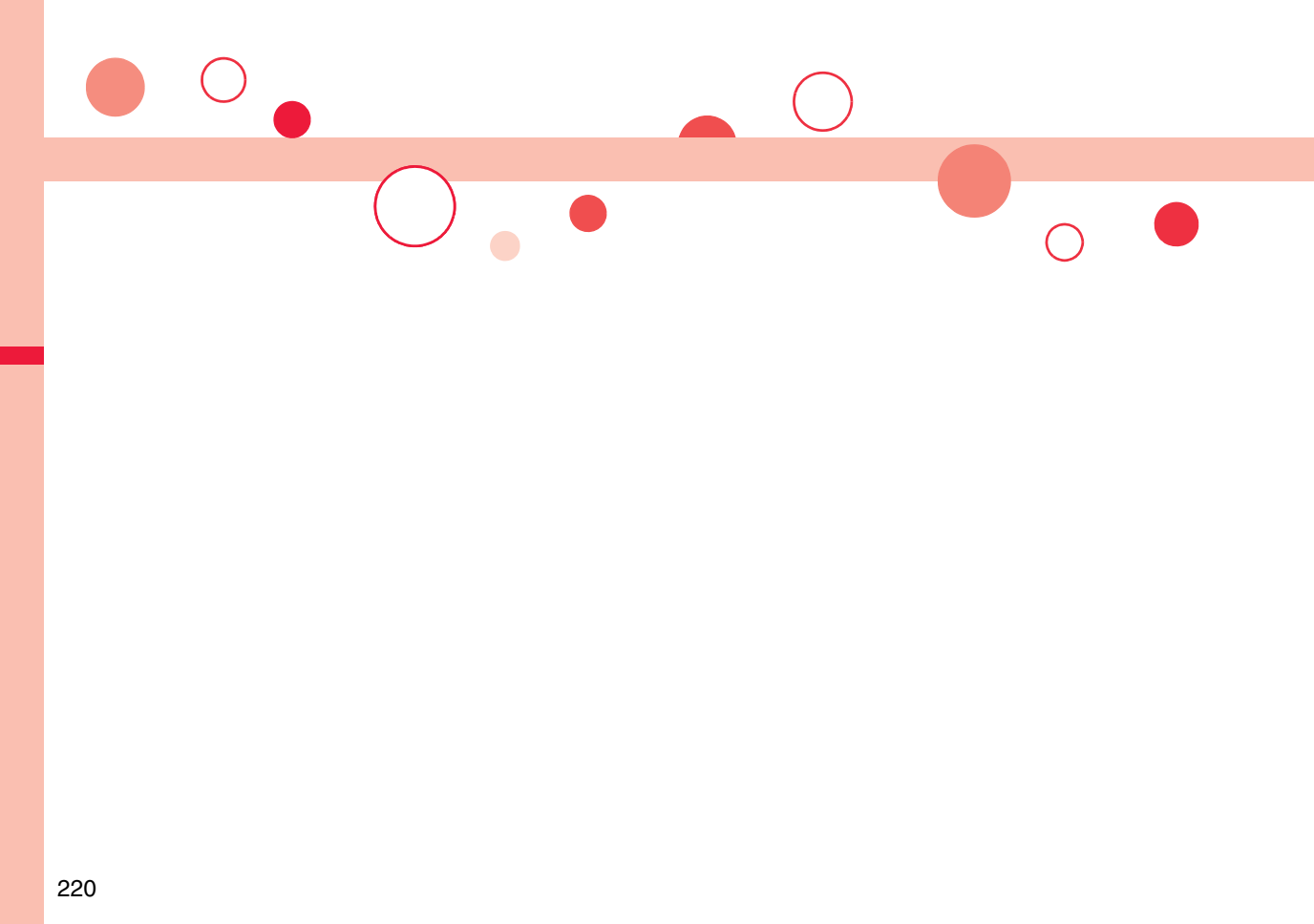
## 2 Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Do the following operations.

Default URL	▶ Enter a default URL. • You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶ Enter a host address. • You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

## 3 Press (M) (Finish).

#### ■ Before Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DOCOMO's electronic authentication service. By using FirstPass, client authentication is enabled, whereby the site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and perform mutual authentication.
- When requesting issue of a user certificate, carefully read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" on the display, agree to this, and then make the request.
- You need to enter the PIN2 code to use the user certificate. Once you have entered your PIN2 code, all subsequent operations will be deemed to be done by you, so be careful not to let anyone else use your UIM or PIN2 code.
- If your UIM is lost or stolen, "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual can revoke your user certificate.
- DOCOMO bears no obligation or responsibility with regard to the sites and information provided by FirstPass sites. Please solve the problem between you and FirstPass sites.
- DOCOMO and the CA do not guarantee security when you use FirstPass and SSL/TLS, so you should use them on your own judgment and responsibility.



# i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier

<b>Using i-motion/Movie</b>	
i-motion/Movie .....	222
Downloading i-motion/Movie from Sites ..... <Download i-motion/Movie>	223
Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion/Movie ..... <Movie Auto Play Setting>	224
<b>Using i-Channel</b>	
i-Channel .....	225
Using i-Channel .....	225
Setting How Ticker is Displayed .....	226
<b>Using i-concier</b>	
i-concier .....	226
Displaying i-concier Screen .....	227
Configuring i-concier Settings .....	228

## i-motion/Movie

i-motion is a data file composed of video, sound and music, and you can play it back after downloading from an i-motion compatible site into your FOMA terminal. You can also set it for a ring tone.

Also, by using high speed communication, you can play back smooth and high-quality movie files provided by portal sites, movie specialty sites and other sites on the Internet.

Two types of i-motion files or movie files are available for each. The type of the obtained i-motion file or movie file differs depending on the site or file.

You can save up to 10 Mbytes per file. However, note that the file size for playing back streaming type of movie files is not limited in Full Browser.

- Movie Player supports playback of Windows Media® Video and Windows Media® Audio.
- When downloading or streaming an i-motion/movie file, you might receive a bulky file. Note that you are charged a high packet communication fee for a bulky sent/received file such as a movie file of streaming type whose size is not limited in Full Browser. For the details of the packet communication fee and billing plan, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### ■ Type of i-motion file

Categories	Description
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion file. The data is deleted after playback, so you cannot play it back again or save it to the FOMA terminal.
Normal type (can be saved)	Plays back after obtaining all the data of an i-motion file.
	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion file. After obtaining, you can play it back in the same way as "Plays back after obtaining".

### ■ Type of movie file

Categories	Description
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Plays back while obtaining a movie file. The data is deleted after playback, so you cannot play it back again or save it.
Download type (can be saved)	Plays back after obtaining all the data of a movie file.
	Plays back while obtaining a movie file. You can play it back without re-connection by saving it on the microSD card after download. Up to 10 Mbytes of a file can be downloaded.
	To the microSD card, you can save not only data files obtained by the FOMA terminal but also movie files obtained or created on a personal computer, and then play them back. You can save a bulky file of up to the space size of microSD card.

- The distribution server for streaming type supports Windows Media Services 4.1 and Windows Media Services 9. You cannot play back a streaming type of movie file distributed from other than Windows Media Services 4.1 and Windows Media Services 9.  
The live distribution that distributes files in real time and the on-demand distribution that distributes previously prepared movie files are available as distribution systems.
- Some sites check the operating environment (browser type, OS type, etc.) and might not enable to play back movie files.
- See page 350 for the supported file format of movie files.



## Downloading i-motion/Movie from Sites

### Play Back i-motion/Movie Files Obtained from a Site

#### 1 Select an i-motion/movie file from an i-motion/movie obtainable site

The data acquisition starts.

- For a movie file, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select "YES".

- If it is an i-motion/movie file of streaming type, it is played back while being obtained.

When "Movie auto play set." is set to "Valid", the i-motion file which is playable while being obtained and the movie file of download type are also played back while being obtained.

- When "Movie auto play set." is set to "Valid", the i-motion file which is playable after obtaining all the data files is automatically played back after obtaining is completed.

#### 2 Select "Play" from a data acquisition completion display.


See page 348 for the operation during playback.

- Select "Property" to display the i-motion/movie information. (See " motion info" on page 351 and "Contents info" on page 351)
- See page 205 for saving a screen memo.

### About license (Windows Media DRM)

- Among the movie files protected by the license, you can play back the streaming type of movie files only. You cannot play back the download type of movie files protected by the license.
- You might not be able to play back movie files depending on the license setting of the movie files.
- If files are stored to the maximum when you try to obtain a license to save it to the FOMA terminal, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete currently stored licenses to save a new one. Select "YES" to delete all the stored licenses to save it. You need to obtain a license again to play back a movie file whose license is deleted.

### When downloading i-motion file is suspended

When you press  to suspend downloading or when downloading is suspended by an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading.

Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the data acquisition completion display for a partially savable i-motion file. Select "Save pt." to save that file to any folder in " motion" in "Data box".


You can re-download the rest of the partially saved file from "Data box".



- The file name of the partially saved i-motion file is "movie".
- When the playable period or playable deadline of the partially saved i-motion file has expired, you cannot download the remaining segments of the file. You can delete the partially saved file when you try to download the file.

### When obtaining a movie file is suspended

The operation differs depending on the type of movie file being obtained or the reason of suspension.



#### Streaming type


After the suspension by an incoming call, alarm notification, or disconnection of communication, the obtaining is in pause state. Press  to resume playback from the suspended point.

The display before playback returns when you suspend obtaining by pressing  or .

#### Download type

When you cannot continue downloading after the suspension by an incoming call, alarm notification, or disconnection of communication, the data acquisition completion display appears. Select "Play" to play back the obtained segments of the file. Select "Save" to save the obtained segments of the file. (See "Save i-motion/Movie Files" on page 224) Select "ResumeDL" to resume obtaining from the suspended point.

The confirmation display appears asking whether to discard the data when you suspend obtaining by pressing  or .

- In the case of download type of movie files, downloading continues even when a voice call, mail message, or Message R/F comes in or alarm sounds.
- Depending on the accessed site or movie file, you cannot resume from the suspended point also by pressing  or selecting "ResumeDL". In that case, the obtaining resumes from the top of the file.

**Information**

- Note that there is no upper size limit for a streaming type of movie file when it is obtained via Full Browser and you might exchange the unlimitedly bulky file. When obtaining it, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back.
- Depending on the accessed site or i-motion/movie file, you might not be able to obtain the data or play it back while obtaining, or play it back after obtaining. Also, you cannot obtain an i-motion file in ASF format.
- See page 349 for the file formats of playable i-motion files.
- In case of normal type of i-motion files, obtaining files continues even when you stop playback of the files being obtained.  
In case of download type of movie files, the data acquisition completion display appears when you stop playback of the files being obtained.
- Even if "Movie auto play set." is set to "Valid", the obtained file is not automatically played back if it has been played back while being obtained.
- If it is an i-motion file you can partially save or re-obtain from a partially saved file, you cannot use other functions while obtaining the i-motion file, playing it back while obtaining, or showing the acquisition completion display.
- For an i-motion file that has restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable period, or playable deadline, "D" is displayed at the head of the title. An i-motion/movie file with the playable period restricted cannot be played back before or after the restriction period (including the case that playable period is expired during download). If you remove the battery and keep it aside for a long time, the date/time information in your FOMA terminal might be reset. In that case, you cannot play back the i-motion/movie file that has restrictions on the playable period and playable deadline. See "i-motion info" and "Contents info" for checking the playback restrictions.
- Depending on the line speed, line state, or radio wave conditions, the playback during obtaining might be suspended or the images might be distorted. You can repeatedly play back the normal type of i-motion files and the download type of movie files after obtaining, but cannot play back the streaming type of i-motion/movie files.
- If you try to play back a movie file with a low battery, the battery alert tone sounds regardless of the setting of "Keypad sound", and the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. When the battery becomes low during playback, the playback pauses, and the confirmation display appears asking whether to end the playback.

**Save i-motion/Movie Files**

You can save the obtained i-motion/movie files to your FOMA terminal or microSD card. You can save up to 250 Mbytes of files in total sharing the memory space with other data files. (See page 530)

## 1 A data acquisition completion display ► Save ► YES ► Select a destination folder.

- See page 379 for the storage location for when you save the movie file or save the i-motion file on the microSD card.
- See page 210 when i-motion/movie files are stored to the maximum.

**Information**

- Depending on the i-motion/movie file, you might not be able to save the obtained data.
- You cannot play back partially saved i-motion/movie files from Data Box.

**<Movie Auto Play Setting>****Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion/Movie**

You can set whether to validate automatic playback of i-motion/movie file, for when you have obtained a normal type of i-motion file or download type of movie file from a site or have selected a screen memo which contains a normal type of i-motion file or download type of movie file. You can set it for i-mode and Full Browser respectively.

## 1 i-mode ► i-mode settings ► i-mode Browser set. or Full Browser set. ► Movie auto play set. ► Valid or Invalid

**Information**

- Note that a streaming type of i-motion/movie file is played back automatically even if this function is set to "Invalid".

## i-Channel



This service distributes information such as news and weather forecast to i-Channel mobile phones. The automatically received latest information flows on the Stand-by display by tickers. You can read it on the i-Channel list by pressing the i-Channel key. (See page 225) Further, two types of channels, "Basic channel" provided by DOCOMO and "Favorite channel" provided by IPs (Information Providers) are available. You are not charged a packet communication fee for auto-updates of "Basic channel" information.

You are charged a packet communication fee for auto-updates of "Favorite channel" information which is enabled by registering your favorite channels. Note that you are separately charged a packet communication fee for browsing detailed information for both "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel".

When you use the international roaming service, you are charged a packet communication fee for both auto-update and browsing detailed information.

- i-Channel is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for i-Channel).
- For details on i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The i-Channel service is provided in Japanese only.

### Information





- When the FOMA terminal is turned off or if radio wave conditions are bad such as when it is out of the service area, you may not be able to receive information even if you have contracted to the i-Channel service. In that case, select the channel for unsigned subscribers that appears by pressing ; then you can now receive information, and tickers flow on the Stand-by display. If your FOMA terminal remains in the default state, you may not be able to receive information. Press , and then information is received and tickers flow on the Stand-by display.
- To receive i-Channel information overseas, you are charged a communication fee by channel.
- After you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting is automatically set to off.
- If you cancel the contract for the i-mode service before you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting remains on.

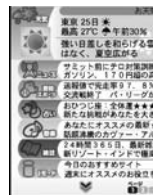
## Using i-Channel

When "Ticker ON/OFF" is set to "ON", up to 10 ticker files for the latest information flow repeatedly on the Stand-by display. If you want to know more about the information, you can obtain the details from the Channel list.

### 1 Press .

The Channel list appears regardless of the "Ticker ON/OFF" setting.



-  links during receiving information.
- You cannot show the Channel list even by pressing  from the horizontal Stand-by display.
- You can perform the operation of "Sound setting" (see page 213) and "Retry" (see page 202) by pressing  (  ) from the Channel list.



Channel list

### 2 Select an item (link).

#### Information

- The ring tone does not sound and the vibrator does not work even when information comes in. In addition, the Call/Charging indicator does not light or flicker.
  - Tickers are not displayed in the following cases:
    - When the information is automatically updated after that or when you press  to receive the latest information, tickers automatically flow.
      - When the UIM is replaced.
      - When "Access point setting" is changed.
      - When "Reset i-Channel" is executed.
      - When "Reset settings" is executed.
      - When "Initialize" is executed.
- However, the information might not be automatically updated when "Access point setting" is changed. To receive the latest information, press  to display the Channel list.
- When "Access point setting" is changed, the i-Channel connecting end is also changed. (In ordinary, you do not need to change the setting.)
  - Depending on your usage state, you might receive information from i-Channel when you display the Channel list.
  - Even if you change "i-mode" of "Font size setting", the font size for the Channel list might not change instantly.

## Setting How Ticker is Displayed

1 **i-mode** **i-Channel** **Do the following operations.**

<b>Channel list</b>	You can display the Channel list. Go to step 2 on page 225.
<b>Ticker ON/OFF</b>	You can set whether to display tickers on the Stand-by display. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Ticker font size set.</b>	You can set the font size of tickers. ▶ <b>Extra large, Large, or Standard</b> • You can check the ticker by pressing  (Play). Press  to return to the former display.
<b>Ticker color set.</b>	You can set the background color and font color of ticker. ▶ <b>Select a pattern.</b> • You can check the ticker by pressing  (Play). Press  to return to the former display.
<b>Ticker scroll speed</b>	You can set the ticker flowing speed. ▶ <b>Select a speed.</b> • You can check the ticker by pressing  (Play). Press  to return to the former display.
<b>Reset i-Channel</b>	You can initialize the ticker information and set "Ticker ON/OFF" to "ON". ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Information

- You can perform "Ticker ON/OFF", "Ticker font size set.", "Ticker color set.", "Ticker scroll speed", and "Reset i-Channel" for each mode of 2in1. However, i-Channel information is initialized for all modes. Further, when 2in1 is deactivated, they become common to the settings in A Mode.

#### <Ticker ON/OFF>

- In Public mode (Drive mode), or during Lock All, tickers are not displayed.

### Information

#### <Reset i-Channel>

- Tickers are not displayed after you execute "Reset i-Channel". When the information is automatically updated after that or when you press to receive the latest information, tickers automatically flow.

## i-concier


"i-concier" is a service that supports you in leading a happy life just as a clerk or concierge does. The service holds a variety of your data (area information about your neighborhood, Schedule, ToruCa, Phonebook, etc.) and sends information with good timing to you according to your living area or preference. Also this service automatically updates schedule events or ToruCa files to the latest ones, and automatically adds useful information such as about the opening period of various shops to your Phonebook. i-concier information is notified by a Machi-chara image (cartoon character that appears on the Stand-by display).

### ■ Before Using i-concier

- i-concier is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for i-concier).
- If you have not subscribed to Data Security Service (see page 139) but will newly subscribe to i-concier, you will subscribe to Data Security Service as well as i-concier.
- There are two kinds of information; one is sponsored by DOCOMO and the other is by IPs (Information Providers). You are not charged a packet communication fee for DOCOMO-sponsored information. You are separately charged a packet communication fee for IP-sponsored information when receiving it.
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee for using detailed information.
- While using the international roaming service, you are charged a packet communication fee for both receiving information and browsing detailed information. The packet communication fee for the overseas use differs from the one for the domestic use.
- Depending on the contents (information, i-schedule, and others), you might be separately charged an information fee besides the i-concier monthly fee.
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee for auto-updates of i-schedule, ToruCa, and Phonebook.
- For details on i-concier, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## Receive Information

When the FOMA terminal is in the service area, information automatically arrives.

When information arrives, “” appears at the top of the display.





You can save up to 50 received information files. They are overwritten from the oldest one in order.

### 1 When information arrives, “” blinks and the contents are displayed on the Stand-by display.

- When multiple information files are received at a time, the latest one is displayed on the Stand-by display.
- When a display other than the Stand-by display is shown or the horizontal Stand-by display is shown, the message appears to tell the reception. Select “Confirm” to check the detailed information.

### 2 Select a message.

The detailed information is displayed.

- To clear the message, press  from the Stand-by display, or highlight the message and then press  or .
- Highlight a message and then press  (Change) to switch to the display for selecting a desktop icon. (See page 32)

## Displaying i-concier Screen

### 1 i-concier

#### ▶ Select a piece of information.

- An unread mark appears for unread information.
- Schedule event files or ToruCa files might be attached to information, or links are embedded in it for visiting a site of more detailed or related information. To check the contents, select the information with an unread mark.



i-concier display

## Display Schedule/ToruCa

### 1 i-concier display (MENU)

#### ▶ Select an item.

スケジュールへ (To scheduler)

... Displays the Calendar display. (See page 404)

トルカへ (To ToruCa)

... Displays the ToruCa Folder list. (See page 320)

コンテンツ一覧へ (To the contents list)

... Displays respective contents supporting i-concier.



## Configuring i-concier Settings

- 1** i-concier display ▶ (MENU) ▶ 設定 (Settings)  
▶ Do the following operations.

i コンシェルとは (What is i-concier?)	You can display the explanation about i-concier.
インフォメーション 受信設定 (Information receive settings)	You can set the contents of received information, etc.
自動お預かり／更新 設定 (Automatic saving/ Update settings)	See page 140.
その他共通設定 (Other common settings)	You can change the profile or perform setting for overseas use, etc.
お預かりデータ確認 (Check saved data)	See page 140.
お預かりデータ更新 (Update saved data)	See page 141.
お預かり通信履歴 (Communication records of saving)	See page 141.
各種手続き ( i コン シェル解約) [Various procedures (i-concier cancellation)]	You can cancel a contract of i-concier.
i コンシェルご利用 にあたって (For using i-concier)	You can display the usage rules of i-concier.

### Information Display Setting

You can set whether to show the received information on the Stand-by display.

- 1** (MENU) ▶ Set./Service ▶ i-concier ▶ Information disp. set.  
▶ YES or NO

# Camera

Before Using Camera .....	230
Shooting Still Images .....	<Still Image Shoot> 234
Shooting Moving Pictures .....	<Moving Picture Shoot> 237
Changing Settings for Shooting .....	239
Setting Image Size and Image Quality .....	241
Using Bar Code Reader .....	<Bar Code Reader> 245

## ■ Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents of which a third party holds the copyright such as text, image, music, or software programs downloaded from websites on the Internet, or recorded using this product, without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use.

Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this may violate portrait rights.



- You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA terminal to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Before Using Camera

### Notes for when Shooting Images

- Check the lens for any stain before shooting. If the lens is stained, clean the lens with a soft cloth. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or something oily, you will not be able to focus on a subject, or the stains are reflected on still images/moving pictures you shoot.
- Make sure that you do not let fingers, hairs, or the strap overlap the lens when shooting.
- Make sure that you hold the FOMA terminal securely with your hands so that it does not move when shooting. Otherwise, the image may be blurred, especially in a dark place.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal with the lens pointing direct to the sunlight. Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.
- If you shoot under a fluorescent lamp, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speeds, "flicker symptom", horizontal stripes flow from top to bottom or left to right of the display, may result. The color tone for the image may vary depending on a shooting timing.
- If you shoot a subject containing an area of an extremely high brightness such as the reflection of sun light, the bright area might be black-spotted but this is not a malfunction.
- Images shot by the cameras might differ from actual subjects in color tone and brightness.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save still images/moving pictures you shoot.
- A slight time lag is found between when you press  (Record) or another key and when you actually shoot. Therefore, if you shoot a fast moving subject, the subject might be shot with its position slightly away from the one you see it when you press  (Record) or another key.
- Do not remove the microSD card while saving files to it. The FOMA terminal or microSD card could malfunction.
- If you turn off the power while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.

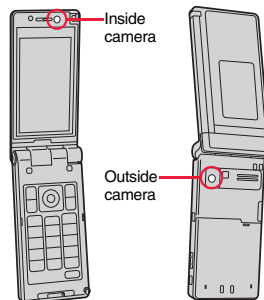
- If the battery pack is removed off while saving a file to the FOMA terminal or microSD card, that data becomes contingent.
- You need to obtain a microSD card separately to use the functions related to the microSD card.  
The microSD card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances, etc. (See page 366)

### Use Cameras

You can use the cameras to shoot still images/moving pictures. You can switch between the front (inside camera) and the back (outside camera). You can shoot still images/moving pictures with the FOMA terminal closed. (See page 235)

The outside camera comes with the focus function to automatically focus on subjects. (See page 240) The Image Stabilizer function enables you to shoot images with less blur. (See page 242)

You can easily operate the main functions for shooting not only from the Function menu but also by operating the keys.





## Operations for shooting

Icon menu operation	
Photo mode (for at least one second)	
Function menu access <sup>※1</sup>	
Folder jump	
Shutter/Save	
TELE	
WIDE	
Settings for Focus (when the outside camera is used)	
Focus function (when the outside camera is used)	,  (halfway)
Change camera-mode <sup>※2</sup>	
Flash setting/ Photo light set. <sup>※3</sup> (when the outside camera is used)	

Icons <sup>※4</sup>	
Image size	
Image quality	
High sensitivity (when the outside camera is used)	
Brightness	
White balance	
Photo mode (When "Scene" is set)	
Auto timer <sup>※4</sup>	
Store in <sup>※5</sup>	
Switch cameras <sup>※6</sup>	
End camera (in ordinary time) Release focus lock (when focus is locked)	(CLR)
End camera	

※1 You cannot operate from Horizontal Open Style.

※2 Each time of pressing switches in order of "Photo mode"→"Movie mode"→"Continuous mode".

※3 Each time of pressing switches in order of "Auto"→"Forced ON"→"Always light ON"→"Forced OFF" in Photo mode.

Each time of pressing switches between "ON" and "OFF" in Continuous/Movie mode.

※4 Each time of pressing switches between "ON" and "OFF".

※5 Each time of pressing switches between "Phone" and "microSD".

※6 In Normal Style, each time of pressing switches between the inside camera and outside camera.

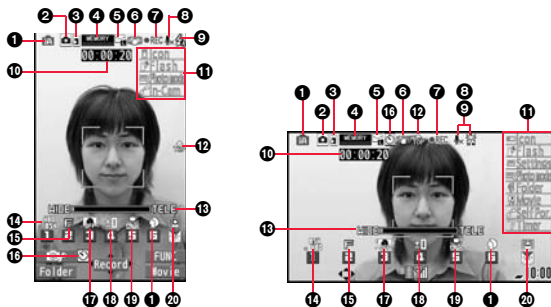
In Horizontal Open Style, each time of pressing switches in order of the inside camera → outside camera → shoot self-portrait.

## Information

- While the camera is activated, the photo light turns on or flickers. When "Movie type set" is set to "Voice" in Movie mode or when you shoot with the inside camera, the Call/Charging indicator flickers. You cannot turn off lighting/flickering.
- You cannot change or mute the volume of the shutter sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody for the shutter sound, either.
- If no key operation is done on the Finder display, the camera is automatically deactivated after about three minutes.
- When you shoot in a dark place, ensure to set "Photo mode" to "Night mode" of "Scene", or to set "High sensitiv." to "ON".
- You can operate the following by the Icon menu: "Image size", "Image quality", "High sensitiv.", "Brightness", "White balance", "Photo mode" and "Focus".

## Camera Setting and Finder Display

On the Finder display, the settings are indicated by bars and icons.



Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
① Photo mode		intelligent Auto	241
		Portraits	
		Scenery	
		Night view	
		Night view+portraits ● Appears only when "Flash setting" is set to "Auto".	
		Close-up	
		Normal	
		Scene	
		Portrait	
		Sports	
	Food		

Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
① Photo mode		Scenery	241
		Night mode	
		Backlight	
		Character	
		Snow	
		Sunset	
		Pet	
② Camera mode		Photo mode	234
		Movie mode	237
		Continuous mode (Auto, Manual, Auto bracket)	235
③ Store in		Phone	242
		microSD	
④ Number of recordable image	—	Number of remaining recordable still images ● Up to 999 images are displayed.	—
	Memory capacity bar	Memory usage state (estimate) in Movie mode ● Displayed in red when the memory space reaches maximum.	—
⑤ File size setting		Mail restrict'n (S)	241
		Mail restrict'n (L)	
		Long time	
⑥ Image stabilizer		Auto	242
⑦ Shooting status		During a moving picture shoot	237
⑧ Movie type set		Records only the video.	243

Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
⑨ Flash setting		Auto	240
		Forced ON	
		Always light ON	
		Forced OFF	
		OFF	
Photo light set.		ON	
		OFF	
⑩ Recordable time	—	Moving picture recordable time (estimate)	—
⑪ Key guidance	—	Displays key guidance.	—
⑫ Top icon		Shows the vertical direction for shooting.	—
⑬ Zoom bar		Zooming status	239
⑭ Image size (Photo mode/Continuous mode)		8M (2448 x 3264)	241
		6M Wide (1836 x 3264)	
		5M (1944 x 2592)	
		3M (1536 x 2048)	
		2M Wide (1080 x 1920)	
		2M (1200 x 1600)	
		Stand-by (480 x 854)	
		Inside camera photo Continuous shooting	
			QVGA (240 x 320)
			QCIF (144 x 176)
			Sub-QCIF (96 x 128)

Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
⑮ Image size (Movie mode)		VGA (640 x 480)	241
		HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	
		QVGA (320 x 240)	
		QCIF (176 x 144)	
		Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	
⑯ Image quality		Normal	241
		Fine	
		Super fine	
⑰ Number of frames for continuous shooting		Number of frames at "Manual" shooting in "Continuous mode"	243
		• This is displayed at ⑦ in Horizontal Open Style.	
Auto timer		ON	245
⑱ High sensitivity		ON	242
		OFF	
⑲ Brightness		Brightness of shot image	242
⑲ White balance		Auto	242
		Fine	
		Cloudy	
		Light bulb	
		Fluorescent light	
		Face detection	
⑳ Focus		Face detection	242
		Auto	
		Close-up	
		Landscape	


## &lt;Still Image Shoot&gt;

## Shooting Still Images

- See page 340 for how to display saved still images.



## Shoot a Still Image




1 Press  or  (for at least one second).

- The Camera menu is displayed by  ▶ LifeKit ▶ Camera. You can start also by selecting "Photo mode" from the Camera menu.
- While "Work with style" is set to "Camera", you can start the camera in Photo Mode also by switching to Horizontal Open Style from the Stand-by display.
- You can paste the Camera menu to the desktop. (See page 32)



2 Press ,  or .

A still image is shot. The Post View display for confirmation appears.

- If "Focus" is set to "Face detection" or "Auto" when you shoot with the outside camera, shooting starts after the focus operation.
- When you shoot with  by the outside camera, you can focus on a subject by pressing  (halfway). (See page 240)
- The image appears horizontally reversed (mirrored) when you shoot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when played back.
- When you use the outside camera, the Finder display appears on the Private window when you close the FOMA terminal from the Finder display; you can shoot still images with the FOMA terminal closed. (See page 235)
- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the still image is automatically saved.

3 Press ,  or .


The still image you shot is saved to the "Camera" folder of "My picture" in the FOMA terminal or to the microSD card.

- See "Store in" and "Select storage" for selecting a storage location.
- When you shot with the inside camera, you can save the still image as an mirrored (horizontally reversed) image by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Mirror save".
- Press  to cancel the shot still image and return to the Finder display.



















## Shooting your own image with the outside camera

You can shoot your own image (shooting self-portrait) in Horizontal Open Style, watching the Finder display on the Private window.

1. Press  a few times from the Finder display in Horizontal Open Style to show the Finder display on the Private window.

2. Press .




- Press  /  to adjust the magnification.
- You can focus on a subject by pressing  (halfway). (See page 240)
- For the settings for shooting, you can change "Flash setting" only.
- The Post View display appears on the display. Press  from the Post View display to cancel the shot still image and to show the Finder display on the Private window. When you press ,  or  to save the shot still image, the Finder display returns on the display.
- When you press  (FUNC) from the Post View display and select "Mirror save", you can save the still image as an mirrored (horizontally reversed) image.
- Press  through , , , , ,  and  to switch the Finder display from the Private window to the main display.

## Shooting still images with the FOMA terminal closed

Even if the FOMA terminal is closed, you can shoot the still images while watching the Finder display on the Private window.

### 1 Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA terminal closed.

The Finder display appears in the Private window.


- Press / to adjust the magnification.
- For the setting for shooting, you can change "Flash setting" only.
- Press and hold  for at least one second to end camera.
- When the unused space in the storage location set with "Store in" is not enough, you may not be able to shoot still images with the FOMA terminal closed.



Finder display  
(Private window)

### 2 Press .

A still image is shot. The Post View display does not appear; the still image is automatically saved to the "Camera" folder of "My picture" in the FOMA terminal or to the microSD card.

- If "Focus" is set to "Face detection" or "Auto", shooting starts after the focus operation.
- You can focus on a subject by pressing  (halfway). (See page 240)

## Continuous Shooting

You can continuously shoot still images. You can set the number of frames, and shooting interval for auto-shooting. (See page 243)

### 1 Press or (for at least one second)






- The camera starts in the mode you used last time, "Auto", "Manual", or "Auto bracket". To change Continuous Mode, see "Continuous mode" of "Cont. shooting set".








Finder display

### 2 Press , or .

Continuous shooting starts.



When "Continuous mode" is set to "Manual", press , , or  the number of times of shooting frames. The Post View display for confirmation appears.

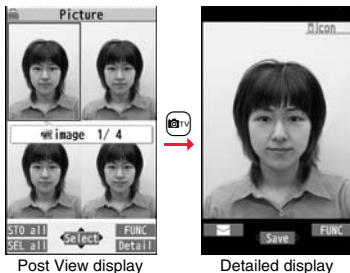
- If "Focus" is set to "Auto" when you shoot with the outside camera, shooting starts after the focus operation.
- When you shoot with the outside camera by , you can focus on a subject by pressing  (halfway). (See page 240)
- To cancel shooting midway, press . If you shoot in the "Auto" or "Auto bracket" mode of "Continuous mode", you can cancel also by pressing  (). You can cancel shooting also by closing the FOMA terminal.
- The image appears horizontally reversed (mirrored) when you shoot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when played back.
- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the still images are automatically saved.

### To select a still image and save it

#### Select a still image and press (Detail)

▶ ,  or 

- Press  from the detailed display to show the previous or next still image.
- When you shot with the inside camera, you can save the still image as an mirrored (horizontally reversed) image, by pressing  (FUNC) from the detailed display and selecting "Mirror save".



Post View display

Detailed display

### To select multiple still images and save them

#### Select still images to be saved and press , (Select),


, or  (Save) ▶ Save or Mirror save

- is added to the selected still images.

### To save all still images

 (STO all) ▶ Save or Mirror save

The still images you shot are saved to the "Camera" folder of "My picture" in the FOMA terminal or to the microSD card.

- See "Store in" and "Select storage" for selecting a storage location.
- Press  from the Post View display to cancel the shot still images and return to the Finder display.



#### Information

- In Horizontal Open Style, all the still images are saved as normal (not mirrored) images.

#### Information

- The image quality may be coarse depending on "Image size" or "Display size".
- When you shoot, the tone selected for "Shutter sound" sounds regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.
- Even when a mail message comes in while shooting, the shooting operation continues. Though unread message icon is displayed, the Mail Receiving display is not displayed.
- If you end the camera function by using Multitask while shooting, unsaved still images are deleted.
- When shooting, hold the FOMA terminal securely to avoid blurring images.
- When you shoot in Photo Mode, flash works in accordance with the setting of "Flash setting".
- The photo light turns on at shooting in Continuous Mode with "Auto" or "Auto bracket" set. It flickers in Continuous Mode with "Manual" set. However, it turns on even in Continuous Mode with "Manual" set, when "Photo light set." is set to "ON".

### Function Menu of the Post View Display in Photo Mode/ Detailed Display in Continuous Mode

<b>Save</b>	See page 234 and page 236.
<b>Mirror save</b>	See page 234 and page 236.
<b>Attach to mail</b>	<p>You can save the still image you shot and attach it to an i-mode mail message.</p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 146.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing  (Mail).</li> </ul>
<b>Attach loc. info</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>By position loc.</b></p> <p>... Measures the current location (see page 328) and stores the location information. After checking the location information, press .</p> <p><b>From loc. history</b></p> <p>... Select a piece of location information from Location History (see page 332) and store it.</p>

<b>Set display</b>	You can save the shot still image and paste it to the Stand-by display and others for displaying. Go to "Set display" on page 341. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even when "Store in" is set to "microSD", the still image is saved to the FOMA terminal.</li> </ul>
<b>Change frame</b>	You can replace the frame added to the shot still image with a new one. <b>▶ Select a frame.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  to show the previous or next frame.</li> <li>• To reselect a frame, press  (Cancel).</li> </ul> <b>▶  (Set)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot release the frame.</li> </ul>
<b>Store in</b>	See page 242.
<b>Normal display/ Mirror display</b>	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).
<b>Display size</b>	See page 243.
<b>File restriction</b>	See page 244.
<b>Icon</b>	See page 243.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the shot still image.

### Information

#### <Attach to mail>

- When the file size is larger than 2 Mbytes, the file is converted to 2 Mbytes or less. In this case, the still images before and after conversion are saved to the "Camera" folder of "My picture" in the FOMA terminal.

## Function Menu of the Post View Display in Continuous Mode

<b>Save</b>	See page 236.
<b>Store all/animat'n</b>	You can save all the shot still images to store as an original animation. <b>▶ Save or Mirror save ▶ &lt;New&gt;</b>
<b>Store in</b>	See page 242.
<b>Normal display/ Mirror display</b>	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).

<b>File restriction</b>	See page 244.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the shot still images.

### Information

#### <Store all/animat'n>

- When "Store in" is set to "microSD", this function is not available.
- If you have shot a single still image only, this function is not available.

## <Moving Picture Shoot> Shooting Moving Pictures

- See page 348 for playing back the saved moving pictures.

### 1 or (for at least one second)

**▶ (Movie)**

- The Camera menu is displayed by ▶ LifeKit  
**▶ Camera.** You can start also by selecting "Movie mode" from the Camera menu.
- You can paste the Camera menu to the desktop. (See page 32)



Finder display

### 2 Press (Record), or .

Recording starts.

- If "Focus" is set to "Auto" when you shoot with the outside camera, shooting starts after the focus operation. While shooting, the subject is automatically focused regardless of the setting of "Focus".
- When you shoot with the outside camera by , you can focus on a subject by pressing (halfway). (See page 240)
- When you shoot with the inside camera, the horizontally reversed (mirrored) image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.


### 3 Press ( **Stop** ), or .

Recording ends. The Post View display for confirmation appears.

- Recording automatically ends when a call comes in, the low battery alarm sounds, or the FOMA terminal is closed during recording.
- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", or "File size setting" is set to "Long time", the moving picture is automatically saved.

### 4 Press ( **Save** ), or .

The shot moving picture is saved to the "Camera" folder of "i-motion" in the FOMA terminal or to the microSD card.

- See "Store in" and "Select storage" for selecting a storage location.
- Press  to cancel the shot moving picture and return to the Finder display.



Post View display

### If recording ends or the image quality deteriorates while shooting

When you use a microSD card that you repeatedly save/delete data files to/from, the writing speed slows down, recording might end midway or the image quality might deteriorate.




Do the following operations to improve such symptoms:

- 1. Copy all the data files from the microSD card onto your personal computer as they are.**
  - When your personal computer is set so as to hide folders and files, change the settings to display those folders and files, and then operate. For how to change the settings, refer to the operating manual or Help on the personal computer you use.
  - Do not change the names of folders and files copied to the personal computer.
- 2. Use the personal computer to delete all the data files on the microSD card.**
  - Do not format the microSD card. The data files might not be played back.
- 3. Copy the data files copied in step 1 back to the microSD card.**
  - Be sure to copy them back to the same microSD card. Even if you save the copyrighted data files on another microSD card, you cannot play them back.

### Information

- The shutter tone set by "Shutter sound" sounds when shooting starts and ends regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.
- If you do key operations while recording, the operation sound may be picked up.
- The photo light turns on/flickers while you are recording.
- When you switch the subject you are shooting to a subject with a difference in perspective, it takes time to focus on the new subject.
- When you have difficulty focusing on a subject, switch to another subject. Then the subject might come into focus.
- The operating speed of focusing is slowed down in a dark place.

### Function Menu of the Post View Display in Movie Mode

<b>Play</b>	See page 348.
<b>Save</b>	See page 238.
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can save the shot moving picture and attach it to an i-mode mail message. Go to step 2 on page 146. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing  ( ).</li> </ul>
<b>Set as stand-by</b>	You can save the shot moving picture and set it for the Stand-by display.
<b>Set as standbyWide</b>	
<b>Store in</b>	See page 242.
<b>Display size</b>	See page 243.
<b>File restriction</b>	See page 244.
<b>Icon</b>	See page 243.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the shot moving picture.

### Information

<Set as stand-by> <Set as standbyWide>

- Some moving pictures might not be displayed correctly.
- See page 111 for playback of the moving picture set for the Stand-by display.



## Changing Settings for Shooting

You can set the camera when shooting images.

### Use Zoom

You can display the image through the camera in “WIDE” or “TELE”.

The maximum magnification for each size is as follows:

#### ■ Outside camera

Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Photo	8M (2448 x 3264)	21 levels	2.5 times
	6M Wide (1836 x 3264)	21 levels	2.5 times
	5M (1944 x 2592)	21 levels	2.5 times
	3M (1536 x 2048)	21 levels	2.5 times
	2M Wide (1080 x 1920)	21 levels	2.5 times
	2M (1200 x 1600)	21 levels	2.5 times
	Stand-by (480 x 854)	21 levels	2.5 times
	VGA (480 x 640)	21 levels	2.5 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	31 levels	5.1 times
	QCIF (144 x 176)	31 levels	8.5 times
Continuous	Sub-QCIF (96 x 128)	31 levels	12.7 times
	VGA (480 x 640)	21 levels	2.5 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	31 levels	5.1 times
	QCIF (144 x 176)	31 levels	8.5 times
	Sub-QCIF (96 x 128)	31 levels	12.7 times
Movie (Image stabilizer: Auto)	VGA (640 x 480)	21 levels	1.9 times
	HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	21 levels	1.9 times
	QVGA (320 x 240)	31 levels	2.8 times (3.8 times)
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	5.2 times (6.3 times)
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	7.1 times (9.5 times)

Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Movie (Image stabilizer: OFF)	VGA (640 x 480)	21 levels	2.5 times
	HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	21 levels	2.5 times
	QVGA (320 x 240)	31 levels	3.8 times (5.1 times)
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	6.9 times (8.5 times)
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	9.5 times (12.7 times)

● When the maximum magnification for Horizontal Open Style differs from the one for Normal Style, it is mentioned in ( ).

#### ■ Inside camera


Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Photo/ Continuous	VGA (640 x 480)	1 level	1.0 time
	QVGA (240 x 320)	1 level	1.0 time
	QCIF (144 x 176)	6 levels	1.5 times
	Sub-QCIF (96 x 128)	21 levels	2.1 times
Movie	VGA (640 x 480)	1 level	1.0 time
	HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	1 level	1.0 time
	QVGA (320 x 240)	1 level	1.0 time
	QCIF (176 x 144)	6 levels	1.9 times (1.5 times)
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	21 levels	2.8 times (2.1 times)

● When the maximum magnification for Horizontal Open Style differs from the one for Normal Style, it is mentioned in ( ).

**1 Finder display ▶ Use  to adjust the magnification.**

#### Information

● The image quality may slightly change when you select “WIDE” or “TELE”.

- “TELE” is released in the following cases:
  - When you press  to end the camera
  - When a size is changed
  - When camera mode is switched

## Use Focus Function







### You can shoot with the outside camera which focuses on a subject.

- When "Focus" is set to "Face detection", faces are detected in the first place. When a face is detected, the yellow frame is shown. Up to five faces are detected, and the image is shot with a single face of them automatically focused according to the face size and position. When multiple faces of people are found, the frame for a face to be focused becomes yellow. When the detection fails, the focus function works in "Auto".
- The focus function works when you shoot a subject about 10 cm or more away.

### 1 Finder display ▶ , or (halfway)

When a subject is focused, a focus lock tone sounds, the frame becomes green, and the focus is locked.

When the subject is not focused, the frame becomes red.

- To cancel the focus locked by pressing  or , press .
- When the focus is locked by pressing  (halfway), press  down for shooting. Release  (halfway) to cancel the focus.

### Information

- If "Movie type set" is set to "Voice" in Movie Mode, you cannot use the focus function.
- "Face detection" is available only in Photo Mode.
- Even when "Focus" is set to "Face detection", you might not be able to detect the face in the following cases:
  - When the face faces sideways or askew
  - When the face is at a slant
  - When part of the face is covered by glasses, a cap, or shadows
  - When the face is extremely small, large, or dim when compared to overall screen size
  - When the face is placed at the edges of the display
- The distance that faces can be detected by "Face detection" is within about 2.5 m.

## Flash Setting/Photo Light Setting

At Camera start-up	Photo light set.: OFF
--------------------	-----------------------

You can set whether to light the flash/photo light as a spare light for when you use the outside camera to shoot in a dark place.

### 1 Finder display ▶ ( FUNC )

### 2 In Photo Mode

#### Flash setting

▶ Select an operation of the flash/photo light to be set.

**Auto.** . . . . . The flash automatically at intensity lights suitable for the place.

**Forced ON** . . . . . The flash forcibly lights at the instant of shooting.

**Always light ON.** . . . The photo light turns on.

**Forced OFF** . . . . . The flash/photo light does not turn on at shooting.

#### In Continuous/Movie Mode

#### Photo light set. ▶ ON or OFF

- Even when "Flash setting" is set to "Always light ON" or "Photo light set." is set to "ON", the photo light goes off when you show the Function menu or Post View display.

### Information

- You cannot set "Flash setting" to "Forced ON" when "Photo mode" is set to "intelligent Auto".
- When the battery is almost empty, "Flash setting" is set to "Forced OFF", and "Photo light set." is set to "OFF".
- When you terminate the camera session or you switch to the inside camera while "Flash setting" is set to other than "Forced OFF", "Flash setting" is set to "Auto" when you start the camera next time or you switch back to the outside camera. When "Flash setting" is set to "Forced OFF", the setting is retained. However, if you set to "Forced OFF" when the battery is almost empty, the setting is not retained.
- The appropriate shooting distance when using flash is from about 40 to 100 cm.

## Information

- Even when "Forced OFF" is set, the photo light turns on or flickers while the camera is activated or at shooting.
- You cannot use the photo light when "Movie type set" is set to "Voice" in Movie Mode.
- If you shoot from a close distance, a correct exposure may not be obtained, letting the subject get white.

## Setting Image Size and Image Quality

### Function Menu of the Finder Display

<b>Inside camera/ Outside camera</b>	You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera.
<b>CHG camera-mode</b>	<b>▶ Select a mode.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● When you set to "Continuous mode", the camera starts in the mode you used last time; "Auto", "Manual", or "Auto bracket".</li></ul>
<b>Folder jump</b> [Photo/Continuous Mode]	You can show the inside of the storage location of the camera.

### Photo mode

You can set a photo mode suitable for the scene. When you change this setting, "Brightness", "White balance", "Color mode set", and "Focus" of "Camera settings" are changed according to the selected mode.

▶ **Select a photo mode.**

#### intelligent Auto

..... When you shoot in Photo Mode, the suitable photo mode is automatically detected and selected according to the subject and shooting conditions. The icon animation notifies you of the photo mode switching.

**Normal** . . . . . You can shoot in normal mode.

**Scene** . . . . . You can select a mode suitable for the scenery around.

- When you set to "intelligent Auto", "Brightness", "White balance", "Color mode set", and "Focus" of "Camera settings" are automatically set and you cannot change the settings.
- When "intelligent Auto" is set, the photo mode of "Night view" and "Night view+portraits" is detected at the use of the focus function. (See page 240)

### Image size

▶ **Select an image size.**

#### File size setting [Movie Mode only]

▶ **Select an item.**

**Mail restrict'n (S)** . . . . . You can shoot up to 500 Kbytes.

**Mail restrict'n (L)** . . . . . You can shoot up to 2 Mbytes.

**Long time** . . . . . You can shoot for a long time. The moving picture is saved to the microSD card.

### Image quality

You can set the image quality for saving.

▶ **Select an image quality.**

**Normal** . . . . . For shooting with standard image quality

**Fine** . . . . . For shooting with fairly high image quality

**Super fine** . . . . . For shooting with high image quality

### Camera settings

<b>Brightness</b>	You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright). ▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b>
At Camera start-up ±0	
<b>White balance</b>	You can adjust the coloring of the image on the Finder display to create a natural color tone. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
At Camera start-up Auto	<b>Auto</b> . . . . . For adjusting white balance automatically <b>Fine</b> . . . . . For shooting outdoors in fine weather <b>Cloudy</b> . . . . . For shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade <b>Light bulb</b> . . . . . For shooting under incandescent light <b>Fluorescent light</b> . . . . . For shooting under fluorescent light
<b>Color mode set</b>	▶ <b>Select a color mode.</b>
At Camera start-up Normal	<b>Normal</b> . . . . . For shooting in normal color <b>Sepia</b> . . . . . For shooting in sepia color <b>Monochrome</b> . . . . . For shooting in monochrome <b>Vivid</b> . . . . . For shooting with the vivid contours and raised color saturation <b>Natural</b> . . . . . For shooting with the smooth contours and lowered color saturation <b>Whitening</b> . . . . . For shooting faces in bright color <b>Suntan</b> . . . . . For shooting faces in dark color
<b>Focus</b>	You can set the focus of the outside camera. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
At Camera start-up Photo Mode: Face detection Continuous/ Movie Mode: Auto	<b>Face detection</b> . . . . . For focusing on a person's face <b>Auto</b> . . . . . For focusing automatically before shooting (See page 240) <b>Close-up</b> . . . . . For focusing on a subject in a short distance <b>Landscape</b> . . . . . For focusing on a landscape in a long distance  ● *Face detection* is available only in Photo Mode.
<b>Img. stabilizer</b> [Photo/Movie Mode]	You can correct camera shake when shooting with the outside camera. ▶ <b>Auto or OFF</b>

<b>Shoot with frame</b>	You can shoot a still image with a frame. ▶ <b>ON or OFF ▶ Select a frame.</b>
At Camera start-up OFF [Photo Mode only]	
<b>Shutter sound</b>	You can set a shutter sound. You can set a shutter sound each for Photo Mode (Continuous Mode) and Movie Mode. ▶ <b>Select a shutter sound.</b> ● While selecting a shutter sound, you can check the selected sound.
<b>Flicker correction</b>	You can suppress flicker on the Finder display for shooting with the outside camera. ▶ <b>Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz) or Mode 2 (60Hz)</b>

**Storage setting**

<b>Store in</b>	You can set the storage location for the still images/moving pictures you shoot. ▶ <b>Phone or microSD</b>
<b>Auto save set</b>	You can set whether to automatically save the image after shooting. When "Store in" is "Phone", the image is saved to the "Camera" folder. When "Store in" is "microSD", the image is saved to the folder set by "Select storage". ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>File restriction</b>	See page 244.
<b>High sensitiv.</b>	You can shoot with high-sensitivity when shooting with the outside camera. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
At Camera start-up OFF [Photo Mode only]	
<b>Flash setting</b> [Photo Mode only]	See page 240.
<b>Photo light set.</b> [Continuous/Movie Mode]	See page 240.
<b>Auto timer</b>	See page 245.
<b>Cont. shooting set.</b>	

<b>Continuous mode</b> [Continuous Mode only]	<p>▶ <b>Select a mode.</b></p> <p><b>Auto</b> . . . . . Shoots automatically at an interval and with the number of frames as specified by “Shot interval” and “Shot number”.</p> <p><b>Manual</b> . . . . . Shoots one by one manually with the number of frames specified by “Shot number”.</p> <p><b>Auto bracket</b> . . . . Shoots automatically nine still images at an interval of about 0.3 second while changing the brightness and color tone one by one.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When you set to “Manual”, the number of frames for continuous shooting is indicated on the display.</li> </ul>
<b>Shot interval</b> [Continuous Mode only]	<p>▶ <b>Select a shooting interval.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can set this only in “Auto” of Continuous Mode.</li> </ul>
<b>Shot number</b> [Continuous Mode only]	<p>▶ <b>Enter the number of photos.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When “Image size” is set to “VGA (480 x 640)”, you cannot change “Shot number”.</li> <li>● You can set this only in “Auto” or “Manual” of Continuous Mode.</li> </ul>
<b>Movie type set</b> At Camera start-up Normal [Movie Mode only]	<p>You can select whether to record both the video and voice, or one of them when you shoot the moving picture.</p> <p>▶ <b>Normal, Video, or Voice</b></p>
<b>Display size</b>	<p>You can set whether to display a still image/moving picture in the original size (Actual size) or to fit to the screen size on the Finder display.</p> <p>▶ <b>Actual size or Fit in display</b></p>
<b>Common replay mode</b> [Movie Mode only]	<p>You can set a shooting size appropriate for attaching to i-mode mail.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Image Size is set to “QCIF”, File Size Setting is set to “Mail restrict’n (S)”, and Image Quality (Movie Mode) is set to “Normal”.</li> </ul>
<b>Icon</b>	<p>You can set whether to display icons.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>

<b>Memory info</b>	You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.
--------------------	--

<b>Information</b>	
<b>&lt;Inside camera/Outside camera&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When “Image size” is set to “Stand-by (480 x 854)” or larger and you switch to the inside camera, the camera starts up in “VGA (640 x 480)”.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Photo mode&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Even when “Intelligent Auto” is set, the photo mode is not switched after the focus lock. Release the focus lock to detect the photo mode again.</li> <li>● Note that the image may blur in Night Mode because the exposure takes a longer time.</li> <li>● When shooting at your intended scene, select a suitable photo mode for shooting.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;File size setting&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When “Long time” is set, “Store in” is set to “microSD”. If you switch “File size setting” to other than “Long time” without ending the camera, “Store in” returns to “Phone”.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Img. stabilizer&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Image Stabilizer function is only for decreasing the degree of camera shake, so its effect differs depending on the subject or condition.</li> <li>● Image Stabilizer might not work effectively in the following cases:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· When the camera shakes to a great extent</li> <li>· When zooming is in use</li> <li>· When shooting moving subjects</li> </ul> </li> <li>● “Img. stabilizer” becomes invalid when “Photo mode” of “Camera settings” is set to “Sports”, “Night mode”, or “Pet” of “Scene” in Photo Mode.</li> <li>● Residual images might remain in the area where the subject is moving, or noise might be found in overall area. In that case, set this function to “OFF”.</li> <li>● In Movie Mode, the shooting range varies depending on the “Auto” or “OFF” setting because peripheral pixels are used for the processing by Image Stabilizer.</li> <li>● You cannot use Image Stabilizer for the inside camera.</li> </ul>	

**Information****<Shoot with frame>**

- When "Image size" is set to "2M (1200 x 1600)" or larger, you cannot shoot with a frame.
- If you shoot a still image with a frame using the inside camera and save it, the frame is also horizontally reversed when the still image is automatically reversed as a correct image.
- You cannot save the still image shot with a frame as the mirrored image.

**<Flicker correction>**

- If you set to "Auto", it may take a while to automatically adjust the flicker. In this case, switch to Mode 1 or Mode 2 according to the power frequency provided in the shooting location.

**<Storage setting>**

- See "Select storage" for how to set a storage location on the microSD card.
- If you change "File size setting" to "Long time", "Store in" is set to "microSD" and "Storage setting" cannot be operated.
- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON", the image is saved to the latest folder if "Select storage" is not set or the folder set as a destination folder is deleted.

**<High sensitiv.>**

- When "ON" is set, you cannot set "Image size" to "2M Wide (1080 x 1920)" or larger.
- When you set "High sensitiv." to "ON" while "Image size" is set to "2M Wide (1080 x 1920)" or larger, "Image size" is changed to "2M (1200 x 1600)". If you switch "High sensitiv." to "OFF" without changing "Image size" and without ending the camera, it returns to the image size before you set "High sensitiv." to "ON".

**<Continuous mode>**

- You cannot set to "Auto bracket" for the inside camera. When you switch to the inside camera while "Auto bracket" is set, "Auto" is set.

**<Shot number>**

- The number of shots that can be set differs depending on the image size. The number of shots that can be set is as follows:  
VGA (480 x 640): 4  
QVGA (240 x 320): 5 through 10  
QCIF (144 x 176): 5 through 20  
Sub-QCIF (96 x 128): 5 through 20

**Information****<Display size>**

- When "Image size" is set to "HVGA Wide (640 x 352)" or larger, "Fit in display" always applies.
- When "Image size" is set to "QCIF (144 x 176)" or "Sub-QCIF (96 x 128)", the image is enlarged two times at both lengthwise and sidewise when it is displayed in "Actual size".
- The setting for the Finder display is reflected in the Post View display; however the setting for the Post View display is not reflected in the Finder display.

**<Common replay mode>**

- You cannot operate when you set "File size setting" to "Long time".

**File Restriction**

You can set the file restrictions for when you save a still image/moving picture you shoot. The recipient of the file (primary distribution) cannot attach the received file to i-mode mail.

## 1 Finder display ( ) ▶ Storage setting ▶ File restriction

OR

## Post View display in Photo Mode, Movie Mode or Continuous Mode/Detailed display in Continuous Mode ▶ ( ) ▶ File restriction

## 2 File unrestricted or File restricted

- From the Post View display in Continuous Mode, you can change the file restriction settings for the image you put a check mark on.

**Information**

- Even when you set "File restriction" to "File restricted", the still images/moving pictures can be output from the destination mobile phone by transmitting the images using infrared communication or by copying them to the microSD card.
- After saving, you can use "File restriction" on page 342 to change the settings.
- When you set "File size setting" to "Long time" in Movie Mode, "File restriction" becomes "File unrestricted".

## Auto Timer

At Camera start-up	OFF
--------------------	-----

- 1 **Finder display** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Auto timer** ▶ ON or OFF  
▶ **Enter a delay time (seconds).**

- Enter from "01" through "15", in two digits.

### When Auto Timer is set to "ON"

appears on the Finder display.

If you press (Record) or , a confirmation tone sounds and blinks. When "Flash setting" is set to other than "Always light ON", the photo light flickers every about 1 second until about 5 seconds before shooting. From about 5 seconds before shooting, the photo light flickers every about 0.5 second, and the confirmation tone sounds every about 1 second. Shooting takes place after the set delay time has elapsed.

- To cancel shooting, press (Quit) or while the photo light is flickering. Even if you cancel shooting, "Auto timer" stays set to "ON".
- You can shoot immediately by pressing (Record) or before the delay time has elapsed.
- When you shoot, a confirmation tone sounds regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. You cannot change the sound volume for the confirmation tone.

### Information

- You cannot use Auto Timer in "Manual" of Continuous Mode.
- Auto Timer is set to "OFF" when shooting ends.

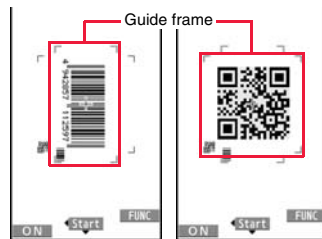
## <Bar Code Reader>

### Using Bar Code Reader

You can use the outside camera to scan JAN codes and QR codes and store them as data files. As to CODE 128, download a compatible i-coppli program and then scan the code to save the data. (See page 293)  
From the scanned data, you can make calls, compose i-mode mail messages, access Internet websites, and so on.

#### ■ When scanning with Bar Code Reader

- Take the code as large as possible within the guide frame.
- Autofocus works when you scan a code about 10 cm or more away from it. When you scan a code in the out-of-focus state, the recognition rate lowers.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the code.



Scanning Code display

#### ■ JAN Code

**JAN Code is a bar code that denotes numerals with the vertical bars of a different width.**

You can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13)

JAN codes.

- "4942857112597" is displayed when you scan this bar code with the FOMA terminal.



#### ■ QR Code

**QR Code is one of the 2-dimensional codes that denotes data in the vertical and horizontal directions.**

Kanji, katakana, alphanumeric characters, and pictograms are displayed when you scan it. Some QR codes have image or melody information.

- "株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DOCOMO, INC.)" is displayed when you scan this QR code with the FOMA terminal.



## CODE 128

CODE 128 is a bar code that denotes 128 characters of ASCII code (numerals, alphabets, symbols, etc.) with the vertical bars of different widths.



- Download the i-appl program which supports CODE 128, and then scan the above code. "NTT DOCOMO" is displayed.

## Scan a Code

At Bar Code Reader start-up	Photo light: off Brightness: ±0 Zoom: Magnified view
-----------------------------	--

You can store up to 5 scanned codes.

You can scan up to 16 divided QR codes.

### 1 LifeKit ▶ Bar code reader ▶ Scan code

The Bar Code Reader menu is displayed.

- You can paste the Bar Code Reader menu to the desktop, or can store it for Multi Key Long Press Setting. (See page 32 and page 410)

### 2 Fit a code to be scanned to the guide frame and press

When the subject is focused, a focus lock tone sounds and the cross mark becomes green.

- Each time of pressing , you can turn on and off the Photo light.
- Press and select "Brightness"; then you can adjust brightness to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).
- Press to show the reduced display, and press to return to the former display.

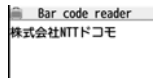
### 3 Press (Start).

The code is scanned. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

- To cancel scanning, press or .
- When scanning is completed, the scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the tone does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".
- " is displayed for melody files and or " is displayed for incompatible or damaged files.
- While you are entering (editing) characters, the Scanned Code Result display does not appear; the Text Data Confirmation display of the scanned code appears. To enter the scanned code, press (Set). To discard it, press (Cancel) or (CLR). The characters that cannot be displayed are replaced by half-pitch spaces. When the code containing no text data has been scanned, the code is not correctly displayed.
- If scanning is not completed in a certain period, the scanning is suspended and the Scanning Code display returns.
- When the scanned code is part of divided QR codes, select "OK" to repeat step 2 and step 3 for scanning the rest of codes.

### 4 (FUNC) ▶ Save result ▶ OK

The scanned data is stored.






Scanned Code Result display




## Information

- You cannot scan bar codes or 2-dimensional codes other than JAN codes, QR codes, or CODE 128.
- Scanning may take a long time. Hold the FOMA terminal securely with your hands during scanning.
- You may not be able to scan codes correctly depending on scratch, dirt, damage, the quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR code version.
- You cannot scan some codes depending on the type or size.



## Function Menu of the Scanned Code Result Display

<b>Save result</b>	See page 246.
<b>Display list</b>	You can show the Bar Code Reader list when one or more files are stored.
<b>Go to location</b>	You can connect to the highlighted URL via i-mode or Full Browser. ▶ <b>i-mode Browser or Full Browser ▶ YES</b> ● You can connect to the URL also by highlighting the URL and pressing  ( <b>Select</b> ).
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message to send to the highlighted mail address. Go to step 3 on page 146. ● You can compose it also by highlighting the mail address and pressing  ( <b>Select</b> ). ● When you select "Compose message" from the Scanned Code Result display, the data on the Scanned Code Result display is entered into the address, subject, and text field.
<b>Dialing</b>	You can make a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call to the highlighted phone number. ▶ <b>Select a dialing type.</b> ● When you select "Select image", select an image to send to the other party during the videophone call. ● When you select "Compose SMS", you can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 189. ● You can make a call also by highlighting the phone number and pressing  ( <b>Select</b> ). ▶ <b>Dial</b> ● To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 61) ● To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 of "Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call" on page 59)
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 94.
<b>Add bookmark</b>	You can bookmark the site name and URL. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● Select "Page title" to edit the title. ▶ <b>OK ▶ Select a destination folder.</b>

<b>Save image</b>	You can save the scanned image data to set to the Stand-by display or other displays. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 3 on page 208. ● See page 210 when images are stored to the maximum.
<b>Save melody</b>	You can save the scanned melody data to set it as a ring tone or other tones. ▶ <b>YES ▶ Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 3 on page 209. ● Select  to play back the melody. ● See page 210 when melodies are stored to the maximum.
<b>Save ToruCa</b>	You can save the scanned ToruCa file. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> ● Select  to display the ToruCa file. ● See page 210 when ToruCa files are stored to the maximum.
<b>Start  appli</b>	You can start up i-appli from the scanned data. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Copy</b>	▶ <b>Select a start point for copying</b> ▶ <b>Select an end point for copying.</b> ● You can copy codes of up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters. ● See page 434 for pasting copied characters.

### Information

- <Go to location>
  - URL can be displayed in up to 512 half-pitch characters.
- <Compose message>
  - If the scanned data contains nonenterable characters, you cannot enter it as a mail address, and those characters may become spaces in the text field.
- <Dialing>
  - You cannot make emergency calls by scanning "110", "119" or "118".
- <Add bookmark>
  - You can display up to 512 half-pitch characters for a URL and can store up to 256 characters from the beginning.
- <Save image>
  - The file name and title for the saved image are "imageXXX" (XXX are numerals).

**Information****<Save melody>**

- The file name for the saved melody is "melodyXXX" (XXX are numerals).
- For the melody with no title, the file name is displayed as the title.
- When playing back the melody, it is played back at the sound volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume".

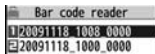
**Display the Saved Data List**

# 1


**LifeKit ▶ Bar code reader**  
**▶ Saved data**

The titles for stored data are displayed from the latest one.

- Select a title to show the Scanned Code Result display.



Bar Code Reader list

**Information**

- The titles for the scanned data are as follows:  
 (Example) When the scanned data is saved at 10:00 on November 18, 2009;  
 Title name: 20091118\_1000\_0000  
 · If you store multiple data items for the same date and time, the lower four-digit numbers increase up to "9999".

**Function Menu of the Bar Code Reader List**

<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Enter a title.</b> You can enter up to 9 full-pitch/18 half-pitch characters.
<b>Result</b>	You can show the Scanned Code Result display for stored data.
<b>Delete</b>	
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES</b>

# 1Seg

1Seg .....	250
Before Using 1Seg .....	250
Setting Channels .....	<Channel Setting> 251
Watching 1Seg .....	<Activate 1Seg> 253
Using i-appli Program Guide. ....	<i-appli Program Guide> 258
Using Data Broadcasting .....	<Data Broadcasting> 258
Using TV Link. ....	<TVlink> 259
Recording a 1Seg Program while Watching .....	260
Setting Timer for Watching or Recording 1Seg Programs .....	<TV Timer> <Timer Recording> 261
Setting 1Seg .....	<User Settings> 266

## 1Seg

1Seg is the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile objects, and it broadcasts data as well as video and audio. Further, by using i-mode, you can obtain the detailed information, can participate in quiz programs or can have fun with TV shopping. For details on the 1Seg service, browse the following websites:

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

From personal computers: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>

From i-mode: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (In Japanese only)

### ■ Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a service provided by television entrepreneurs (broadcasting stations). You are not charged a communication fee for receiving audio and video. For viewing fee of NHK, contact NHK.
- The information displayed in the data broadcasting area contains "Data broadcasting" and "Data broadcasting site".  
"Data broadcasting" is displayed on airwaves together with video and audio, and "Data broadcasting site" is displayed by connecting from the information of data broadcasting to the sites provided by television entrepreneurs (broadcasting stations). Also, it might be connected to "i-mode site", etc. When connecting to sites, you need to subscribe to i-mode separately.
- You are charged a packet communication fee for browsing "Data broadcasting site" and "i-mode site".  
You might be charged an information fee for using some sites (i-mode pay sites).
- The ToruCa files might be automatically saved while you are watching a 1Seg program. When you receive detailed information from the saved ToruCa files, you are charged a packet communication fee.

### ■ Radio waves

1Seg is one of the broadcasting services receiving radio waves (broadcasting waves) different from that used for the FOMA services. Accordingly, you cannot watch the broadcasting when you are out of reach of the broadcasting waves, or when the broadcasting is suspended regardless of whether you are in or out of the FOMA service area.

Even when you are in the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area, reception condition might be deteriorated or you might not be able to receive programs in the following places:


- Where the radio tower that transmits broadcasting waves is far away
- Where the radio waves are blocked by geographical features such as mountains or valleys of high-rise buildings
- Where the radio waves are weak or do not reach, such as in tunnels, underground, or recesses of buildings

The reception conditions might be improved by moving your FOMA terminal away from or close to you, or by moving yourself to another place.

### ■ Messages on the display when you use 1Seg for the first time

When you use 1Seg for the first time after purchase, the Exemption Clause Confirmation display appears.

If you select "NO" from the confirmation display which appears after pressing

, the same confirmation display does not appear afterward.

- The Exemption Clause Confirmation display also appears when you replace the UIM with another one or remove the UIM.

### ■ What is broadcasting storage area?

The broadcasting storage area is a storage area inside the terminal that is exclusive for 1Seg. The information you input according to the instruction on the data broadcasting program is saved to that broadcasting storage area following the settings of television entrepreneurs (broadcasting stations). The information to be saved might contain answers for quiz, and personal information such as membership number, gender, age, or occupation.

The saved information might be displayed, or be sent to television entrepreneurs (broadcasting stations) without your re-input when you browse to the data broadcasting site.

- See page 268 to erase information in the broadcasting storage area.

When you replace the UIM with another one or remove the UIM, the confirmation display appears asking whether to reset the broadcasting storage area. Select "YES", and reset it. If you select "NO", the services using the broadcasting storage area are not available.

### ■ Messages on the display when the information in the broadcasting storage area is read out

When the information in the broadcasting storage area is used while you are watching a program, the message "Use saved information? It may include information used by the same broadcasting group" is displayed.

If you select "YES", the confirmation display asking whether to read out the stored information while watching the same program does not appear after that. Further if you select "YES (default)", the same confirmation display does not appear afterward.

## Before Using 1Seg

### How to Watch a 1Seg Program

<Example> When you watch a 1Seg program for the first time

#### STEP

#### 1 Channel Setting

Store the channel list for the area you use. (See page 251)

## STEP

# 2

## Activating 1Seg

### Activate 1Seg. (See page 253)

#### ■ Battery level

If you try to start 1Seg or 1Seg starts automatically by TV Timer when the battery is low, the battery alert tone sounds, and the confirmation display appears asking whether to start it. Also, when the battery becomes low while you are watching or recording a 1Seg program, the battery alert tone sounds, and the confirmation display appears asking whether to end 1Seg. The battery alert tone sounds regardless of the setting of "Keypad sound".

- When you do nothing from the confirmation display for about one minute, 1Seg automatically terminates.
- While "Rec. when low battery" is set to "ON", the confirmation display does not appear during recording. (See page 267)
- If the battery level becomes low during recording and recording ends, the video recorded up to that point is automatically saved.
- During Multitask, the battery alert tone sounds but the confirmation display does not appear. Switch to the viewer display and then operate.

#### ■ When a call etc. comes in while you are watching or recording a 1Seg program

When an event shown below occurs while watching or recording a 1Seg program, the video and audio are suspended, and each function works. Recording is not suspended. After you finish each function, you can resume watching a 1Seg program. See page 257 for receiving i-mode mail messages, SMS messages or Messages R/F.

- Incoming voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call  
(To start recording when a call is received, refer to "Rec. program when call".)
- Notification of Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, or TV Timer  
(when "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred")
- Notification of Timer Recording  
(When the start date/time comes, the FOMA terminal works according to the setting of "Priority".)

#### Information

- 1Seg is not available while "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode" or "MTP mode" and the FOMA terminal is connected to a personal computer.
- 1Seg might automatically start when you end a call by closing the FOMA terminal during a call. In such a case, be careful not to use the FOMA terminal close to your ear because audio is output at the sound volume for 1Seg.
- The life of battery pack may shorten if you watch 1Seg programs for a long time during charging.
- 1Seg is not available overseas.

#### ■ Important

Note that we cannot be held responsible for loss or changes of the saved contents due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA terminal. Furthermore, we cannot move the saved information (such as still images, TV links, or information saved to the broadcasting storage area) when you change your FOMA terminal or have it repaired.

### <Channel Setting>

## Setting Channels

To watch 1Seg programs, you need to execute Channel Setting and to select a channel list in advance. You can store up to 10 channel lists.

- The broadcasting stations you can receive differ depending on the local area. If you store a channel list of the area for traveling or business trip, you can watch programs in the area just by selecting the channel list.
- The remote-control numbers you use with channel selections are previously set for respective broadcasting stations.
- You cannot execute Channel Setting during recording of a 1Seg program.

### Auto Channel Setting

The broadcasting stations you can currently watch are automatically searched and stored in a channel list.

- You need to set this function in the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area.

1  1Seg  Channel setting  Auto channel setting  
▶ YES

Searching takes place.

- From the Channel list display, press  (FUNC), select "Channel setting" → "Auto channel set.".  
From the viewer display, press  (FUNC), select "Disp.Ch. /operation" → "Channel setting" → "Auto channel set."

## 2 YES ▶ Enter a title.

- You can enter up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters.
- When you press **[Set]** without entering a title, the title name takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm". (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
- To cancel searching midway, press **[Cancel]** or **[CLR]**; then select "YES". You can store the searched broadcasting stations in a channel list.

### Information

- When the multiple broadcasting stations which have the same remote-control number are retrieved, the message to the effect that the remote-control number is doubled appears. Select "OK" and select your area from the Local Area Selection display. The channels in the area you select are preferentially assigned to remote-control numbers 1 to 12, and channels in the area you do not select are assigned to remote-control numbers 13 onward.
- The time to search channels requires for about 30 to 50 seconds. However, it differs depending on the number of broadcasting stations or airwave conditions, and might exceed 100 seconds.

## Select Area

You can store the broadcasting stations set by prefecture to a channel list.

### 1 **[MENU]** ▶ 1Seg ▶ Channel setting ▶ Select area ▶ Select an area ▶ Select a prefecture ▶ YES

- From the Channel list display, press **[Func]**, select "Channel setting" → "Select area".  
From the viewer display, press **[Func]**, select "Disp.Ch. /operation" → "Channel setting" → "Select area".

### Information

- Depending on the area, you may not be able to correctly store the broadcasting stations by "Select area". In that case, search for the broadcasting stations by "Auto channel setting".

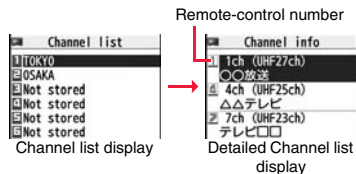
## Select Channel List

You can select a channel list to set the broadcasting stations you receive. Also, you can edit the channel list already stored.

### 1 **[MENU]** ▶ 1Seg ▶ Channel list ▶ Select a channel list.

The channel list you receive is set, and the detailed display appears.

- Select a broadcasting station to watch a 1Seg program.
- When you select "Disp.Ch. /operation" from the Function menu of the viewer display and select "Channel list", the viewer display returns after you select a channel list.
- You can watch a 1Seg program also by pressing **[Detail]** from the Channel list display and selecting a broadcasting station.



## Function Menu of the Channel List Display

Channel setting	See page 251.
Edit title	▶ Enter a title. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can enter up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters.</li></ul>
Delete	▶ YES <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You cannot delete the channel list currently set.</li></ul>

## Function Menu of the Detailed Channel List Display

- **Remote control No.** You can change the broadcasting station set for the remote-control number.
  - ▶ Select a broadcasting station you want to change
  - ▶ Select the remote-control number to be set.
  - If any broadcasting station has already been set for the specified remote-control number, the broadcasting stations switch positions. Repeat the operation to set a broadcasting station for a remote-control number.
  - ▶ **[Finish]** ▶ YES


## Delete

### ▶ YES

- When you delete all the broadcasting stations in the channel list, the channel list itself is deleted.
- You cannot delete the broadcasting station in the channel list currently set.

## <Activate 1Seg>


# Watching 1Seg

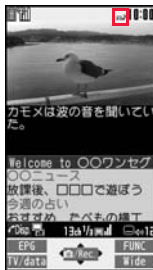
Just change styles while watching a 1Seg program to automatically switch between the vertical display and horizontal display. You can switch displays manually also by pressing  in Normal Style.

- When you use 1Seg for the first time, the Exemption Clause Confirmation display appears. (See page 250)
- You can start 1Seg also by using the channel information (links) displayed in the i-oppli Program Guide, sites, or mail. (See "Media To Function" on page 212)
- By connecting to the Stereo Earphone Set (option), you can play back the audio from 1Seg programs in stereo sound. Also, you can play back the audio wirelessly by using a commercial Bluetooth device. (See page 424)

## 1 Press and hold for at least one second.

1Seg starts from the channel you watched last time. "🎵" is displayed while watching a 1Seg program.

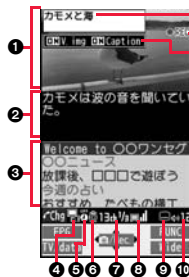
- When you have not stored any channel list, the confirmation display appears. Select "OK" and execute Channel Setting. (See page 251)
- You can start 1Seg also by switching to Horizontal Open Style while the display for selecting a 1Seg function is shown in Normal Style.
- While "Work with style" is set to "1Seg", you can start 1Seg also by switching to Horizontal Open Style from the Stand-by display.
- To end watching, press  and select "End 1Seg". You can switch to play background by selecting "Change to BGM".



Viewer display

## ■ About Viewer display

(When "Switch display" is "V. img+Caption+DBC".)




Vertical display



Horizontal display Guide display

### 1 Video


"" appears on the upper right of the display when the data broadcasting linked with a 1Seg program is found while you are watching on the horizontal display or in the multiwindow.


### 2 Caption

You can set display position of the caption on the horizontal display by "Caption posit. in w-scr".

### 3 Data Broadcasting

### 4 Operation Mode


 Video Mode: Operates the video or audio. (See page 253)

 Data Broadcasting Mode: Operates the data broadcasting. (See page 258)

### 5 Off Timer

"" appears while Off Timer is set.


### 6 ECO Mode


"" appears during ECO Mode.

### 7 Channel (Remote-control number)


- When a broadcasting station is broadcasting multiple services (programs), "Viewing service number/Number of all services" is also displayed.
- If you have searched a channel using Channel Search, the channel (Remote-control number) might not be displayed.

### 8 Airwave Reception Level (estimate)

 (strong) ↔ (weak)

"" appears out of the broadcasting area.

9 Reception of Caption




"" is displayed while caption information is being received.

10 Sound Volume

11 Program Information (outline)

The program name is displayed on the vertical display. The channel, start/end time, and program name are displayed on the horizontal display.

12 Record Video

" REC" appears during video recording, and " REC" appears during video recording by Timer Recording. " PAUSE" appears during pause of recording.




13 Switch Display/Caption

Status of Video Image: ON/OFF/enlarged  
Caption: ON/OFF

14 Icon/Caption










Icon: "ON/OFF" of "Icon"

Caption: Position ( : Lower,  : Upper) and OFF


















• , , and  are displayed when you operate keys or switch styles.

• While "Icon" is set to "OFF", the guide display appears on the horizontal display when you operate keys or switch styles.

■ Channel switching operation (in Video Mode only)

Operation	Key operation
<b>Direct channel selection</b>	Remote control No.1-9 .....  -  Remote control No.10 .....  Remote control No.11 .....  Remote control No.12 ..... 
<b>Channel selection</b>	
<b>Channel search</b>	 (for at least one second) • Each time of pressing switches channels by searching receivable broadcasting stations in order of frequency. •  (Cancel) or  to suspend

■ Operations while watching a 1Seg program

Operation	Key operation
<b>Sound volume adjustment</b>	 <sup>※1</sup> or 
<b>Mute/Release mute</b>	 <sup>※1</sup>
<b>Start i-oppli program guide</b>	 <sup>※2</sup>
<b>Program info</b>	 (for at least one second)
<b>Program info (outline)</b>	
<b>Switch display</b>	 while displaying program information (outline) • Each time of pressing from the horizontal display switches the setting of "Icon" and "Caption posit. in w-scr".
<b>Switch display directions/ Full display</b>	 <sup>※3</sup> • In Video Mode, each time of pressing switches the display directions. • In Data Broadcasting Mode, each time of pressing switches between the normal display and the full display.
<b>Record video</b>	  (for at least one second) <sup>※1</sup> or  (for at least one second) •  <sup>※1</sup> or  to end
<b>Record still image</b>	  <sup>※1</sup> or 
<b>Switch TV/data BC</b>	 <sup>※4</sup> • Each time of pressing switches between Video Mode and Data Broadcasting Mode.

※1 You cannot operate in Data Broadcasting Mode.

※2 You cannot operate from the horizontal display in Normal Style.

※3 You cannot operate in Horizontal Open Style.

When you close the FOMA terminal, the display returns to the vertical display. In Horizontal Open Style, the horizontal display automatically appears; the vertical display does not appear.

※4 This operation shows the program information (outline) when the horizontal display is shown.

**Information**

• Even when you switch displays by using Multitask while you are watching a 1Seg program, the audio from the 1Seg program is output. (Play Background) The audio might not be output, however, depending on the function or program. (See page 505)



## Information

- When you close the FOMA terminal while you are watching 1Seg programs, a dedicated still image appears in the Private window, but images or data broadcasting programs do not appear. When "TV sound while closed" is set to "ON", audio sounds even if the FOMA terminal is closed, however, you cannot do any operations other than volume adjustment.
- The following might occur depending on the airwave conditions:
  - The audio is interrupted.
  - The data broadcasting is not operable.
  - Block-shaped noise appears on the display or playing stops.
  - The video or the data broadcasting is not displayed. (A dark screen appears.)
- The caption might not be displayed depending on the program.
- The data broadcasting cannot be displayed on the horizontal display.
- If you move, the receivable airwaves or broadcasting stations might change being affected by mountains or buildings. If reception on 1Seg goes bad after moving, perform "Auto channel setting"; then reception might be improved via different airwaves or you might be able to watch programs of other broadcasting stations.
- If you use Channel Search to select channels after you move, etc., you might find the channels you could not store by "Auto channel setting". Execute "Add to ch. list" to store the channels you found, and then you can watch the channel from the next time.
- When starting 1Seg or switching channels, it takes a while before you can watch a 1Seg program.

## Function Menu of Viewer Display

<b>Program info</b>	You can display information of the program you are watching.
<b>Program guide</b>	See page 258.
<b>Disp.Ch./operation</b>	
<b>Channel info</b>	You can display the detailed display of the selected channel list. Select a broadcasting station to switch to it.
<b>Channel list</b>	Go to step 1 of "Select Channel List" on page 252.
<b>Channel setting</b>	See page 251.

<b>Add to ch. list</b>	You can add the broadcasting station you are currently watching to the channel list. ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The broadcasting station is stored in the lowest number of an unoccupied remote-control number from 13 onward.</li></ul>
<b>Tune service</b>	You can select a program to watch when the same broadcasting station is broadcasting multiple services (programs). ▶ <b>Select a channel.</b>

## Data broadcasting

<b>Back to data BC</b>	You can stop browsing the data broadcasting site and return to the data broadcasting.
<b>Reload contents</b>	You can reload the data broadcasting site being displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The confirmation display appears asking whether to re-send the data you entered, depending on the site.</li></ul>
<b>Certificate</b>	See page 202.
<b>Image display set.</b>	See page 213.
<b>Sound setting</b>	See page 267.
<b>ToruCa from dataBC</b>	See page 325.
<b>Reset settings</b>	See page 267.

**TVlink list** You can display the TVlink list. (See page 259)

**Compose message** See page 257.

## Settings

**Display/operation**

<b>Switch display</b>	You can switch the contents of the viewer display.
At 1Seg start-up	▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
When "Caption" is set to "ON": V. img+Caption+DBC	● If you set to "Enlarged V. img+DBC", the video on the vertical display is enlarged. However, the sides of the video might be cut depending on the program.
When "Caption" is set to "OFF": Visual image+DBC	● Even if you set to "Data broadcasting", the audio from 1Seg programs is output.
	● The operation mode automatically switches to Data Broadcasting Mode when you display data broadcasting in full display. When you release full display of data broadcasting, the operation mode returns to the former mode.
<b>Switch TV/data BC</b>	You can switch between Video Mode and Data Broadcasting Mode while watching a 1Seg program on the vertical display.
At 1Seg start-up	Video Mode
<b>Icon</b>	See page 266.
<b>AV output</b>	See page 394.

## Video

<b>Brightness</b>	You can set the brightness of the display light to Level 1 (dark) through 5 (bright). ▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b>
	● If you set to "Auto setting", it is adjusted automatically in accordance with the ambient brightness sensed by the light sensor.
	● The setting here is valid until you finish watching the 1Seg program. The setting at 1Seg start-up follows the setting of "Brightness" of "Backlight" on page 114.
<b>Mobile W-Speed</b>	See page 266.
<b>Image quality</b>	See page 266.
<b>LCD AI</b>	See page 115.

## Sound

<b>Sound effect</b>	
Auto volume	See page 266.
Remaster	See page 266.
Listening	See page 267.

<b>Equalizer</b>	See page 267.
<b>Main/sub sound</b>	▶ <b>Main sound, Sub sound, or Main+sub sound</b>
At 1Seg start-up	Main sound
<b>Switch audio data</b>	▶ <b>Sound 1 or Sound 2</b>
	● You can switch only when audio that can be switched is found.
<b>TV sound w/ closed</b>	See page 267.
<b>ECO mode</b>	See page 267.
<b>Off timer</b>	When the specified time elapses, the confirmation display appears asking whether to end watching or recording a program (except for Timer Recording). ▶ <b>Select a time.</b>
At 1Seg start-up	OFF

**Key guide** You can display the guide of key operation during watching a 1Seg program.

## Information

### <Off timer>

- In the following cases, the Off Timer confirmation display appears after each operation finishes:
  - In standby state for Timer Recording
  - While being recorded by Timer Recording
  - While a still image is being saved
  - When an unsaved image is left
  - During channel search by Auto Channel Setting

## Send i-mode Mail while Watching

You can compose and send i-mode mail messages while watching a 1Seg program. (Multiwindow)

When you send an i-mode mail message to the FOMA terminal supporting the "Media To" function by "Recom. channel mail", the receiving end can start 1Seg by using the "Media To" function.

- You cannot operate 1Seg while the Message Composition display is shown. You cannot show the caption and data broadcasting, either.
- You can compose SMS messages as well while watching a 1Seg program.

### 1 Viewer display ( FUNC ) Compose message ▶ Compose message or Recom. channel mail

#### Compose message


... You can compose a new i-mode mail message.

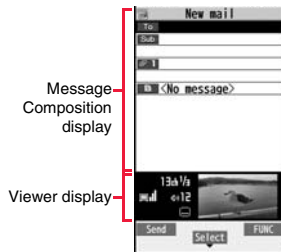
Go to step 2 on page 146.

#### Recom. channel mail




... You can compose an i-mode mail message whose text contains the information of the channel you are watching.

Go to step 2 on page 146.

- When the Message Composition display is shown, you can switch between the Message Composition display and the viewer display (horizontal display) each time you press and hold  for at least one second.



## Information

- Even when you show the Message Composition display/detailed Sent Mail display by Multitask while you are watching a 1Seg program, the display appears in the multiwindow.
- Only the audio is output from a 1Seg program without showing the viewer display if you select "Mail history" from the Function menu of the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list or a detailed mail display by Multitask while watching a 1Seg program and show the detailed Sent Mail display of a mail message sent to a person whose mail address is not stored in the Phonebook.
- When "" or "" appears, press and hold  for at least one second to switch to the viewer display and then operate.

## Information


- When you close the FOMA terminal while the Message Composition display is shown in the multiwindow, the Stand-by display is shown on the Private window.

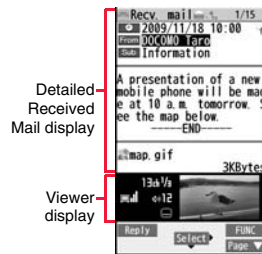
## Receive i-mode Mail while Watching

The ticker on the viewer display notifies you of the receiving of an i-mode mail message, SMS message, and Message R/F. You can show the detailed Received Mail display while you are watching a 1Seg program. (Multiwindow)

- You cannot show tickers when "Mail ticker display" is set to "OFF" or during Public mode (Drive mode).
- Only the audio is output from a 1Seg program without showing the viewer display when you show a mail message from the party whose mail address is not stored in the Phonebook.
- You cannot operate 1Seg while the detailed Received Mail display is shown. You cannot show the caption and data broadcasting, either.
- You can show an SMS messages as well while watching a 1Seg program.

### 1 Receive i-mode mail while viewer display is shown ▶ Press ( ) while the ticker is displayed.


- The mail ring tone does not sound.
- When the detailed Received Mail display is shown, you can switch between the detailed Mail display and the viewer display (horizontal display) each time you press and hold  for at least one second.



## Information

- Even if "Mail ticker display" is set to "Sender+subject", the titles are not displayed for Messages R/F, i-mode mail messages, and SMS messages received from the parties not stored in the Phonebook.
- Even when you show the detailed Received Mail display by Multitask while you are watching a 1Seg program, the display appears in the multiwindow.

## Information


- When "Mail ticker display" is set to "OFF", "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred", and you receive a mail message while watching a 1Seg program, the Reception Result display appears and the mail ring tone sounds. The mail message is shown in the multiwindow even when you show it from the Reception Result display. However, the viewer display does not appear and the audio from a 1Seg program is not output when you show a mail message from the party whose mail address is not stored in the Phonebook.
- When "TV" or "TV" appears, press and hold  for at least one second to switch to the viewer display and then operate.
- When you close the FOMA terminal while the detailed Received Mail display is shown in the multiwindow, the Stand-by display is shown on the Private window.

## <i-appli Program Guide>

# Using i-appli Program Guide

By using the i-appli Program Guide, you can select a program from the program guide to start 1Seg or set TV Timer/Timer Recording. (See page 298)

## 1 1Seg ▶ Program guide

- Press  from the display of "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote Control)" to watch the program currently broadcast on the selected channel.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".



## Information

- You can set the i-appli Program Guide by "Program guide key" of "Software setting".
- When you use "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote Control)" for the first time, you need to do initial settings.


## <Data Broadcasting>



# Using Data Broadcasting

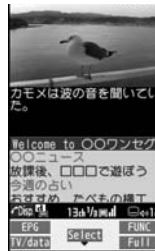
1Seg enables you to use the data broadcasting in addition to the video and audio. Various information including still images/moving pictures is available from the site linked with TV programs.

## 1 Viewer display (Video Mode)



### ▶ (TV/data)

Video Mode switches to Data Broadcasting Mode and " " appears.


- Audio from a 1Seg program is output even during Data Broadcasting Mode.
- You can display only data broadcasting when you press  (Full) in Data Broadcasting Mode. Press  (Half) to return to the former display.



## 2 Select an item (link).

- The confirmation display appears asking whether to connect to i-mode depending on the data broadcasting and data broadcasting site.
- You can scroll displays and move highlighted indications by pressing  while a data broadcasting program or data broadcasting site is displayed.
- You can go/return to the previous/next page by pressing  while a data broadcasting site is displayed.

## Information

- Each time you press  (TV/data), Video Mode and Data Broadcasting Mode are switched.
- You cannot display the data broadcasting on the horizontal display.
- You cannot enter pictograms when you enter characters on data broadcasting or data broadcasting site.
- Depending on the program, the audio might be output while the i-mode site is displayed. However, the 1Seg video is not displayed.
- Depending on the program, a tone might be output when you display the data broadcasting or data broadcasting site. In that case, the output of the 1Seg audio temporarily stops, and the tone of the data broadcasting is preferentially output.

### Information

- While the data broadcasting or data broadcasting site is displayed, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to send the contents you entered on the site or whether to permit obtaining mobile phone information.
- When you select "YES (default)" from the confirmation display for data broadcasting, the information on data broadcasting might be automatically updated, and you might be charged a packet communication fee while watching a 1Seg program or playing back a video. (See page 267)
- If you move in a place where the airwave is unstable while watching a 1Seg program, the video, data broadcasting, and data broadcasting site may be automatically updated. In that case, the top page of the data broadcasting appears, and the information you have entered into the connected data broadcasting or data broadcasting site is cleared. Ensure that you watch the data broadcasting and data broadcasting site in a place where the airwave is stable.

### Use Highlighted Information for Various Operations

You can use the highlighted information on the data broadcasting site to easily use the functions such as making calls, or sending mail.

Select an item (link) and use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function. (See page 211)

### Information

- Depending on the data broadcasting or data broadcasting site, the function of composing i-mode mail or storing the Phonebook entries might be automatically used. The confirmation display appears asking whether to use each function. When the FOMA terminal is closed, the confirmation display appears on the Private window.

<TVlink>

## Using TV Link

Some data broadcasting programs might contain TV links which lead to the details of the programs or related information site.

From the TV links, you can store the site address information in the TVlink list and can easily call them up for browsing later.

## Store in TV Link

When you select the item (link) that can be stored in the TVlink list, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it in the TVlink list. You can store up to 50 TV links.

### 1 In Data Broadcasting Mode, select an item (link) that can be stored in the TVlink list ▶ YES

- When you try to store the same URL or memo information, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite it.
- When the maximum number of TV links has already been stored in the TVlink list, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store after deleting.

### Information

- Validity period is set for some links.
- When a URL for a link contains more than 60 half-pitch characters, you cannot store the link.





## Call Up a Stored TV Link

### 1 ▶ 1Seg ▶ TVlink ▶ Select a TV link to be displayed.

- When the confirmation display appears asking whether to connect to i-mode, select "YES".
- For a link whose validity period is expired, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete it.



### ■ Icons in the TVlink list

Icon	Format	Description
	Memo information	Displays memo information.
	Link communication contents	Connects to the data broadcasting site. (Video and caption are not displayed.)
	i-mode contents	Connects to the i-mode site.
	Full Browser contents	Connects via Full Browser.

## Function Menu of the TVlink List

Display detail	Displays the title, URL, outline, content type, and validity period of the TV link.
No. of TVlink	Displays the number of the registered TV links.
Delete	
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete selected	▶ Put a check mark for TV links to be deleted ▶  Finish ▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

## Recording a 1Seg Program while Watching

You can save the program you are watching as video or still images.

- The copy control signals such as "Copy never", "Copy once (copy for only one time)", and "Copy free" are incorporated also in 1Seg. The copy control signals are determined by each broadcasting station.
- You cannot record the programs of "Copy never". Further, when the copy control signal is changed to "Copy never" during recording, the recording session is closed, and the video recorded up to that point is saved.

### Record Video

The recorded video is saved to the microSD card ("Data box" → "1Seg" → "Video").

- See page 356 for playing back the recorded video.
- You cannot save the recorded video to the FOMA terminal.

### 1 Viewer display (for at least one second)

The confirmation tone sounds, "● REC" appears, and recording starts.

- You can start recording also by pressing and holding ( / ) for at least one second in Video Mode.
- When the airwave reception level indicates " ", you cannot record video. Even if " " is indicated, you might not be able to record it depending on the airwave conditions.
- You cannot change the channel during recording.

### 2 Press .

The confirmation tone sounds and video is saved.

- You can save the video also by pressing ( ) in Video Mode.
- When the file size is larger than 2 Gbytes, or the storage location becomes full, the recording automatically ends, and then the video recorded up to that point is saved.

#### ■ Estimate of the recordable time and the number of saved files

Capacity of the card	The maximum recordable time (total)	The maximum savable number
2 Gbytes	Approx. 640 minutes	99
4 Gbytes	Approx. 1,280 minutes	
8 Gbytes	Approx. 2,560 minutes	
16 Gbytes	Approx. 5,120 minutes	

- The maximum recordable time is estimation for 224 kbps of video, 48 kbps of audio, and 52 kbps of data (including captions). The recordable time varies depending on the broadcasting station or program.
- The maximum file size for continuous recording is up to 2 Gbytes under SD-VIDEO specifications.
- The savable number of video files decreases depending on the data volume.

#### Information

- The playing time of the saved data might become shorter than the recording time depending on the airwave conditions.
- The recording is not suspended even when you switch displays by Multitask or when a call comes in during recording.
- When the airwave conditions are changed to indicate " " during recording, recording shifts to pause state, then " " and " ■ PAUSE " are displayed. Video and audio during that period are not saved.
- If you remove the battery pack or pull out the microSD card during recording, the recorded data is saved to the microSD card as the file that cannot be played back.
- Depending on the broadcasting station or program, video and audio might be saved a few seconds after your recording operation.
- You cannot record when the video storage area is full. Also, you might not be able to record when the unused space in the storage area is not enough. Delete unnecessary video files and try again.
- Some programs cannot use the storage area fully.

## Information

- The file name and title name of the saved video are as follows:  
File name: "PRGXXX"  
Title name: "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm"  
(X: numerals, Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
- You cannot set the recorded video for the Stand-by display, ring tone or Call Receiving display.
- You cannot record video during AV output.


## Record Still Images

The recorded still images are saved to your FOMA terminal ("Data box"→"1Seg"→"Image" folder). You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 534)

- See page 341 for displaying the recorded still image files.
- You cannot save still images to the microSD card.

### 1 Viewer display

The confirmation tone sounds, and the still image is saved.

- You can record still images also by pressing  (Rec) in Video Mode.
- When the airwave reception level indicates "E", you cannot record still images.

## Information

- The file name and title name of the saved still image are as follows:  
File name: "YYYYMMDDhhmmXXX"  
Title name: "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm"  
(Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute, X: numeral)
- You cannot set the recorded still image for the Stand-by display or the Call Receiving display.
- See page 210 when images are stored to the maximum.
- Data broadcasting and caption cannot be saved as still images.
- You cannot record still images during AV output.

## <TV Timer> <Timer Recording>

# Setting Timer for Watching or Recording 1Seg Programs

You can set TV Timer/Timer Recording of 1Seg programs. At the specified date/time, an alarm sounds to notify you of the start of the program.


- You can set TV Timer/Timer Recording also by using the channel information (links) displayed in the i-appli Program Guide, sites, or mail. (See "Media To Function" on page 212)


## TV Timer List

You can set TV Timer by setting the date/time, channel, and program name. You can use "Act. TV w/ alarm" to automatically start 1Seg at the set time. You can set TV Timer for up to 100 programs.

### 1 1Seg (New)

▶ Do the following operations.

- Select a program you set TV Timer for to check the contents. You can edit them by pressing .

<b>ch</b> Channel	▶ Select a channel.
<b>N</b> Edit title	▶ Enter a program name. • You can enter up to 60 full-pitch/120 half-pitch characters.
<b>Start date setting</b>	Enter a date/time for starting watching. ▶ Select an item. Enter date . . . . . Enter a date/time directly. Choose date . . . . . Select a date from the Calendar and enter a time.
<b>Repeat</b>	▶ Select a type of repeat. • If you select "Select day", put a check mark for days of the week to be set and press  (Finish). • The item set with repetition is counted as one item.

<b>Alarm</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an alarm method.</b></p> <p><b>ON</b> . . . . . Alerts you at the time set for the start date/time comes. The setting for alarm notification is completed.</p> <p><b>ON/Set time</b> . . . Alerts you at the time set as the prenotification.</p> <p><b>OFF</b> . . . . . Does not alert. The setting for alarm notification is completed. (You cannot watch the 1Seg program.)</p> <p>▶ <b>Select how many seconds (minutes) before the specified time to be alerted.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you set "Auto power ON" to "ON", you cannot set "15 seconds before", "30 seconds before", and "45 seconds before" as the prenotification time.</li> </ul>
<b>Alarm tone</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a type of alarm tone</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select an alarm tone.</b></p>
<b>Volume</b>	<p>▶ <b>Use  to adjust the volume.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you set to "Step", the alarm tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every about three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.</li> </ul>
<b>Act. TV w/ alarm</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Auto ON</b> . . . . . After the Timer Alarm Notification display appears, 1Seg automatically starts.</p> <p><b>Manual ON</b> . . . . You can manually activate 1Seg from the Timer Alarm Notification display.</p> <p><b>OFF</b> . . . . . The timer alarm sounds only. You cannot activate 1Seg from the Timer Alarm Notification display.</p>
<b>Auto power ON</b>	<p>You can set whether to turn on the power automatically to sound the timer alarm when the alarm time comes during power off.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>
<b>1Seg volume</b>	<p>You can set the sound volume of a 1Seg program when it is activated by "Act. TV w/ alarm".</p> <p>▶ <b>Use  to adjust the volume.</b></p>
<b>Off timer</b>	<p>You can set to end watching a 1Seg program for when the specified time elapses after the 1Seg program automatically starts by "Act. TV w/ alarm".</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a time.</b></p>

<b>Prefer manner mode</b>	<p>You can set the sound volume of timer alarm for during Manner Mode.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <p><b>ON</b> . . . Sounds at the same volume as set for "TV timer alarm" on page 110.</p> <p><b>OFF</b> . . . Sounds at the volume set for this function.</p>
---------------------------	--

## 2 Press (Finish).

### Timer Recording List

You can set timer recordings by setting the date/time, channel, and program name. You can set up to 100 timer recordings.






## 1 ▶ 1Seg ▶ Timer recording list ▶ (New)

▶ **Do the following operations.**

- Select a set timer recording to check the contents, and you can edit it by pressing (Edit).
- You can display the used memory space (estimate) by pressing (Memory).

<b>Channel</b>	▶ <b>Select a channel.</b>
<b>Edit title</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a program name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 60 full-pitch/120 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Start date setting</b>	<p>Enter a date/time for starting or ending recording. The timer alarm sounds about one minute before the starting time.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p>
<b>End date setting</b>	<p><b>Enter date</b> . . . . . Enter a date/time directly.</p> <p><b>Choose date</b> . . . . Select a date from the Calendar and enter a time.</p>
<b>Repeat</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a type of repeat.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select "Select day", put a check mark for days of the week to be set and press  (Finish).</li> <li>• The item set with repetition is counted as one item.</li> </ul>



 <b>Alarm</b>	You can set whether to sound alarm at the specified time of timer alarm. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
 <b>Volume</b>	▶ Use  to adjust the volume. ● You cannot set the volume to "Step".
 <b>Priority</b>	You can set a recording operation for when the start date/time arrives while operating a function which cannot be started up simultaneously. ▶ <b>Recording or Operation</b> <b>Recording</b> . . . . Suspends and terminates the function being operated, and starts recording. <b>Operation</b> . . . . The confirmation display appears asking whether to start recording. Select "YES" to suspend and terminate the function being operated and start recording. ● For while operating a function which can be started up simultaneously, recording starts by the Multitask function. ● When the start time arrives during a call (including dialing and ringing), recording starts after you end the call. When you are using another function during a call, recording starts after you end the call and the function.
 <b>Overwrite setting</b>	When you set a recording to be repeated and set "Overwrite setting" to "ON", the program recorded last time is automatically deleted and overwritten. ▶ <b>OFF or ON</b>


## 2 Press (Finish).

- When the confirmation display appears asking whether to set the timer recording, select "YES". If you select "YES (default)", the same confirmation display does not appear afterward.

### Information

- You can set TV Timer/Timer Recording also by using the program information displayed in the i-appli Program Guide, sites, or mail. In that case, the registration display might appear with the start date/time, end date/time, channel, and program name entered.

### Information

- When you set TV Timer for multiple programs and set the timer alarm to sound at the same date/time, the alarm preferentially sounds for the program whose start date/time is the earliest. When the start date/time of the programs is the same, the alarm preferentially sounds for the program you set last.
- You cannot set multiple timer recordings whose recording time overlaps. If you set two timer recordings and the recording end time of one program is the same as the recording start time of the other, recording of the first program ends about one minute earlier.
- You cannot set TV Timer/Timer Recording for the programs whose start date/time or timer alarm date/time is past (about one minute before the start date/time for Timer Recording), except for the timer setting to be repeated.
- The setting of TV Timer/Timer Recording whose timer alarm date/time is past is automatically deleted. However, the timer setting to be repeated and the TV Timer setting for which "Alarm" is set to "OFF" are not deleted. Further, the settings are not deleted when you are operating the TV Timer/Timer Recording function at the alarm date/time.
- When no channel lists are set, you cannot set TV Timer/Timer Recording.
- Turn off the FOMA terminal after setting "Auto power ON" to "OFF" when you are near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals, or where the use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.
- When you have set "Priority" to "Operation" and the confirmation display is shown, the recording does not start even at the recording start time and starts at the time you select "YES". However, the recording is not executed if the recording end time is over.
- When "Overwrite setting" is set to "ON", the timer recording starts after erasing the program previously recorded. Regardless of whether you have watched the recorded program or not, or whether you have succeeded or failed timer recording, the previously recorded program is erased. If it is not erased before the timer recording starts, recording might not start on time.
- When you set "Overwrite setting" to "ON" for a recording, the file size of the recorded video might become larger than that of the video recorded last time because the file size varies depending on the recording (or watching) environment or programs. Note that you might not be able to record correctly when the unused memory space in the storage location is not enough.
- The title of the recorded video file takes the program name booked for the timer recording.
- "Ⓜ REC" appears on the viewer display during recording by Timer Recording.
- The audio from a 1Seg program is not output during recording started by Timer Recording. You can output the audio by pressing  or adjusting the sound volume, however.

## Function Menu while the TV Timer List or the Timer Recording List is Displayed

<b>New</b>	Go to step 1 of "TV Timer List" on page 261 for TV Timer. Go to step 1 on page 262 for Timer Recording.
<b>Edit</b>	Go to step 1 of "TV Timer List" on page 261 for TV Timer. Go to step 1 on page 262 for Timer Recording.
<b>Sort</b>	You can change the display order. ▶ <b>Select an order.</b>
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete past</b>	You can delete the setting of TV Timer/Timer Recording whose start date/time or end date/time is set for the past date/time. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for the setting of TV Timer/Timer Recording to be deleted</b> ▶ <b>(Finish)</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Memory info</b> [Timer Recording list only]	You can display the used memory space (estimate).

## When you set an alarm for "TV Timer" or "Timer recording"

The icon appears on the desktop.

. . . . Displayed when an alarm is set for today (except the setting for past time).

. . . . Displayed when an alarm is set for tomorrow or onward only.

- If you set TV Timer with "Alarm" set to "OFF", the icons are not displayed.

## When the time specified for "TV Timer" or "Timer recording" comes

### <TV Timer>

If you set "Act. TV w/ alarm" to other than "Auto ON", the alarm sounds for about five minutes, and illumination lights. The vibrator works as the same setting for "Phone" of "Vibrator". The set start date/time, channel, program name and an animation appear on the display.

If you set "Alarm" to "ON" and "Act. TV w/ alarm" to "Auto ON", 1Seg automatically starts when the specified time comes. The alarm does not sound.

To end watching, press and select "End 1Seg".

If you set "Off timer", the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue watching when the specified time elapses. If you select "NO" or do nothing for about 15 seconds, 1Seg automatically terminates.

### <Timer Recording>

About one minute before starting time, the alarm sounds for about two seconds, and illumination lights. The vibrator works as the same setting for "Phone" of "Vibrator". The set start date/time, end date/time, channel, program name and an animation appear on the display, then the viewer display appears. If you do nothing for about one minute after the recording starts, the Stand-by display appears. You can show the viewer display by pressing and selecting "Activate 1Seg".

To end recording started by Timer Recording to save video, press from the viewer display and select "YES". In Video Mode, you can end recording to save video also by pressing **(Stop)** and selecting "YES".

- During a call  
The alarm sounds from the earpiece.
- During operations

### <TV Timer>

When "Alarm setting" is set to "Operation preferred", the timer alarm sounds only when the Stand-by display is shown. When it is set to "Alarm preferred", the timer alarm sounds even while you are operating another function or during a call. (See page 409)

### <Timer Recording>

Timer Recording works according to the setting of "Priority". (See page 263) However, Timer Recording might not work when you are reading to/writing from the microSD card, or accessing the Data Storage Center.

- When the timer alarm is set to the same time of “Alarm”, “ToDo”, or “Schedule”  
The alarm sounds in the priority order of “Alarm” → “Timer recording” → “ToDo” → “Schedule” → “TV timer”.
- When the power is turned off  
The timer alarm does not sound except for the TV Timer setting with “Auto power ON” set. For Timer Recording, you cannot record a 1Seg program unless the power is turned on one minute before the start date/time.  
The icon does not appear on the desktop even after turning on the power.
- In Manner Mode  
The vibrator, message display, and illumination light notify you. The alarm sounds at the volume set for Manner Mode. (See page 109)
- During Lock All, Personal Data Lock or Omakase Lock  
The timer alarm does not sound. You cannot record a 1Seg program unless each lock is released one minute before the start date/time.  
However, when “TV timer” is set to “Accept” or “Timer recording” is set to “Accept” for “Customize” of Personal Data Lock, the alarm sounds or the recording starts even during Personal Data Lock. For TV Timer, you need to manually activate 1Seg even if “Act. TV w/alarm” is set to “Auto ON”.
- While the microSD card is operated, during infrared communication or iC communication, or while updating software program  
The timer alarm does not sound. You cannot record a 1Seg program unless each function is finished one minute before the start date/time.

### Information

- When you set “Alarm setting” to “Alarm preferred” for the setting of TV Timer/Timer Recording and the alarm time comes while you are dialing, the alarm sounds after you call up the other party. When the alarm time comes while ringing, the alarm sounds after you start talking.
- When you have set “PIN1 code entry set” to “ON” and set “Auto power ON” to automatically turn on the power to sound TV timer alarm, the display for entering your PIN1 code appears after the power is automatically turned on. The timer alarm does not sound unless you enter your PIN1 code.
- When you set “Auto power ON” to automatically turn on the power to sound a TV timer alarm, the alarm sounds after the wake-up image stops.
- You might not be able to set some i-motion files/Chaku-uta Full® music files for TV timer alarm.


### Information

- Depending on the i-motion file you set for TV timer alarm, only the audio might be output at the specified time.
- When a Chaku-uta Full® music file is set for TV timer alarm, only the audio is output at the specified time. The illumination for when you play back a demo to select an alarm tone differs from for when you are notified by an alarm.
- While Timer Recording is being performed during Personal Data Lock, the information in the broadcasting storage area cannot be read out. Also, the functions such as i-mode mail composition or Phonebook storage cannot be automatically used from the data broadcasting or data broadcasting site. When 1Seg tries to use these functions, a message appears telling that the function cannot be executed due to Personal Data Lock.

### To stop alarm tone/clear alarm message, animation, and i-motion of TV timer alarm

The alarm tone stops by pressing any of the keys, but the animation/i-motion becomes a still image, and the timer alarm message stays displayed. When “Act. TV w/ alarm” is set to “OFF”, press any key again to clear it. However, you cannot clear the timer alarm message by pressing a side key, with the FOMA terminal closed. When a call comes in, the alarm stops.



### When “Act. TV w/ alarm” of TV Timer is set to “Manual ON”

Press  and select “YES” from the Timer Alarm Notification display; then 1Seg starts, and you can watch the program set for TV Timer. In the case that a program is being recorded, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

### When “Timer Alarm Notification” is not executed or recording is completed

The icon may appear on the desktop. You can check that icon for the contents of the missed timer alarm (setting information) or recording result.


The setting information or recording result is the latest missed one.

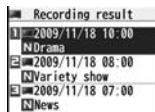
- When “Act. TV w/ alarm” is set to other than “OFF”, you can start 1Seg also by pressing  and select “YES” from the display of setting Information.
- When recorded video is stored, you can play back the video also by pressing  from the display of recording result.

## Recording Result

You can display up to 20 recording results from the latest one.

1  1Seg ▶ Recording result  
▶ Select a recording result.

- To delete all recording results, press  (DEL all), enter your Terminal Security Code, and select "YES".



<User Settings>

## Setting 1Seg

1  1Seg ▶ User settings  
▶ Do the following operations.

### Display

<b>Caption</b>	You can set whether to display the caption for when watching starts. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Caption posit. in w-scr</b>	You can set the caption position on the horizontal display. ▶ <b>Upper or Lower</b>
<b>Icon</b>	You can set whether to always display guide (see page 253) on the horizontal display. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> • Even if you set "Icon" to "OFF", the icon such as " ", " ", " " or " " appears during communication or when an i-mode mail message or Message R/F comes in.

### Mail ticker display

For when you receive an i-mode mail message, SMS message, or Message R/F while watching a 1Seg program, you can set whether to notify you of the receiving by the ticker on the viewer display.

▶ **Select an item.**

**Sender+subject** . . . . . Displays ticker of the sender and title.

**Receipt notification** . . . . . Displays ticker of reception notification only.

**OFF** . . . . . Does not display ticker on the viewer display.

- See page 257 for details on ticker display.

### Video

#### Mobile W-Speed

The outlines of images are automatically corrected so that you can watch more smooth videos of 1Seg programs.

▶ **ON or OFF**

#### Image quality

You can change the image quality.

▶ **Select an item.**

**Standard** . . . . . The average image quality

**Sports** . . . . . The image quality suitable for sports programs

**Cinema** . . . . . The image quality suitable for films

**Dynamic** . . . . . The dynamic image quality by accentuation

### Display light

You can set the duration of the display lights for when you watch a 1Seg program.

▶ **Constant light or Lighting duration**

▶ **Enter a lighting duration (minutes).**

- Enter from "01" through "30" in two digits.

### Sound

#### Sound effect

##### Auto volume

You can set whether to turn up the sound volume so that it will be more audible.

▶ **ON or OFF**

##### Remaster

You can bring the sound from an earphone or Bluetooth device to the original sound by complementing high-pitch range lost at data compression.

▶ **ON or OFF**

<b>Listening</b>	<p>You can set the effect of the sound from an earphone or Bluetooth device.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Surround</b> . . . Makes the sound natural and stereophonic.</p> <p><b>Natur 1/2</b> . . . Complements the cooped-up feeling specific to earphones and plays back natural sound. Select 1 or 2 according to your taste.</p> <p><b>OFF</b> . . . . . Sets Listening to "OFF".</p>
<b>Equalizer</b>	<p>You can change the quality of the sound from an earphone or Bluetooth device.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Normal</b> . . . . Reproduces normal sound quality.</p> <p><b>H.BASS1</b> . . . Enhances bass sound.</p> <p><b>H.BASS2</b> . . . Enhances bass sound more deeply than H.BASS1.</p> <p><b>Voice</b> . . . . . Makes conversation audible.</p> <p><b>Train</b> . . . . . Minimizes abnormal sound that causes sound leakage.</p>
<b>TV sound while closed</b>	<p>You can set whether to continue audio output for when you close the FOMA terminal while watching a 1Seg program.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the setting is "OFF", audio is muted when you close the FOMA terminal. Audio is output again when you open the FOMA terminal and select "OK".</li> </ul>
<b>Recording</b>	
<b>Rec. when low battery</b>	<p>You can set whether to continue recording when the battery runs short during recording.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <p><b>ON</b> . . . The confirmation display does not appear and recording continues.</p> <p><b>OFF</b> . . . The confirmation display appears asking whether to end recording.</p>

<b>Rec. program when call</b>	<p>You can set whether to start recording automatically when a call or PushTalk call comes in while watching a 1Seg program.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>
<b>Data broadcasting</b>	
<b>Image display setting</b>	<p>You can set whether to display images of the data broadcasting site. (See page 213)</p>
<b>Sound setting</b>	<p>You can set whether to sound an effect tone of the data broadcasting and the data broadcasting site.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>
<b>Reset settings</b>	<p>If you select "YES (default)" from the confirmation display for data broadcasting while watching a 1Seg program or playing back video, the same confirmation display does not appear afterward for both of them. The confirmation display resumes after you execute Reset Settings.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>ECO mode</b>	<p>You can set ECO Mode which fixes some settings and reduces the battery consumption.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release ECO Mode, perform the same operation.</li> <li>• Once ECO Mode is set, the following settings are fixed and cannot be changed. However, if you release ECO Mode, settings return.  Mobile W-Speed: OFF  Image quality: Standard  Remaster: OFF  Listening: OFF  Equalizer: Normal</li> </ul>
<b>Reset channel setting</b>	<p>You can delete all channel lists.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES</b></p>

<b>Reset storage area</b>	<p><b>▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ Delete this or Delete all Delete this. . . .</b> Deletes only the information of the affiliated broadcasting stations you selected, from the broadcasting storage area.</p> <p><b>Delete all. . . . .</b> Deletes the information of all affiliated broadcasting stations created in the broadcasting storage area.</p> <p><b>▶ YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.</li> </ul>
<b>Reset TV settings</b>	<p>You can reset each of "User settings" to the default. See "Function List" on page 472 for the items to be reset.</p> <p><b>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES</b></p>
<b>Check TV settings</b>	<p>You can check each of "User settings".</p>

### Information

#### <Icon>

- The guide display might appear even if "Icon" is set to "OFF" when the airwave conditions have got worse.

#### <Mobile W-Speed>

- When you set to "ON", you might not be able to have enough effects of "Image quality".
- Mobile W-Speed becomes invalid during ECO mode, displaying in the multiwindow, or AV output.
- Depending on the broadcast state, you might not be able to have the effects of Mobile W-Speed.
- Even when "Mobile W-Speed" is set to "ON" during recording or during timer recording, it is invalid when you play back the recorded video.

#### <Display light>

- While a display is shown in Multiwindow, the setting of this function is invalid. The lighting duration follows the setting of "Backlight" on page 114.

### Information

#### <TV sound while closed>

- When "ON" is set, the data broadcasting information might be automatically updated even with the FOMA terminal closed, and you might be charged a packet communication fee.
- Regardless of the setting of this function, the audio is output even with the FOMA terminal closed, when you switch displays by Multitask or when the displays are shown in multiple windows.

#### <Rec. program when call>

- In the following cases, the recording cannot be started when a call comes in:
  - During Play Background
  - While being recorded
  - In standby state for Timer Recording
  - While being displayed in the multiwindow
  - While being recorded by Timer Recording

#### <Image display setting>

- If you change this setting, "Image display setting" of "i-mode Browser set." of "i-mode settings" is also changed.

#### <Reset settings>

- You cannot reset the confirmation display at the start of 1Seg (see page 250) and at the time of Timer Recording (see page 263).

# Music

<b>Music&amp;Video Channel</b>	
Music&Video Channel .....	270
Setting Programs .....	270
Playing/Operating Programs .....	272
<b>MUSIC Player</b>	
Playing Music .....	276
Saving Music Files .....	276
Using MUSIC Player .....	<MUSIC Player> 278
Using Playlist .....	287

## ■ Handling Music Files

You can use music files saved on the microSD card for personal use only. Before using, give enough consideration not to infringe on the third party's intellectual property rights or other rights such as copyright.

## Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service which automatically delivers up to about one-hour programs at night by just setting your favorite music programs in advance. Further, you can enjoy high-quality video program of up to about 30 minutes. Programs are updated periodically and you can enjoy the delivered programs at your convenient time such as on commuting.

### ■ Before using Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis. (To apply for Music&Video Channel, you need to subscribe to Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full or Pake-hodai double besides i-mode.)
- Besides the service fee for using Music&Video Channel, you might be separately charged an information fee depending on the program.
- If you insert the UIM to the Music&Video Channel incompatible FOMA terminal after you subscribe to Music&Video Channel, you cannot use Music&Video Channel Service. Note that the service fee applies unless you cancel the Music&Video Channel subscription.
- You cannot set or obtain programs during international roaming.※ Take procedures to halt the distribution of programs before going abroad. Then, after homecoming, resume receiving distribution.  
※When you try to set or obtain programs during international roaming, note that you are charged a packet communication fee for the i-mode communication.
- You can use mail functions, display i-mode sites, and so on, while listening to program using Music&Video Channel (Play Background).  
See page 505 for the combination patterns of simultaneously usable functions.
- For the details on Music&Video Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## Setting Programs

If you previously set a program that you want to watch, the FOMA terminal automatically downloads the program data at night.


1  MUSIC ▶ Music&Video Channel





2 **Set program ▶ Follow the instructions on the display to set a program.**


For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

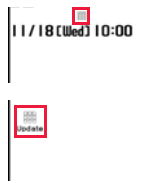
- See page 210 when data files are stored to the maximum.

### When a program is set

" Update" appears on the Stand-by display 12 hours before the time the program obtaining starts. However, it does not appear if you have inserted a UIM which is different from the one you used to set the program.

Programs are automatically obtained at night. The display for obtaining programs does not appear but " Update" appears on the desktop when they are successfully obtained. Press , highlight " Update", and press  (Select) to display the Music&Video Channel display.

When obtaining fails, " Fail" appears.



### Information

- When the communication is disconnected during obtaining a program, re-obtaining is automatically tried up to five times by an interval of about three minutes. When a display for obtaining a program is shown, however, the confirmation display appears asking whether to re-obtain the program.
- The ring tone does not sound and the vibrator does not work to notify that obtaining programs starts or is completed. When you set "Music&Video Ch illum." of "Illumination" to "ON", the Call/Charging indicator flickers when obtaining programs is completed. (See page 118)
- You can set up to two programs at once.
- Note that a newly obtained program overwrites a saved program and you can no longer play back that saved program afterward. To avoid overwriting, perform "Move program" to move the program to the "Saved program" folder.